

The background of the entire image is a dark green damask pattern. It features a repeating design of stylized flowers, leaves, and scrolling vines. The pattern is created using a combination of raised (embossed) and recessed (depressed) areas, giving it a three-dimensional texture. The colors are various shades of green, from deep forest green to lighter, almost yellowish-green highlights.

PA
2087
.C67
1886

West Virg

LIBRARY

5062

WVSC
JORDAN LIBRARY



West Va. State College Library

INSTITUTE, WEST VIRGINIA

RULES

Books may be kept one week and may be renewed once for the same period except reference books and magazines.

A fine of three cents a day will be charged on each book which is not returned according to the above rule. No book will be issued to any person incurring such a fine until it has been paid.

All injuries to books beyond reasonable wear and tear and all losses shall be made good to the satisfaction of the Librarian.

Each borrower is held responsible for all books drawn on his card and for all fines accruing on the same.



THE
BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK

470

BY
WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.

HEAD-MASTER ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.

FORMERLY PRINCIPAL CHAUNCY-HALL SCHOOL, BOSTON

Longum iter est per praecepta, breve et efficax per exempla

SENECA

#13999295

West Virginia State College
LIBRARY

GINN & COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

5069

PA
2087
.C67
1886

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

COPYRIGHT, 1886, BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

38.8

The Athenæum Press

GINN & COMPANY, PRO-
PRIETORS, BOSTON, U.S.A.

PREFACE

THE aim of this book is to serve as a preparation for reading, writing, and, to a less degree, for speaking Latin. It is designed primarily for boys and girls who are to begin the study of Latin at an early age; but as all who would get from Latin the best mental discipline, or lay a broad and firm foundation for Latin scholarship, must traverse pretty much the same road, and as Latin is begun in this country by most learners before any other foreign language is studied, a beginner's Latin book for those who take up the study at the age of ten or twelve need not be essentially different from one designed for learners of fourteen or fifteen. The most important difference would lie in the knowledge of the terminology and principles of English grammar that might be deemed an indispensable prerequisite. As a matter of fact, children come to the study of Latin with all degrees of ignorance of English grammar, and the minimum of necessary knowledge for the beginner is unquestionably very small. What minimum is considered essential for those who use this book, is indicated on page 6. It is hoped, therefore, that the contents of the book will justify its title; that it does not assume too much, and is not too difficult, for the least mature who are likely to use it, and that it will not be found too much simplified for those who begin Latin in high schools and academies. Simplicity, clearness, and directness have been studied throughout. The system of inflected forms, which is seldom mastered, but the mastery of which is an indispensable condition of further pleasant, successful, and profitable study, is slowly but

very fully developed, with the addition of abundant and varied exercises. For convenience, as well as on educational grounds, the paradigm of the verb is given in one block, instead of in fragments detached and dispersed, and everywhere the active and passive forms are placed side by side, to be compared, and learned as they are treated, simultaneously.

The idea underlying and controlling the plan is the maximum of practice with the minimum of theory, on the principle that the thorough acquisition of the elements of Latin must be more of art than science, — more the work of observation, comparison, and imitation, than the mechanical following of rules, or the exercise of analysis and conscious inductive reasoning.

The book contains, —

1. A brief introduction explaining the Roman and English methods of pronunciation, the necessary paradigms, an outline of the most important principles of syntax, and a large number of exercises for translation into English and into Latin, accompanied by short explanatory notes.

2. About twenty-five simple Latin dialogues, added to as many chapters. Some of these are on subjects of the lessons, and include a good many grammatical terms; some are on various topics of school and holiday life; and others on subjects historical and mythological.

3. Easy selections for translation, consisting, besides a number of fables, of extracts from *Viri Romae*, *Nepos*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Cæsar*, and *Cicero*, some interspersed with the lessons, others added at the end of the book.

Those who seek in a first Latin book a complete presentation of the facts and principles of the Latin language, will not be satisfied with this volume. But, in the opinion of the authors, there is no error in elementary instruction in Latin more common and more deplorable than that of failing to discriminate between the relatively important

and unimportant; between what is suited to the beginning and what to the more advanced stages of the study. It is not too much to say that a very great part of the barrenness and futility of the teaching and study of Latin in schools is due to this lack of discrimination, and to a false conception of thoroughness. It is not intended to imply that a hard and fast line can be drawn, still less is this book offered as in this respect a realization of the ideal. The ideal is never realized. But it has been the constant aim to make just this distinction: to determine everywhere, in the light of much observation and reflection and of long experience, what should be made the subject of immediate study, and what should be postponed; what is entitled to prominence, and what ought to be subordinated. Some excellent teachers think that the subjunctive mood should have no place in a preparatory Latin book; and undoubtedly the syntax of the subjunctive does involve too many and too great difficulties for such a work, if anything more than an outline of some commoner uses is attempted. On the other hand, the learner can hardly read any Latin without encountering forms of the subjunctive. The best way then seems to be to construct a large number of very short sentences for practice on the forms, which shall exhibit, in the briefest compass, some important and most frequently recurring uses of the mood, more especially because the ways of translating the subjunctive cannot be illustrated from the isolated forms in the paradigms, as in the other moods. This idea has been worked out in part in Chapter LIV, the forms having been previously left untranslated.

The *colloquia* have been added, not as an integral and necessary part of the lessons, but to serve as an incentive to the moderate use of Latin orally in recitation, and to afford convenient exercises for training the ear and for enlarging the vocabulary of the learner. The grammatical

terms have been drawn chiefly from the *Institutiones* of Rudimann. The *colloquium* on page 5 has been borrowed from Dr. H. Meurer's *Lateinisches Lesebuch*, and suggestions and parts of the materials for a very few others have been derived from the same source; also two or three of the passages for translation, and here and there some sentences in the exercises. Whoever examines these *colloquia* with a critical eye, will find some words which are confined to the vocabularies of grammarians and commentators, and a very few others employed in senses for which it would be embarrassing to be required to cite classical authority. For example, the word *pensum* is used often in the sense of *a schoolboy's task, something to be done or learned, a lesson*. This word doubtless meant strictly *a spinner's task*. But in classical Latin it had already approached the meaning *task* in general, and it is but a very slight extension of its application to employ it as it is in the *colloquia*. Such a moderate decanting of new wine into old bottles, it is hoped may be excused. Still, if any teacher thinks that the Latinity of his pupils will be injured by the use of the *colloquia*, it is optional with him to omit them altogether, without losing the continuity of the lessons.

The complaint is very common, and its justice must be acknowledged, that first Latin books are often excessively and needlessly arid and wooden. Accordingly an effort has been made, while following a rigorously scientific method in the development of the successive subjects, to impart something of attractiveness, interest, freshness, and variety to the study of the elements of Latin by means of the *colloquia*, the choice of extracts for translation (introduced as early as possible), and the mode of treatment in every part, extending even to the choice of Latin words, and to the construction of many of the exercises.

Usage is not fixed in respect to the so-called principal parts of verbs, a few of the later school manuals giving

the nominative masculine of the perfect participle instead of the supine, except in the case of neuter or intransitive verbs. It has been thought better in this book to follow the prevailing practice, only to treat the form that has been called the supine in this connection, not as the supine, — which in most cases it is not and cannot be, since, as is well known, only about two hundred and thirty verbs can be proved to have a supine, — but as the neuter of the perfect participle.¹ Thus the learner is guarded against errors and is spared the perplexity of having to memorize now one, now another form.

It is hoped that this book can be finished and reviewed by the average learner in a year, and that the transition then to *Viri Romae*, *Nepos*, or *Cæsar* will not prove too difficult. More than two-thirds of the words used belong to the vocabulary of *Cæsar*, and only a trifle less than two-thirds to that of *Nepos*. In the case of young pupils it may be advisable to omit the translation of the English exercises into Latin, beginning with Chapter LV, till after the selections for translation at the end of the book have been read.

It remains to acknowledge the generous assistance of several scholars. Professor George M. Lane, of Harvard University, Professor George L. Kittredge, of Exeter Academy, N.H., George F. Forbes, A.M., and D. O. S. Lowell, A.M., both of the Roxbury Latin School, and Marshall W. Davis, A.B., of Thayer Academy, Braintree, read and criticised the work in manuscript. Mr. Forbes and Mr. Lowell also read the proof-sheets and made important suggestions and corrections. The authors feel especially indebted to John Tetlow, A.M., Head-Master of the Boston Girls' High and Latin Schools, and author of *Inductive Lessons in Latin*, for critically reading the proof-sheets,

¹ This plan has been followed by Dr. R. F. Leighton in his *First Steps in Latin*.

and for materially contributing to the improvement of the book by the correction of errors, and by the suggestions of his conscientious and exact scholarship.

WM. C. COLLAR.

M. GRANT DANIELL.

BOSTON, Sept. 1, 1886.

The authors desire to express their grateful acknowledgments to Miss Caroline O. Stone, of the Roxbury Latin School, and to Professor E. M. Wallank of Fort Worth, Texas, for the correction of errors that had been overlooked in the first editions.

1889.

The making of a new set of plates has enabled the authors to make occasional improvements in phraseology, typography, and punctuation. Such changes, however, are very few. Certain vowel quantities, particularly in Gallic proper names, have been changed, as also a considerable number of "hidden quantities" in cases where authorities are now in better accord than they were sixteen years ago. In the General Vocabulary a good many "more or less remotely" derived words have been added. The book is, notwithstanding, substantially the same book that it has always been.

December, 1902.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGES
I. Introductory: Alphabet; Syllables; Quantity; Accent; Cases; Gender	1-6
II. First Declension. — Direct Object. — Possessive Dative. — Indirect Object	7-12
III. Second Declension: Words in <i>us</i> and <i>um</i> . — Predicate Noun	13-17
IV. First and Second Declensions. — Agreement of Adjectives. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 58	17-19
V. Second Declension: Words in <i>er</i> . — Ablative of Agent	20-21
VI. Second Declension: Words in <i>er</i> . — Paradigms of Adjectives of First and Second Declensions	22-24
VII. The Verb Sum : Paradigm	25-26
VIII. The Verb Sum : Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 80	27-29
IX. The Verb Sum : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 85	30-31
X. First Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Amō	32-34
XI. First Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — Ablative of Means. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 95.	35-38
XII. First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive	39-41
XIII. Third Declension: Mute Stems. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 111	41-43
XIV. Second Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Moneō	44-46
XV. Second Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive	46-49
XVI. Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 126	49-52

CHAPTER	PAGES
XVII. Review of First and Second Conjugations. — Ablative of Separation. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 133	53-55
XVIII. Third Declension: Liquid Stems. — Ablative of Time. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 139	56-58
XIX. Third Declension: Sibilant Stems. — Ablative of Manner. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 148	59-62
XX. Third Declension: Stems in <i>i</i> . — Apposition. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 162	62-67
XXI. Third Declension: Mixed Stems; Rules of Gender. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 173	68-72
XXII. Third Declension: Review of Third Declension	72-73
XXIII. Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Regō	74-76
XXIV. Third Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 187. — Passage for Translation, 188.	76-80
XXV. Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 195	80-84
XXVI. Review. — Passage for Translation, 199	84-86
XXVII. Irregular Adjectives. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 204	86-89
XXVIII. Comparison of Adjectives. — Declension of the Comparative. — Ablative with Comparatives. — Passage for Translation, 215	89-92
XXIX. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 222	93-96
XXX. Fourth Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Audiō	96-98
XXXI. Fourth Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive	99-100
XXXII. Fourth Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 234	101-103
XXXIII. Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Capiō	104-106
XXXIV. Third Conjugation: Verbs in <i>iō</i> , — Tenses of the Indicative; Present Imperative; Present and Perfect Infinitive	106-107
XXXV. Review of the Four Conjugations. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 242	108-111

CONTENTS

xi

CHAPTER	PAGES
XXXVI. Fourth Declension	110-112
XXXVII. Fifth Declension. — Ablative of Specification. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 261	112-115
XXXVIII. Special Paradigms. — Passage for Translation, 263	115-116
XXXIX. Personal, Reflexive, and Possessive Pronouns. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 269	117-119
XL. Determinative Pronouns. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 274	120-122
XLI. Demonstrative Pronouns	123-125
XLII. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pro- nouns. — Agreement of Relative	126-130
XLIII. Review of Pronouns. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 290. — Passage for Translation, 291	130-134
XLIV. Compounds of <i>Sum</i> . — Cases with Compounds of <i>Sum</i>	134-137
XLV. Deponent Verbs: First and Second Conjug- ations. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 302	137-140
XLVI. Deponent Verbs: Third and Fourth Conjug- ations. — Ablative with <i>Ūtor</i> , etc. — Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting	140-142
XLVII. Numerals. — Accusative of Extent	143-146
XLVIII. Irregular Verbs: <i>Volō</i> , <i>Nōlō</i> , <i>Mālō</i> . — Passage for Translation, 320	146-149
XLIX. Irregular Verbs: <i>Ferō</i> and its Compounds	149-152
L. Irregular Verbs: <i>Eō</i> , <i>Fiō</i> . — <i>Colloquium</i> , 332	152-156
LI. Prepositions. — Expressions of Place. — Passage for Translation, 339	156-160
LII. Partitive Genitive. — Descriptive Ablative and Genitive. — Dative with Intransitives. — Da- tive of Service	160-161
LIII. Derivation. — Comparison of Words	162-164
LIV. The Subjunctive: Sequence of Tenses; Forms; Purpose Clauses with <i>Ut</i> and <i>Nē</i>	164-171
LV. The Subjunctive: Relative of Purpose	171-172
LVI. The Subjunctive: Result Clauses with <i>Ut</i> and <i>Nē</i> ; Clause after Verbs of Fearing	173-174

CHAPTER	PAGE
LVII. The Subjunctive: Cum Temporal; Cum Causal and Concessive. — Passage for Translation, 378	175-178
LVIII. The Subjunctive: Indirect Questions	178-181
LIX. The Subjunctive: Wishes and Conditions. — <i>Collo-</i> <i>quium</i> , 388	180-184
LX. The Hortatory Subjunctive and Imperative. — Pas- sage for Translation, 394	184-187
LXI. The Infinitive	187-188
LXII. Accusative and Infinitive: Indirect Discourse; Tenses of Infinitive. — Passage for Translation, 407	189-194
LXIII. Participles	194-196
LXIV. Participles: Ablative Absolute	197-199
LXV. Impersonal Verbs: Miseret , etc. — Intransitive Verbs in Passive. — Passage for Translation, 421	200-203
LXVI. Periphrastic Conjugations. — Dative of Agent . .	204-207
LXVII. Gerund. — Gerundive. — Supine	208-210
READING LESSONS: Letters; Fables; Cæsar's Gallic War .	211-222
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	225-260
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	261-274
GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM	275-277
INDEX	279-285

It is suggested to teachers who are much pressed for time, that the following sections may be omitted without too serious loss:—

93, II; 118, II; 124; 127; 143, II; 160; 171; 173; 178; 185, II; 193, II; 196; 197; 220, III; 263; 274; 277, II; 285; 288; 330; 345; 394; 421; 428.

Attention is also called to the note introductory to Chapter LV. Should it be necessary to curtail still more, it is recommended that it be done by occasionally omitting alternate sentences in the exercises to be translated into Latin.

W. C. C.

M. G. D.

BOSTON, June, 1891.

BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTORY

It is suggested to teachers who are not experienced in teaching Latin that this chapter may, perhaps, be most profitably used for reference. Pupils will catch pronunciation quickly from the lips of the teacher; and as they make mistakes, they will be interested in being referred to the rules of pronunciation. It is therefore advised that the teacher begin with the *Colloquium*, page 5, pronouncing slowly each sentence, the pupils following successively, and then together. In the same way the teacher might then construe literally.

1. ALPHABET. — The Latin alphabet has no *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

2. VOWELS. — Vowels may be long (marked thus, ¯), short (marked thus, ˇ), or common¹ (marked thus, ˆ). The long vowel occupies double the time of the short in pronouncing.

3. CONSONANTS. — Of the consonants

The mutes are: P-mutes . . .	p, b, f
T-mutes . . .	t, d
K-mutes . . .	k, c, g, q (u)
The liquids are . . .	l, m, n, r
The sibilant is . . .	s
The double consonants are . . .	x = cs, ² z = ds.

¹ That is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

² Also represents the combinations *hs*, *qus*, *gs*, *vs*.

4. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, ROMAN METHOD.

Vowels

ā	is sounded like the last <i>a</i> in <i>papā'</i> .
■	" " the first <i>a</i> in <i>papā'</i> .
ē	" " <i>e</i> in <i>they</i> .
ĕ	" " <i>e</i> in <i>met</i> .
ī	" " <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .
ĭ	" " <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i> .
ō	" " <i>o</i> in <i>holy</i> .
ŏ	" " <i>o</i> in <i>wholly</i> . ¹
ū ²	" " <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i> .
ū	" " <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i> .

Diphthongs

ae	is sounded like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> .
au	" " <i>ou</i> in <i>our</i> .
ei	" " <i>ei</i> in <i>eight</i> .
oe	" " <i>oi</i> in <i>boil</i> .
eu	" " <i>eu</i> in <i>feud</i> .
ui	" " <i>we</i> .

Consonants

Consonants generally have the same sounds as in English.
But observe the following:—

o	is sounded like <i>c</i> in <i>come</i> .
g	" " <i>g</i> in <i>get</i> .
j	" " <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i> .
s	" " <i>s</i> in <i>sun</i> . ³
t	" " <i>t</i> in <i>time</i> . ⁴
v	" " <i>w</i> in <i>wine</i> .
ch	" " <i>k</i> in <i>kite</i> .

¹ That is, as the word is commonly pronounced; the sound heard in *holy*, shortened.

² In *qu* and also commonly in

gu and *su* before a vowel *u* or semivowel or consonant, and pronounced like *w*.

³ Never like *z*. ⁴ Never like

5. SYLLABLES

1. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: *ae-gri-tū'-dō*, *sickness*.

2. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following: *a-mā'-bi-lis*, *amiable*.

3. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: *im'-pro-bus*, *bad*; *ho'-spes*, *guest*.

4. But in compound words the division must show the component parts: *ab'-est* (*ab*, *away*; *est*, *he is*), *he is away*.

5. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the one next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

6. QUANTITY

1. A vowel is short before a vowel (with few exceptions) or *h*, also probably before *nt* and *nd*: *pō-ē'-ma*, *poem*; *grā'-tī-ae*, *thanks*; *nī'-hil*, *nothing*; *a'-mānt*, *they love*; *mo-nēn'-dus*, *to be advised*.

2. Diphthongs, vowels representing diphthongs, vowels resulting from contraction, and vowels followed by *nf*, *ns*, *j*, and commonly *gn*, are long: *in-ī'-quus* (*inaequus*), *unequal*; *cō'-gō* (*cōāgō*), *collect*; *cōn'-fe-rō*, *bring together*; *mēn'-sa*, *table*; *hū'-jus*, *of him*; *mā'-gnus*, *great*. In this book only long vowels are marked, unless for some special reason.

3. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: *vō'-cēs, voices*; *ae'-dēs, temple*.

4. A syllable is long if it has a short vowel followed by two or more consonants (except a mute followed by *l* or *r*), or by *x* or *z*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: *sunt*,¹ *they are*; *tem'-plum, temple*; *dux*,¹ *leader*.

5. A syllable is common if it has a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *te'-nē-brae, darkness*. The vowel is pronounced short.

The above statements are useful in determining the place of the accent.

7.

ACCENT

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first: *tu'-ba, trumpet*.

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, otherwise on the antepenult: *prae-dī'-cō, foretell*; *prae'-di-cō, declare*; *ille'-cē-brae, snares*; *pa-ter'-nus*,² *paternal*.

(1) Several words, called enclitics, of which the commonest are *ne*, the sign of a question, and *que, and*, are appended to other words, and such words are then accented on the syllable preceding the *ne* or *que*: *amat'-ne, does he love?* *dōna'-que, and gifts*.

8. ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.—By this method the above rules relating to syllables (5) and accent (7) are observed, and words are pronounced substantially as in English; but final *es* is sounded as in English *ease*, and final *ōs* (acc. plur.) as in *dose*.

¹ *u* pronounced like *oo* in *foot*. the penult is short, the *syllable* is

² Here, though the *vowel* of long by 6, 4.

The following *colloquium* may be used, if the teacher wishes, for practice, and to illustrate the foregoing statements. See introductory note, page 1.

9. COLLOQUIUM

Augustus. Quid tibi vīs? *What do you wish (for yourself)?*

Iūlus. Tēcum ambulāre velim. *I should like to take a walk with you.*

A. Ego nōlō; domī manēre mālō. *I don't want to; I prefer to stay at home.*

I. Cūr māvīs? *Why do you prefer (that)?*

A. Ego et Frāter vesperī cum patre ambulāre mālumus. *My brother and I had rather take a walk at evening with our father.*

I. Cūr mēcum per silvās vagārī nōn vultis? *Why don't you want to roam with me through the woods?*

A. Quod vesperī amoenitāte fruī mālumus quam sōlis ārdōre. *Because we had rather enjoy the pleasantness of evening than the heat of the sun.*

I. At jam saepe mēcum ambulāre nōluistī. *But often before now you have not wanted to walk with me.*

A. Nōn rēctē dīcis; nōn est causa cūr tēcum ambulāre nōlim; at cum hortus avī satis amplus sit et lacum silvamque contineat, ibi mālumus lūdere. Sī vīs, nōbīscum venī. *What you say is not true; there is no reason why I should not want to walk with you; but since grandfather's garden is quite large, and has a pond and a grove, we had rather play there. If you like, come with us.*

10. CASES

1. The names of the cases in Latin are: *nominative, vocative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative.*

2. The vocative is the case of address, but it does not differ in form from the nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in *us* of the second declension, and hence is not elsewhere given separately in the paradigms.

3. Another case, the *locative*, which denotes the place of an action, is mostly confined to proper names, and has the form of the ablative (sometimes dative) singular or plural, or of the genitive singular.

GENDER

11. The gender of Latin nouns is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning, but much oftener by the termination.

1. Nouns denoting males are *masculine*: *agricola*, *farmer*; *Cicerō*, *Cicero*.

2. Nouns denoting females are *feminine*: *rēgina*, *queen*; *Tullia*, *Tullia*.

3. Names of rivers, winds, and months are *masculine*: *Padus*, *Po*; *aquilō*, *north wind*; *Jānuārius*, *January*.

4. Names of countries, towns, islands, and trees are *feminine*: *Āfrica*, *Africa*; *Rōma*, *Rome*; *Sicilia*, *Sicily*; *pirus*, *pear tree*.

5. Indeclinable nouns are *neuter*: *fās*, *right*.

Other rules of gender will be given under the several declensions.

It is assumed that the learner knows the names and functions of the parts of speech in English, and the meanings of the common grammatical terms, such as *subject and predicate*, *case*, *mood*, *tense*, *voice*, *declension*, *conjugation*, etc. So much knowledge is absolutely essential for entering upon the study of the following lessons.

CHAPTER II

FIRST DECLENSION

12. The stem¹ ends in *a*.

13. GENDER. — The gender is feminine; but see general rules, 11.

14. PARADIGM

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
N.V.	tub a , <i>a trumpet</i> .	N.V.	tub ae , <i>trumpets</i> .
G.	tub ae , <i>of a trumpet</i> .	G.	tub ārum , <i>of trumpets</i> .
D.	tub ae , <i>to or for a trumpet</i> .	D.	tub īs , <i>to or for trumpets</i> .
Ac.	tub am , <i>a trumpet</i> .	Ac.	tub ās , <i>trumpets</i> .
Ab.	tub ā , ² <i>with a trumpet</i> .	Ab.	tub īs , <i>with trumpets</i> .

1. For the reason why the vocative case is not given separately in the paradigm see 10. 2.

2. Examples of the locative case (10. 3) in this declension are : *Rōmae*, at Rome; *Athēnīs*, at Athens.

15. TERMINATIONS. — These consist of case-endings, joined with the final letter of the stem. But sometimes the final letter of the stem is lost, and sometimes the case-ending.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
N.V.	a	ae	
G.	ae	ārum	
D.	ae	īs	
Ac.	am	ās	
Ab.	ā	īs	

¹ The stem is the common base to which certain letters are added to express the relation of the word to other words.

² The ablative is variously ren-

dered, according to its connection. It is therefore recommended that, in declining words, no translation of the ablative be given till its use has been illustrated. See p. 20, n. 1.

16. Observe that the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike; also the dative and ablative plural.

17. The pupil should commit to memory the table of terminations.

18. In Latin there is no article: *tuba* may be translated *a trumpet*, *the trumpet*, or *trumpet*.

19.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

<i>aquila</i> , F., <i>eagle</i> .
<i>cauda</i> , F., <i>tail</i> .
<i>columba</i> , F., <i>dove</i> .
<i>filia</i> , ¹ F., <i>daughter</i> .
<i>puella</i> , F., <i>girl</i> .
<i>rēgina</i> , F., <i>queen</i> .
<i>rosa</i> , ² F., <i>rose</i> .
<i>via</i> , F., <i>road, street, way</i> .

ADJECTIVES³

<i>alba</i> , <i>white</i> .
<i>bona</i> , <i>good</i> .
<i>dūra</i> , <i>hard</i> .
<i>lāta</i> , <i>wide, broad</i> .
<i>longa</i> , <i>long</i> .
<i>māgna</i> , <i>large</i> .
<i>mala</i> , <i>bad</i> .
<i>parva</i> , <i>small, little</i> .

VERBS

<i>est</i> , (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>is</i> .	<i>habet</i> , (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>has</i> .
<i>sunt</i> , (<i>they</i>) <i>are</i> .	<i>habent</i> , (<i>they</i>) <i>have</i> .

20. Observe that in the above verb-forms the singular ends in *t*, and the plural in *nt*.

NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE

21.

EXERCISES

I.⁴ 1. *Viae lātae*. 2. *Via lāta*. 3. *Viās lātās*. 4. *Viam lātām*. 5. *Cauda longa*. 6. *Caudās longās*. 7. *Caudam longam*. 8. *Caudae longae*. 9. *Columbās parvās*. 10. *Columbae parvae*. 11. *Columba parva*. 12. *Columbam*

¹ *Filia* and *dea*, *goddess*, have a dative and ablative plural in *abus*, but this is mostly confined to legal and religious language.

² CAUTION: Do not pronounce *s* like *z*, if you use the Roman method. See page 2, note 3.

³ The masculine and neuter of adjectives will be taken up in connection with nouns of the second declension.

⁴ Observe that the adjective takes the case and number of the noun to which it belongs.

parvam. 13. Rosam albam. 14. Rosae albae. 15. Rosa alba. 16. Rosās albās. 17. Rēgīna mala. 18. Rēgīnās malās.

II. In like manner give the nominative and accusative in both numbers of the words meaning *little girl, great eagle, good queen, wide street*. Decline together *rosa alba, via longa, bona puella*.

22.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Via est longa. 2. Dūra est via. 3. Puellae rosās habent. 4. Rēgīna columbam habet. 5. Rosae sunt albae. 6. Cauda est alba. 7. Caudae sunt longae. 8. Aquila caudam habet. 9. Puellae tubās habent. 10. Aquilae sunt māgnae.

II. 1. Via dūra est longa. 2. Puella bona rosam habet. 3. Columba caudam parvam habet. 4. Rēgīnae albās rosās habent. 5. Rosa parva est alba. 6. Aquila magna est alba. 7. Tubae māgnae sunt longae. 8. Puella tubam longam habet. 9. Fīliae bonae columbās habent. 10. Aquila māgna lātam caudam habet.

23. Notice the order of the words in the above sentences (II. 1–10), and see wherein it differs from the order in English. You will find that—

1. The adjective is commonly placed after its noun. When placed before the noun it is for emphasis.

2. The verb commonly comes at the end of the sentence, but *est* and *sunt* are less frequently so placed.

3. The object commonly comes before the verb.

24. Observe that the subject is in the nominative case, and that the verb agrees with it in number, as in English.

25. Observe that the verb *habet* (*habent*) is transitive, and has its object in the accusative.

26. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.

27.

EXERCISES

I. 1. The roads are broad. 2. The streets are long. 3. Queens have doves. 4. The girl has a rose. 5. Eagles have tails. 6. The dove is white. 7. The girl has a trumpet. 8. The eagle is large. 9. The rose is white. 10. The girls are small.

II. 1. The long way is hard. 2. Good girls have roses. 3. Doves have small tails. 4. Great eagles have broad tails. 5. The good queen has a dove. 6. The little girls have large trumpets. 7. The little dove is white. 8. The queen is good. 9. The good queen has a little daughter. 10. A little girl has a white rose.

28. Answer the following in Latin :¹—

1. Estne² via lāta? 2. Habetne puella rosam? 3. Habentne aquilae caudās longās? 4. Quid (*what*) habet rēgīna bona? 5. Quid habent puellae bonae? 6. Habentne columbae caudās?

29.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

ālā, F., *wing*.

Britannia, F., *Britain*.

Cornēlia, F., *Cornelia*.

Galba, M., *Galba*.

hōra, F., *hour*.

lūna, F., *moon*.

ADJECTIVES

multa, *much* (pl. *many*).

plēna, *full*.

prīma, *first*.

secunda, *second*.

VERBS

amat, (*he, she, it*) *loves*.

amant, (*they*) *love*.

dat, (*he, she, it*) *gives*.

dant, (*they*) *give*.

CONJUNCTION

et, *and*.

ADVERB

nōn, *not*.

¹ Every answer should form a complete sentence. To the question *est-ne via longa?* the answer should be *via est longa*.

² The particle *ne* is appended to some word in a sentence, often the verb, as a sign of a question, and is not to be translated by any separate word.

GENITIVE AND DATIVE

30.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Lūnae plēnae. 2. Lūnārum plēnārum. 3. Lūnīs plēnīs. 4. Hōrārum primārum. 5. Hōrīs primīs. 6. Filia Galbae.¹ 7. Filiīs Cornēliae. 8. Rosīs albīs. 9. Columbae parvae. 10. Aquilārum ālārum.

II. 1. The queen's daughter. 2. The queens' daughters. 3. For the girl's rose. 4. Of the wings of the dove. 5. For Cornelia's daughter. 6. Of Britain. 7. For eagles. 8. Of the long streets. 9. For the little girls. 10. To the small trumpet.

31.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Puellae (*dative*) est rosa. 2. Puella rosam habet. 3. Rēgīnīs sunt columbae. 4. Rēgīnae columbās habent. 5. Rosa puellae est alba. 6. Rosae puellārum sunt albae. 7. Galba filiae² columbam dat. 8. Cornēlia puellīs rosās dat. 9. Galba Cornēliae aquilam dat. 10. Galba et Cornēlia filiās habent.

II. 1. Filiae Cornēliae rosās albās habent. 2. Cornēlia puellae parvae rosam māgnam dat. 3. Est³ hōra prima lūnae plēnae. 4. Hōra est³ secunda et lūna est plēna. 5. Māgna est rosa puellae parvae. 6. Galba puellae tubam parvam dat. 7. Columbae albae sunt filiae bonae. 8. Multae et longae sunt Britanniae viae. 9. Britannia rēgīnam bonam habet. 10. Galba filiīs bonae rēgīnae rosās multās dat.

32. The first sentence in I is literally translated *to the girl is a rose*. Evidently the meaning is *the girl has a rose*, the same as that of the second. The dative thus used with *est* or *sunt* is called the DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR, or the POSSESSIVE DATIVE.

¹ Galba's daughter. The genitive is often to be translated by the English possessive.

² Translate *his daughter*.

³ *It is*.

33. Examine the seventh sentence in I. The transitive verb *dat* has a direct object, *columbam*; but it also has a dative limiting it, *filiae*. This dative is called an INDIRECT OBJECT. Find other illustrations of the following:

34. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The indirect object is put in the dative.

35.**EXERCISES**

1. Before turning the following sentences into Latin, translate mentally 2, 6, and 10, in **31. II**, taking the words as they stand. Observe that the indirect object precedes the direct.

2. In the following exercises try to cast each sentence into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words. Thus, the sixth sentence will take the form, *the girl to the queen a rose gives*; and the eighth, *to a girl little is a rose little*, or *a girl little a rose little has*.

I. 1. It¹ is the first hour. 2. There² is a full moon. 3. The moon is full. 4. The dove is small. 5. The tail of the eagle is broad. 6. The girl gives the queen³ a rose. 7. The queen's roses are white. 8.⁴ A little girl has a little rose. 9. The first hour is a long one.² 10. Galba gives the girls some² roses.

II. 1. The queen's daughter has a white rose. 2. The queen of Britain gives the girl a great rose. 3. It is the second hour of the full moon. 4. The daughters of Cornelia are small girls.⁵ 5. The daughters of Cornelia are good little⁶ girls.⁵ 6. The little dove's tail is a long one. 7. The wings of eagles are long and broad. 8. Eagles have long, broad⁷ wings. 9. The little dove has a white tail. 10.⁴ Many doves have white tails.

¹ Omit. Compare **31. II. 3** and **4**.

² Omit.

³ That is, *to the queen*. Compare **31. I. 7, 8, and 9**; and **31. II. 2, 6, and 10**.

⁴ Translate in two ways, like

31. I. 1 and **2, 3** and **4**.

⁵ Nominative.

⁶ In Latin, *good and little*.

⁷ *Long and broad*.

CHAPTER III

SECOND DECLENSION

36. The stem ends in *o*.

37. GENDER. — Nouns ending in *um* are neuter; most others are masculine; but see general rules for gender, 11. 4.

38. PARADIGMS¹**Hortus, garden****Bellum, war**

SINGULAR		PLURAL		SINGULAR		PLURAL	
N.V.	hort us , ě	hort ī		N.V.	bell um	bell a	
G.	hort ī	hort ōrum		G.	bell ī	bell ōrum	
D.	hort ō	hort īs		D.	bell ō	bell īs	
Ac.	hort um	hort ōs		Ac.	bell um	bell a	
Ab.	hort ō	hort īs		Ab.	bell ō	bell īs	

39. The vocative singular of nouns in *us* of this declension ends in **ě**.

1. As these are the only Latin nouns having a form for the vocative different from the nominative, this peculiarity is best regarded and treated as an exception.

40. Examples of the locative case (10. 3) in this declension are: *Corinthī, at Corinth*; *Thūriīs, at Thurii*.

41. TERMINATIONS

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.V. us , ě	um	ī	a
G. ī	ī	ōrum	ōrum
D. ō	ō	īs	īs
Ac. um	um	ōs	a
Ab. ō	ō	īs	īs

42. Although the stem ends in *o*, the *o* does not appear except in the dat. and abl. singular and in the gen. and acc. plural.

¹ For peculiarities of nouns in *ius* and *ium* see 79.

43.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

Masculine

amicus, friend.
cibus, food.
discipulus, pupil.
dominus, lord, master.
equus, horse.
servus, slave or servant.

Neuter

bracchium, arm (79).
dōnum, gift.
ōvum, egg.
pīlum, javelin.
pōculum, cup.
vīnum, wine.

ADJECTIVES

dēfessus, -a, -um, tired.
dūrus, -a, -um, hard.
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing.
novus, -a, -um, new.

VERBS

laudat, (he, she, it) praises.¹
laudant, (they) praise.
portat, (he, she, it) carries.
portant, (they) carry.

44. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three terminations to mark the different genders: **bonus**, masculine; **bona**, feminine; **bonum**, neuter. The feminine of the adjective is declined like **tuba**, the masculine like **hortus**, and the neuter like **bellum**. The full declension of **bonus** is given on page 24.²

1. Form the masculine and neuter of all the adjectives in 19 and 29.

NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE

45.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Amīcī bonī.* 2. *Amīcus bonus.* 3. *Amīcōs bonōs.*
 4. *Amīcum bonum.* 5. *Pōculum novum.* 6. *Pōcula nova.*
 7. *Equus dēfessus.* 8. *Equum dēfessum.* 9. *Equōs dēfessōs.*
 10. *Equī dēfessī.* 11. *Pōcula māgna.* 12. *Servōs malōs.*

¹ *Laudat* may be translated *praises, is praising, or does praise.* So of the other verb-forms.

² In declining adjectives, it will be found advantageous to decline each gender separately.

II. In like manner form the nominative and accusative in both numbers of the words meaning *long*¹ *javelin*, *hard master*, *small horse*, *good wine*. Decline together *bonus cibus*, *servus malus*, *vīnum novum*.

46. Examine the following sentences:—

Galba est amīcus, *Galba is a friend*.

Galba et Cornēlia sunt amīcī, *Galba and Cornelia are friends*.

1. Observe in these examples that the subject and predicate nouns are in the same case, just as in English.

47. RULE OF SYNTAX. — A noun in the predicate referring to the same person or thing as the subject is in the same case.

48.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Dōnum est grātum*. 2. *Servus bonus est dēfessus*. 3. *Amīcus pīlum portat*. 4. *Discipulus ōvum dūrum habet*. 5. *Equus dēfessus cibum portat*. 6. *Dōna sunt pōcula parva*. 7. *Discipulus bracchia longa habet*. 8. *Dominī servōs laudant*. 9. *Dominus servum laudat*. 10. *Servī pōcula parva portant*. 11. *Novum equum laudat*. 12. *Equōs novōs laudant*.

II. 1. The servant has the cup. 2. The servants have the cups. 3. The pupil has wine and eggs. 4. The master has good food. 5. The gifts are long javelins. 6. The master and the slave are good friends. 7. The little horses are tired. 8. The new pupil has a big² cup. 9. They praise the second horse. 10. He is praising the good master. 11. They have some³ good friends. 12. The slave carries the cups and wine.

¹ The adjective must be of the same gender as the noun.

² See page 19, note 1.

³ Omit.

GENITIVE AND DATIVE

49.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Amīcīs bonīs. 2. Amīcō bonō. 3. Amīcī bonī. 4. Amīcōrum bonōrum. 5. Pōculō novō. 6. Pōculōrum novōrum. 7. Pōculīs novīs. 8. Equī dēfessī. 9. Equīs dēfessīs. 10. Equōrum dēfessōrum. 11. Equō dēfessō. 12. Servīs bonīs.

II. In like manner, form the genitive and dative in both numbers of the words meaning *long javelin*, *hard master*, *small horse*, *good wine*. Decline together *bonus amīcus*, *discipulus malus*, *dōnum grātum*.

50.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dōnum amīcī bonī est grātum. 2. Servi bonī dominōrum malōrum sunt dēfessī. 3. Amīcīs discipulī dat¹ pīla multa. 4. Amīcō bonō discipulī sunt pīla multa. 5. Amīcī bonōrum discipulōrum pīla multa habent. 6. Equus dēfessus cibum dominī portat. 7. Longa sunt bracchia servi bonī. 8. Dōna dominī servīs sunt grāta. 9. Puellīs parvīs ōva alba dant.¹ 10. Servi rēgīnīs ōva aquilārum dant.

II. 1. The gift is pleasing to the good friend. 2.² The slave has the master's cup. 3.² The servants have the masters' cups. 4. The master gives the slave³ a hard egg. 5. The food of the master is wine and eggs. 6. The master praises the little pupil's cup. 7. The tired horses are carrying gifts for the friend. 8. The girl has many new⁴ friends. 9. The broad cup is pleasing to the new pupil. 10. The eagle's eggs are gifts of the good servant.

¹ When there is no subject expressed in the sentence, how is the verb to be rendered?

² Translate in two ways. See 32.

³ Not accusative.

⁴ Many and new.

51. Answer the following in Latin :¹—

1. Quid portat Jacōbus (James)? 2. Portatne dominō² vīnum et ōva? 3. Nōne³ portat ōva columbae albae? 4. Laudatne caudam longam equī albī? 5. Quid, Jacōbe, habet dominī filia in (*in*) pōculō?

Form and answer five other questions in Latin.

CHAPTER IV

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

52.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

Masculine⁴

agricola, -ae, *farmer*.
nauta, ae, *sailor*.
poēta, -ae, *poet*.
carrus, -ī, *wagon*.
rēmus, -ī, *oar*.
ventus, -ī, *wind*.

Neuter

frūmentum, -ī, *grain*.
pābulum, ī, *fodder*.

ADJECTIVES

clārus, -a, -um, *famous*.
perītus, -a, -um, *skilful*.
quartus, -a, -um, *fourth*.
quīntus, -a, -um, *fifth*.
tertius, -a, -um, *third*.
validus, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy*.

PREPOSITION

in (with ablative), *in, on*.
in (with accusative), *into, to*.

53. In the preceding exercises an adjective qualifying a noun has had the same termination as the noun. Now observe the following examples: *agricola bonus*, a good farmer; *agricolae bonī*, of a good farmer; *agricolae bonō*, to or for a good farmer, etc. Here the adjective has a different termination from the noun. Since *agricola* is masculine, the adjective that goes with it must have the masculine form, as well as the same number and case.

¹ See page 10, note 1.

² *for*, not *to*, the master.

³ When *ne* is appended to *nōn*, the answer *yes* is expected. See

page 10, note 2. So in English, a question asked with *not* expects the answer *yes*.

⁴ See 11. 1.

54. RULE OF SYNTAX. — Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

55.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Agricola¹ validū. 2. Agricola² validum. 3. Agricola³ validōs. 4. Agricola⁴ validus. 5. Agricola⁵ validō. 6. Agricola⁶ validōrum. 7. Agricola⁷ valide.

II. 1. A skilful sailor (*nom. and acc.*). 2. Skilful sailors (*nom. and acc.*). 3. Of a skilful sailor. 4. For a skilful sailor. 5. Skilful sailor (*voc.*). 6. For skilful sailors. 7. Of a famous poet. 8. Of famous poets. 9. Pleasing poets. 10. A pleasing poet (*nom. and acc.*).

56.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hortus agricolae māgnus est. 2. Agricola validus hortum māgnum habet. 3.¹ Agricola² (*dat.*) est hortus māgnus. 4. Nautae rēmus longus est. 5. Poēta vīnum bonum agricolae perītī laudat. 6. Hōra est quarta. 7.² Lūna est plēna. 8. Pābulum equī albī est frūmentum. 9. Dominus servum perītum laudat. 10.³ Nautae (*dat.*) grāta sunt ōva et vīnum agricolae bonī.

II. 1. Ō⁴ agricolā valide, carrus est plēnus frūmentī. 2. Domine bone, secunda hōra est, et discipulus est dēfessus. 3. Hortōs agricolārum perītōrum laudant. 4. Pōculum māgnum est vīnī plēnum. 5. Agricola bonus equō validō dat pābulum.

¹ See 32.

² We may translate, *there is a full moon, it is a full moon, or the moon is full.* There is nothing in Latin answering to our *it* and *there* used in this way at the beginning of a sentence.

³ Translate this sentence without changing the order of the words, and you will feel the emphasis imparted to *nautae* from its position.

⁴ Ō sometimes accompanies the vocative.

57.

EXERCISES

I. 1. The poet likes¹ the farmer's wine. 2.² Farmers have large wagons and strong horses. 3. Skilful sailors like a good breeze. 4. In the garden there³ are many roses. 5. The poet and his³ daughter are in the wagon. 6. The horse carries the farmer's grain. 7. There is wine in the little girl's cup. 8. There are many small⁴ girls in the street. 9. Galba carries fodder for the horses. 10. The food of the little dove is grain.

II. 1. My (*Ō*) good friend, the master's cup is full. 2. The servant gives the queen⁵ a large cup. 3. The strong sailors are carrying javelins in their⁸ arms. 4. In the strong wagon is good fodder for the farmer's horses. 5. In the poet's gardens there are many friends. 6. Farmers have horses, wagons, doves, eggs, and³ wine.

58.

COLLOQUIUM

Datne⁶ Carolus (*Charles*) amīcō cymbam (*boat*) ?

Carolus amīcō cymbam et rēmōs dat.

Quid in cymbā habet Carolus ?

Carolus rēmum et pīlum in cymbā habet.

Quota (*what*) hōra est ?⁷ Hōra est quīnta.

Quid in carrō habet rūsticus (*countryman*) validus ?

Quid in pōculō dēsīderat (*wants*) rūsticus dēfessus ?

¹ Occasionally words occur in the English exercises which are purposely not given as definitions in the vocabularies, but by a little thought the pupil will understand what Latin word is meant.

² Translate in two ways.

³ Omit.

⁴ Many and small.

⁵ Not accusative.

⁶ Remember that *ne* is appended as the sign of a question.

⁷ What time is it ? or, What is the time of day ?

CHAPTER V

SECOND DECLENSION

59.

PARADIGM

Puer, boy.		TERMINATIONS	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. puer	puerī	—	ī
G. puerī	puerōrum	ī	ōrum
D. puerō	puerīs	ō	īs
Ac. puerum	puerōs	um	ōs
Ab. puerō ¹	puerīs	ō	īs

60.

VOCABULARY

gener, -erī, M., son-in-law.	tener, -era, -erum, tender.
liberī, -ōrum, M. (pl.), children.	sextus, -a, -um, sixth.
socer, -erī, M., father-in-law.	ā (ab), prep. w. abl., by, away from.
vir, virī, M., man, hero.	amātur, (he, she, it) is loved.
asper, -era, -erum, rough.	amantur, (they) are loved.
liber, -era, -erum, ² free.	laudātur, (he, she, it) is praised.
miser, -era, -erum, poor, wretched.	laudantur, (they) are praised.
puerī, general word for children.	
liberī, children of free parents.	

61. *The farmer is praised by the queen* would be expressed in Latin thus: *Agricola ā (or ab) rēginā laudātur*; and *The queen is praised by the farmer*, thus: *Rēgina ab (not ā) agricolā laudātur*.

Observe that in the first sentence, *rēginā*, and in the second, *agricolā*, denotes the person by whom the thing is done (the agent); also, that these words are in the ablative, and are preceded by *ā* or *ab*. The ablative thus used, together with the preposition, answers the question *by whom?* and is called the ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

¹ To translate *puerō*, "with, from, by a boy," as is commonly done, is wholly wrong. *With a boy* would be *cum puerō*; *from*, or *by a boy*, *ā puerō*. See page 7, n. 2.

² Decline the masculine of adjectives in *er* in this lesson like *puer*. The full declension is given on page 24.

62. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The agent with passive verbs is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*, — *ab* before vowels or *h*, *ā* or *ab* before consonants.

63. Read again **53** and **54**, then add the proper terminations of the adjectives, and translate the following:—

I. 1. Generī bon-, gener bon- (*nom. and voc.*). 2. Vir māgn-, ā virō māgn-. 3. Ab agricolā dēfess-, agricolae miser-. 4. Ā rēgīnā tener-. 5. Puerī asper-.

II. 1. By the bad father-in-law. 2. By the rough sailor. 3. By the children of the hero. 4. The free men (*nom. and acc.*). 5. Of the wretched sons-in-law.

64.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Gener virī servus est. 2. Puer bonus ab amīcō laudātur. 3. Līberī ā nautā asperō amantur. 4. Puella tenera columbās parvās amat. 5. Columbae parvae ā puellā tenerā amantur. 6. Miserī servī ā dominō bonō laudantur. 7.¹ Lātā in viā sunt puerī multī et asperī. 8. Equī validī agricolae ā liberīs laudantur. 9. Filia socerī est misera. 10. Virī filiās poētae laudant.

II. 1. The sons-in-law of the men are farmers. 2. Good men are praised by their² friends. 3. The boy is loved by the rough sailors. 4. The sixth boy is a new one.² 5. The tired children are in the farmer's wagon. 6. The tender dove is loved by the little girl. 7. Poor slaves are not praised by their rough masters. 8. The strong man is in the poet's garden. 9. The heroes are praised by the pupils. 10. They love the daughter of the poor sailor.

¹ Adjective, preposition, noun, the three are combined. What is is often the order where, as here, the English order? ² Omit.

CHAPTER VI

SECOND DECLENSION

65.

PARADIGM

Ager, <i>field</i> .		TERMINATIONS	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. ager	agr ī	—	ī
G. agr ī	agr ōrum	ī	ōrum
D. agr ō	agr īs	ō	īs
Ac. agr um	agr ōs	um	ōs
Ab. agr ō	agr īs	ō	īs

Observe that the above terminations are the same as those on page 20. Wherein does the declension of *ager* differ from that of *puer*?

66.

VOCABULARY

aper, aprī, M., <i>boar</i> .	aeger, aegra, aegrum, ² <i>sick</i> .
culter, cultrī, M., <i>knife</i> .	niger, nigra, nigrum, <i>black</i> .
faber, -brī, M., <i>smith</i> .	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,
liber, ¹ -brī, M., <i>book</i> .	<i>beautiful, handsome</i> .
magister, -trī, M., <i>master</i> .	ruber, rubra, rubrum, <i>red</i> .
minister, -trī, M., <i>servant</i> .	septimus, -a, -um, <i>seventh</i> .

magister, a *superior, director*; hence, *master* of a school, etc.

dominus (43), *master* of a household, slaves, etc.

minister, an *inferior, attendant, servant*.

servus (43), a *serving man, slave*.

67. Most nouns in *er* are declined like *ager*, and most adjectives in *er* like *aeger*. The most important nouns and adjectives that keep the *e* before *r* in all the cases were given in the vocabulary, 60, and should now be committed to memory.

68. Decline together *equus niger, bonus faber, aper asper, vir aeger*.

¹ Distinguish *liber, free*, from *liber, book*.

² See page 24.

69.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Socer est faber. 2. Magister est discipulī amīcus.
 3. Generī virī sunt ministri. 4. Culter puerō est grātus.
 5. Librī magistrī discipulīs sunt grātī. 6. Vīnum rubrum
 ā fabrō dēfessō amātur. 7. Librī poētae ā magistrō aman-
 tur. 8. Puellae pulchrae virīs rosās rubrās dant. 9. Nauta
 cultrum longum habet. 10.¹ Librōs multōs in bracchiīs
 portat puer...

II. 1. The fathers-in-law are smiths.² 2. The masters
 are loved by their pupils. 3. The man's son-in-law is a
 servant. 4. The knives are pleasing to the little boy.
 5. The pretty³ cups are liked by the boys and girls. 6. A
 girl gives a man⁴ a beautiful rose. 7. The sailors have
 many long knives. 8. The children of the master are
 carrying⁵ the books in their arms. 9. The smith's son-
 in-law has children. 10. There is a rough boar in the
 farmer's field.

70. Answer the following in Latin:—

1. Quis (*who*) est amīcus poētae? 2. Quis est socer
 Carolī? 3. Ubī (*where*) sunt discipulī magistrī? 4. Amantne
 hodiē (*to-day*) pēsum (*task*)? 5. Nōne Carolus colum-
 bae frūmentum hodiē dat? 6. Quae (*who, fem.*) rosās
 rubrās habet? 7. Quis brachia longa habet? 8. Quis est
 vir liber? 9. Ubi est equus rūsticī? 10. Quae puellās
 pulchrās habet? 11. Rēginane puellās pulchrās habet?
 12. Ubi sunt Jacōbī amīcī?

¹ What is peculiar in the order
 of the words? Translate as the
 words stand, and see what word is
 made emphatic by its position.

and sunt? Compare the first three
 sentences in I. See rule, 47.

³ See page 19, note 1.

⁴ Not accusative.

² What case is used after est

⁵ Not passive. See page 14, n. 1.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

71.

PARADIGMS

Bonus, good.

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Sing. N.V.	bon us, ē	bon a	bon um
G.	bon ī	bon ae	bon ī
D.	bon ō	bon ae	bon ō
Ac.	bon um	bon am	bon um
Ab.	bon ō	bon ā	bon ō
Plur. N.V.	bon ī	bon ae	bon a
G.	bon ōrum	bon ārum	bon ōrum
D.	bon īs	bon īs	bon īs
Ac.	bon ōs	bon ās	bon a
Ab.	bon īs	bon īs	bon īs

Liber, free.

Sing. N.V.	liber	liber a	liber um
G.	liber ī	liber ae	liber ī
D.	liber ō	liber ae	liber ō
Ac.	liber um	liber am	liber um
Ab.	liber ō	liber ā	liber ō
Plur. N.V.	liber ī	liber ae	liber a
G.	liber ōrum	liber ārum	liber ōrum
D.	liber īs	liber īs	liber īs
Ac.	liber ōs	liber ās	liber a
Ab.	liber īs	liber īs	liber īs

Aeger, sick.

Sing. N.V.	aeger	aegr a	aegr um
G.	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ī
D.	aegr ō	aegr ae	aegr ō
Ac.	aegr um	aegr am	aegr um
Ab.	aegr ō	aegr ā	aegr ō
Plur. N.V.	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr a
G.	aegr ōrum	aegr ārum	aegr ōrum
D.	aegr īs	aegr īs	aegr īs
Ac.	aegr ōs	aegr ās	aegr a
Ab.	aegr īs	aegr īs	aegr īs

CHAPTER VII

THE IRREGULAR VERB *Sum* (stems *es*, *fu*), *I am*

72. Principal parts, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*.

73. For convenience the inflection of *sum* is given in full. Directions will be given from time to time as to what parts are to be learned.

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR

1. *s um*,¹ *I am*.
2. *es*, *thou art*.²
3. *es t*, *he (she, it) is*.

PLURAL

- s umus*, *we are*.
- es tis*, *you are*.
- s unt*, *they are*.

IMPERFECT

1. *er am*,³ *I was*.
2. *er ās*, *thou wast*.
3. *er at*, *he was*.

- er āmus*, *we were*.
- er ātis*, *you were*.
- er ant*, *they were*.

FUTURE

1. *er ō*,⁴ *I shall be*.
2. *er is*, *thou wilt be*.
3. *er it*, *he will be*.

- er imus*, *we shall be*.
- er itis*, *you will be*.
- er unt*, *they will be*.

PERFECT

1. *fu ī*, *I have been, was*.
2. *fu istī*, *thou hast been, wast*.
3. *fu it*, *he has been, was*.

- fu imus*, *we have been, were*.
- fu istis*, *you have been, were*.
- { *fu ērunt*, or
fu ēre, *they have been, were*.

PLUPERFECT

1. *fu eram*, *I had been*.
2. *fu erās*, *thou hadst been*.
3. *fu erat*, *he had been*.

- fu erāmus*, *we had been*.
- fu erātis*, *you had been*.
- fu erant*, *they had been*.

¹ *Sum* for *esum*.

² Or, *you are*, as in the plural. But in translating into Latin be careful to use the singular form

of the verb, if by *you* one person only is meant.

³ *Eram* for *esam*.

⁴ *Erō* for *esō*.

FUTURE PERFECT

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. fu erō, <i>I shall have been.</i> | fu erīmus, <i>we shall have been.</i> |
| 2. fu erīs, <i>thou wilt have been.</i> | fu erītis, <i>you will have been.</i> |
| 3. fu erit, <i>he will have been.</i> | fu erint, <i>they will have been.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE¹

PRESENT

IMPERFECT

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1. sim	sīmus	es sem	es sēmus
2. sis	sītis	es sēs	es sētis
3. sit	sint	es set	es sent

PERFECT

PLUPERFECT

1. fu erim	fu erīmus	fu issem	fu issēmus
2. fu erīs	fu erītis	fu issēs	fu issētis
3. fu erit	fu erint	fu isset	fu issent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 2. es, <i>be thou.</i> | es te, <i>be ye.</i> |
|------------------------|----------------------|

FUTURE

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 2. es tō, <i>thou shalt be.</i> | es tōte, <i>ye shall be.</i> |
| 3. es tō, <i>he shall be.</i> | suntō, <i>they shall be.</i> |

INFINITIVE

PRESENT, es se, *to be.*PERFECT, fu isse, *to have been.*FUTURE, fu tūrus esse, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE

fu tūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

¹ No meanings that are not misleading can be given of forms of the subjunctive. It is therefore

better left untranslated until its use has been illustrated. The subjunctive is treated on pages 164-186.

CHAPTER VIII

THE VERB *Sum*

74. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive.

75. EXERCISES

I. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Erō, eram, sum. 5. Erās, es, eris. 6. Estis, eritis, erātis. 7. Es, este. 8. Esse.

II. 1. I am, we are, I was, we were, I shall be, we shall be. 2. He was, they were, he is, they are, he will be, they will be. 3. You (*sing.*) will be, are, were. 4. You (*plur.*) will be, are, were. 5. Be ye, be thou. 6. To be.

From this point the vocabularies follow the exercises, and it is recommended that the pupil go through the exercises mentally, referring to the vocabularies for the meanings of words. Before *writing* the translations into Latin the vocabularies should be reviewed, but the task of committing to memory will then be found an easy one.

76. EXERCISES

I. 1. Inimīcus pīlum habet. 2. Inimīcō est pīlum. 3. Sōmnus puerō erit grātus. 4. Līberī agricolae erunt dēfessī. 5. Minerva āram in oppidō habēbat. 6. Minervae in oppidō erat āra. 7. In (*on*) terrā virī, in aquā rānae sunt. 8. Inimīcī erāmus incolārum malōrum. 9. Oculī dominī dūrī erant māgnī et nigrī. 10.¹ Dominō dūrō erant oculī māgnī et nigrī. 11.¹ Dominus dūrus oculōs māgnōs et nigrōs habēbat. 12. Cōnsilium fabrī perītī bonum erat.

¹ What word is better left untranslated, though needed in the Latin?

II. 1.¹ The farmer had a wagon. 2. I shall be the man's friend. 3. There² is a large town on³ the island. 4. There was a red egg on the table. 5. Children were carrying the food of the men. 6. A boy gave a smith⁴ some² javelins. 7. In the town are enemies of the inhabitants. 8. They were praising the words of the sturdy farmer. 9. The poet's gifts will be pleasing to Minerva. 10. Boys, be strong and skilful.

77.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Eritis validō in carrō agricolae perītī. 2. Erās nōnus discipulus et fīlius poētae erat octāvus. 3. Ō miser serve, tū (*thou*) es inimīcus pulchrae Minervae. 4. Amīcus erō Minervae māgnae. 5.⁵ Agricolīs arātra dūra et valida dabant virī. 6. In Britannīā sunt oppida multa et māgna. 7. Puer bone, es amīcus equī miserī.

II. 1. A girl gave a sick sailor⁶ some wine and water. 2. The wine she carried in a pretty⁷ cup. 3. He praised the maiden's⁷ pretty cup and the ruddy wine. 4. The maiden and the sailor were inhabitants of Britain. 5. Britain is a large island, and has handsome towns.

78.

VOCABULARY

aqua, -ae, F., *water*.

āra, -ae, F., *altar*.

arātrum, -ī, N., *plough*.

cōnsilium, -ī, N., *advice, plan*.

incola, -ae, M. & F., *inhabitant*.

inimīcus, -ī, M., *enemy*.

īnsula, -ae, F., *island*.

mēnsa, -ae, F., *table*.

¹ Translate in two ways.

² Omit. See page 18, note 2.

³ See vocabulary, 52.

⁴ Indirect object, see 33 and 34.

⁵ Compare the order with that

of 69. I. 10, and see the note there. What name is given to the dative agricolīs?

⁶ See 69. II. 6 and note.

⁷ See page 19, note 1.

Minerva, -ae, F., *Minerva*, goddess of wisdom.

nōnus, -a, -um, adj., *ninth*.

octāvus, -a, -um, adj., *eighth*.

oculus, -ī, M., *eye*.

oppidum, -ī, N., *town*.

rāna, -ae, F., *frog*.

somnus, -ī, M., *sleep*.

terra, -ae, F., *earth, land*.

verbum, -ī, N., *word*.

amābat, (*he, she, it*) *was loving, loved*.

dabat, (*he, she, it*) *was giving, gave*.

habēbat, (*he, she, it*) *was having, had*.

laudābat, (*he, she, it*) *was praising, praised*.

portābat, (*he, she, it*) *was carrying, carried*.

amābant, *they were loving, loved*.

dabant, *they were giving, gave*.

habēbant, *they were having, had*.

laudābant, *they were praising, praised*.

portābant, *they were carrying, carried*.

79. Nouns in *ius* and *ium* contract the genitive ending *ī* to *i*: **cōnsili**. **Filius** (*son*) and **genius** (*guardian deity*), and proper nouns in *ius*, drop the *e* of the vocative: **filī**, **Mercurī**, *Mercury*. But the word is accented as if the longer form were used.

80.

COLLOQUIUM

Nōne aquam in pōculō habet faber ?

Minimē. Faber in pōculō habet novum vinum.
no

Dēsīderatne Galba somnum grātum ?
wishes

Certē, nam hodiē est Galba dēfessus.
certainly for to-day

Ubi est amīcus agricolae pigrī ?
lazy

Est in oppidō, nam nōn amābat amīcī cōnsilium.

Ubi sunt arma agricolārum validōrum ?
tools

Agricolārum equī, carrī, arātra sunt in agrō.

CHAPTER IX

THE VERB *Sum*

81. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive. See pages 25 and 26.

82.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fuit, fuerat, fuerit. 2. Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint. 3. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 4. Fuerō, fueram, fuī. 5. Fuerās, fueris, fuistī. 6. Fuistis, fueritis, fuerātis. 7. Fuisse.

II. 1. I have been, we have been, I had been. 2. We had been, I shall have been, we shall have been. 3. He has been, they have been, he had been. 4. They had been, he will have been, they will have been. 5. You (*sing.*) will have been, had been, have been. 6. You (*plur.*) will have been, had been, have been. 7. To have been.

83.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In Graeciā erant templa multa. 2. In Graeciā erant templa deōrum et deārum. 3. Aurum erat in statuā Minervae. 4. Minervae fuit statua māgna et clāra. 5. Minerva statuam māgnam et clāram habēbat. 6. Multae et pulchrae erant Graeciae statuae. 7. Nōn alta erant pulchra Graeciae templa. 8. Fluvīi Graeciae nōn lātī et altī erant. 9. Clārī fuērunt multī Graecī. 10. Graecōrum antīquōrum erit glōria sempiterna.

II. 1. They had been in the towns of the Greeks. 2. The monuments of Greece were temples and statues. 3. The statue of Minerva had a shield and spear. 4. The arms of the Greeks were shields and spears. 5. The gods had many statues in Greece. 6. The red roses will be pleasing

to the queen. 7. The man's children are in the street. 8. He has been on the farmer's horse. 9. The children are carried in the poet's arms. 10. Many inhabitants of Britain have been skilful sailors.

84.

VOCABULARY

altus, -a, -um, adj., *deep, high*.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj., *ancient*.

arma, -ōrum, N. (plur.), *arms*.

aureus, -a, -um, adj., *of gold, golden*.

aurum, -ī, N., *gold*.

dea, -ae, F., *goddess* (p. 8, n. 1).

decimus, -a, -um, adj., *tenth*.

deus, -ī, M., *god* (262).

fluvius, -ī, M., *river* (79).

glōria, -ae, F., *glory*.

Graecia, -ae, F., *Greece*.

Graecus, -ī, M., *a Greek*.

hasta, -ae, F., *spear*.

monumentum, -ī, N., *monument*.

scūtum, -ī, N., *shield*.

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj., *everlasting*.

statua, -ae, F., *statue*.

templum, -ī, N., *temple*.

85.

COLLOQUIUM

DUO PUERĪ

two

Ubi est Carolus hodiē? Nōne est in scholā?

Charles

school

Minimē. Est in fluviō; nam habet cymbam parvam, et libenter nāvigat.

likes sailing

Unde Carolō est cymba?

whence to Charles is a boat = Where did C. get a boat?

Ab avunculō, nam Carolus ab avunculō amātur.

from uncle

Quid in cymbā portat Carolus?

Nesciō; procul dubiō prandium; etenim in animō

I don't know

doubtless

luncheon

for

mind

habet. . . .

Quid in animō habet?

Valē, bone amīce, crās patēbit.

good by

to-morrow

it will be open = the secret will be out.

CHAPTER X

FIRST CONJUGATION

86.

Ā-VERBS

Amō (stem amā), *love*.PRINCIPAL PARTS:¹ amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.

ACTIVE VOICE		INDICATIVE		PASSIVE VOICE	
		PRESENT			
<i>I love, am loving, do love, etc.</i>				<i>I am loved, etc.</i>	
am ō	am āmus	am or		am āmur	
am ās	am ātis	am āris, or -re		am āminī	
am at	am ant	am ātur		am antur	
		IMPERFECT			
<i>I loved, was loving, did love, etc.</i>				<i>I was loved, etc.</i>	
am ābam	am ābāmus	am ābar		am ābāmur	
am ābās	am ābātis	am ābāris, or -re		am ābāminī	
am ābat	am ābant	am ābātur		am ābantur	
		FUTURE			
<i>I shall love, etc.</i>				<i>I shall be loved, etc.</i>	
am ābō	am ābimus	am ābor		am ābimur	
am ābis	am ābitis	am āberis, or -re		am ābiminī	
am ābit	am ābunt	am ābitur		am ābuntur	
		PERFECT			
<i>I have loved, I loved, etc.</i>				<i>I have been (was) loved, etc.</i>	
amāv ī	amāv imus	amāt us {	sum	amāt ī {	sumus
amāv istī	amāv istis		es		estis
amāv it	amāv ĕrunt, or -re		est		sunt

¹ Certain forms of the verb are called, from their importance, *principal parts*. These forms are the first person of the present indicative, showing the *present stem*; the present infinitive, showing the *conjugation*; the first person of

the perfect indicative, showing the *perfect stem*; and the perfect participle, showing the *participle stem*. The neuter of the participle is given, as intransitive verbs have the perfect participle only in that gender.

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

PLUPERFECT

*I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāv eram	amāv erāmus	amāt us	{	eram	amāt ī	{	erāmus
amāv erās	amāv erātis			erās			erātis
amāv erat	amāv erant			erat			erant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāv erō	amāv erīmus	amāt us	{	erō	amāt ī	{	erimus
amāv erīs	amāv erītis			eris			eritis
amāv erit	amāv erint			erit			erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE¹

PRESENT

am em	am ēmus	am er	am ēmur
am ēs	am ētis	am ēris, or -re	am ēminī
am et	am ent	am ētur	am entur

IMPERFECT

am ārem	am ārēmus	am ārer	am ārēmur
am ārēs	am ārētis	am ārēris, or -re	am ārēminī
am āret	am ārent	am ārētur	am ārentur

PERFECT

amāv erim	amāv erīmus	amāt us	{	sim	amāt ī	{	sīmus
amāv erīs	amāv erītis			sīs			sītis
amāv erit	amāv erint			sit			sint

PLUPERFECT

amāv issem	amāv issēmus	amāt us	{	essem	amāt ī	{	essēmus
amāv issēs	amāv issētis			essēs			essētis
amāv isset	amāv issent			esset			essent

¹ See p. 26, note.

IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT

am ā, *love thou.*am āte, *love ye.*am āre, *be thou loved.*am āminī, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE

am ātō, *thou shalt love.*am ātō, *he shall love.*am ātōte, *you shall love.*am antō, *they shall love.*am ātor, *thou shalt be loved.*am ātor, *he shall be loved.*am antor, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE

PRES. am āre, *to love.*PERF. amāv isse, *to have loved.*FUT. amāt ūrus esse, *to be about to love.*am ārī, *to be loved.*amāt us esse, *to have been loved.*amāt um īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLE

PRES. am āns, -antis, *loving.*FUT. amāt ūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*PERF. _____¹PRES. _____¹GER.² am andus, -a, -um, *to be loved.*PERF. amāt us, -a, -um, *having been loved.*

GERUND

G. am andī, *of loving.*D. am andō, *for loving.*Ac. am andum, *loving.*Ab. am andō, *by loving.*

SUPINE

Ac. amāt um, *to love.*Ab. amāt ū, *to love, to be loved.*¹ Observe that the Latin has neither a perfect active nor a present passive participle.² Gerundive, sometimes less correctly called *future passive participle*.

CHAPTER XI

FIRST CONJUGATION

87. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *amō*.¹

88.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Amātis, amābātis, amābitis.* 2. *Amātur, amābātur, amābitur.* 3. *Amat, amābat, amābit.* 4. *Amantur, amābantur, amābuntur.* 5. *Amō, amor.* 6. *Amās, amāris.* 7. *Amāmus, amāmur.* 8. *Amābitis, amābiminī.* 9. *Amābat, amābātur.* 10. *Amāre, amārī.*

II. 1. He loves, he is loved. 2. He will love, he will be loved. 3. They were loved, they were loving. 4. I shall love, I shall be loved. 5. You (*sing.*) love, you are loved. 6. They loved, they were loving, they will love. 7. You (*plur.*) are loving, you were loving, you will be loving. 8. Love (*sing.*), be loved. 9. To be loved, to love.

89.

EXERCISES

Laudō, praise; portō, carry; superō, conquer.

I. 1. *Laudat, portat, superat.* 2. *Laudātur, portātur, superātur.* 3. *Laudābitur, portābitur, superābitur.* 4. *Laudāsne? portābāsne? superābisne?* 5. *Laudāmur, portābāmur, superābimur.* 6. *Laudā, portā, superā.* 7. *Superāre, portāre, laudārī.* 8. *Nōn superāminī, nōn portābāminī, nōn laudābiminī.* 9. *Laudāre, portāminī, superāte.* 10. *Laudor, portābar, superābor.*

II. 1. Thou praisest, you carry, he conquers. 2. He is praised, they are carried, they will be conquered. 3. I praise, I was carrying, I shall conquer. 4. Thou art

¹ Notice how frequently the letter *r* marks a form as passive. Where is it absent in the first three tenses of the passive?

praised, thou art carried, thou art conquered. 5. Praise (thou), carry, conquer. 6. He will be conquered, he was praised, it is carried. 7. To conquer, to be carried, to be praised. 8. Do we carry? are we conquered? are we praised? 9. I am not carried, he was not conquered, they are not praised. 10. Thou wilt praise, he will be praised, they were carried.

90. *Examine the following sentences:—*

1. *Agricola ā rēgīnā laudātur, the farmer is praised by the queen.*
2. *Agricola rēgīnae verbīs laudātur, the farmer is praised by the words of the queen.*
3. *Servī gladiīs armantur, the slaves are being armed with swords.*

On the first example see **61** and **62**. In the second and third, observe that there is no *ā* or *ab* used with *verbīs* and *gladiīs*.

These ablatives, *verbīs* and *gladiīs*, answer the questions *by what? with what? by means of what?* The ablative thus used is called the **Ablative of Means or Instrument**.

91. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Means and Instrument are expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

92.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Puellae rosās amant.* 2. *Rosae albae ā puellis amantur.* 3. *Homērus virōs Graecōs laudābat.* 4. *Ab¹ Homērō laudābantur virī Graecī.* 5. *Oppidum nōminābant Rōmam.²* 6. *Oppidum Rōma² nōminābātur.* 7. *Servōs gladiīs armābimus.* 8. *Inimīcus gladiō vulnerātur.* 9. *Inimīcus ā Galbā vulnerātur.* 10. *Ō Rōmānī, servōs hastīs armāte.*

II. 1. Sing, good boy. 2. Many goddesses were loved by the Greeks. 3. The boy will put the doves to flight.

¹ Before words beginning with *h* use *ab*, not *ā*.

² Predicate accusative.

³ Predicate nominative. See **47**.

4. The doves will be put to flight by the boy. 5. We shall invite friends and enemies. 6. Friends and enemies will be invited. 7. The Romans were not loved by the Greeks. 8. You will be summoned by a golden¹ trumpet. 9. The slaves will be armed with javelins. 10. The black horse was wounded by a spear.

93.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dum nōs (*we*) labōrāmus, cantat caecus poēta.
 2. Quid (*what*) cantābat caecus poēta dum labōrābāmus?
 3. Dum in oppidō ambulant dōminī, servī labōrant in agrō.
 4. Puerī vigilābunt dum somnus grātus virōs dēfessōs recreābit.
 5. Nauta dēfessus aquā frīgidā recreābitur. 6. Equī dēfessī pābulō bonō recreābuntur. 7. Verba bona discipulī ā magistrō laudābantur. 8. Mūrī altī ab oppidānīs aedificābantur. 9.² Multōs et altōs mūrōs aedificābunt oppidānī. 10. Nōn ā pigrīs virīs oppidum aedificābātur.

II. 1. While the man was working, the boy was singing.
 2. While the master is being refreshed with sleep, the servant is watching. 3. Pleasant sleep refreshes the weary boy. 4. By pleasant sleep the boy will be refreshed. 5. A high wall is being built by the townsmen. 6. A famous Roman was called the Sword³ of Italy. 7. They called a famous Roman the Sword⁴ of Italy. 8. The tired farmer is refreshed by food and sleep.⁵ 9. We will walk in the streets of the town, while the farmers are working⁶ in the fields. 10. Sing, O blind poet, while we toil.

¹ *Golden*, aureā or ex aurō. The material of which a thing is made is expressed in Latin either by an adjective or by ē(ex) with the ablative. How is it in English?

² Compare, for order, 77. I. 5, and 69. I. 10 and note.

³ *Sword*, in the nominative case, just as if *was* took the place of *was called*. See 92. I. 6 and note.

⁴ *Sword*, in the accusative case. See 92. I. 5 and note.

⁵ Cf. 5 and 6 in I.

⁶ Imitate 4 in I.

94.

VOCABULARY

aedificō, 1, *build*.ambulō, 1, *walk*.armō, 1, *arm*.cantō, 1, *sing*.fugō, 1, *put to flight*.invītō, 1, *invite, summon*.labōrō, 1, *work, toil*.laudō, 1, *praise*.nōminō, 1, *name, call*.portō, 1, *carry*.recreō, 1, *refresh*.superō, 1, *surpass, conquer*.vigilō, 1, *watch*.vulnerō, 1, *wound*.aqua,¹ -ae, F., *water*.aureus, -a, -um, adj., *golden*.caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind*.dum, adv., *while*.ē (ex), prep. w. abl., *out of, from*.frigidus, -a, -um, adj., *cold*.gladius, -ī, M., *sword (79)*.Homērus, -ī, M., *Homer*.Ītalia, -ae, F., *Italy*.mūrus, -ī, M., *wall*.oppidānus, -ī, M., *townsman*.piger, -gra, -grum, adj., *lazy*.Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome*.Rōmānus, -ī, M., *a Roman*.

95.

COLLOQUIUM

PATER ET FILIOLUS

Father and little son

P. Quae, mī filiōle, in pēnsō hodiernō tractābantur?
 what my lesson to-day's treat or discuss

F. Tractābantur cāsus ablātīvus atque verbum amō.
 case and

P. Quid significat Anglicē verbum amō?
 means in English

F. Amō significat "love."

P. Dē ablātīvō quoque mihi nārrā.
 about also me tell

F. Rēgulam dē ablātīvō tibi nārrābō.
 rule you

P. Rēgulamne tibi dabat magister?

F. Certē, rēgulam dē ablātīvō instrūmentī. Cum ablā-
 certainly instrument with

tīvō instrūmentī nunquam pōnitur praepositiō; ante ablātī-
 never is put preposition before

vum agentis semper pōnitur praepositiō ā vel ab.
 of agent always or

P. Optimē, mī puer; tibi erit mālum rubrum.
 well done apple

¹ Words are sometimes purposely repeated in the vocabularies.

CHAPTER XII

FIRST CONJUGATION

96. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *amō*.

97. The compound tenses are formed by combining forms of the verb *sum* with the perfect passive participle. The participle (declined like *bonus*) agrees in gender and number with the subject: *amāta est*, *she was loved*; *amātī sunt*, *they were loved*.

98.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. *Amāvit*, *amāverat*, *amāverit*. 2. *Amātus est*, *amātus erat*, *amātus erit*. 3. *Amāvērunt*, *amāverant*, *amāverint*. 4. *Amāvī*, *amātus sum*. 5. *Amāverāmus*, *amātī erāmus*. 6. *Amāveritis*, *amātī eritis*. 7. *Amāvisse*, *amātus esse*.

II. 1. You loved, you have been loved. 2. You had loved, you had been loved. 3. You will have loved, you will have been loved. 4. He has loved, he has been loved. 5. We had loved, we had been loved. 6. To have been loved, to have loved.

99.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. *Laudātus est*, *portātus est*, *superātus est*. 2. *Laudāvitne?* *portāveratne?* *superāveritne?* 3. *Portāvistī*, *laudāvistis*, *superāvit*. 4. *Superāverās*, *portāveris*, *laudāveritis*. 5. *Laudātī estis*, *portāta sunt*, *superātus es*. 6. *Nōne laudātae sunt?* *nōne portātae estis?* *nōne superātae sumus?* 7. *Portāvī*, *laudātus sum*, *superātus eram*. 8. *Nōn laudāvimus*, *nōn portāverimus*, *nōn superāverō*. 9. *Laudāvisse*, *portāvisse*, *superāvisse*. 10. *Portātus esse*, *superātus esse*, *laudātus esse*.

II. 1. They have carried, we have been praised, you have been conquered. 2. Have I praised? have you been carried? had they conquered? 3. We had been carried, I shall have

praised, they will have been conquered. 4. You had not carried, thou hadst not praised, thou hadst not been conquered. 5. To have been conquered, to have praised, to have carried. 6. I had praised, I had been conquered, I (*fem.*) had been carried. 7. Has it not been praised? will it not have been carried? have they not been conquered? 8. We (*fem.*) had been carried, thou wilt have praised, he conquered. 9. They praised, you carried, we conquered. 10. I was praised, thou wast conquered, it was carried.

100. In Latin, the words for *my, thy, your, our, his, her, its, and their*, are very often omitted when they are not emphatic. Accordingly, in the exercises to be turned into Latin, leave these words untranslated for the present.

101.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pūgna fortūnā mūtāta est. 2. Fortūna pūgnam mūtāvit. 3. Rōmānī Graecōs superāverant. 4. Graeci ā Rōmānīs superātī erant. 5. Virī multī et ēgregiī agrōs arāvērunt. 6. Ministrī scūtīs armātī sunt. 7. Agricola ēgregius ā ministrō miserō vituperātus est. 8. Agrī lātī ab agricolīs arātrō māgnō arātī sunt. 9. Magister malōs discipulōs vituperāvit. 10. Poēta pūgnās et victōriās virōrum clārōrum cantāvit.

Read again the explanations and rules on pp. 20, 21, and 36.

II. 1. An eagle changed the fortune of the battle. 2. We shall witness a battle on the broad river. 3. Many good men will have been blamed by their enemies. 4. The boys will have recited to their master. 5. The land in Italy has been ploughed with iron ploughs. 6. The master freed his pupils from their hard tasks (*abl.*). 7. The goddess Minerva has been praised by many poets. 8. The victories of famous men have been sung by the poets. 9. The tyrant armed a great number of slaves with swords.

102.

VOCABULARY

arō, 1, <i>plough.</i>	ferreus, -a, -um, adj., <i>of iron, iron.</i>
liberō, 1, <i>free, set free.</i>	fortūna, -ae, F., <i>fortune.</i>
mūtō, 1, <i>change.</i>	numerus, -ī, M., <i>number.</i>
recitō, 1, <i>read aloud, recite.</i>	pēsum, -ī, N., <i>task, lesson.</i>
spectō, 1, <i>look at, witness.</i>	pūgna, -ae, F., <i>battle.</i>
superō, 1, <i>surpass, conquer.</i>	scūtum, -ī, N., <i>shield.</i>
vituperō, 1, <i>blame, censure.</i>	terra, -ae, F., <i>earth, land.</i>
	tyrannus, -ī, M., <i>tyrant.</i>
ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., <i>excellent.</i>	victōria, -ae, F., <i>victory.</i>

CHAPTER XIII

THIRD DECLENSION

103. The stem ends in a consonant or in *i*.

104. Consonant stems are named, according to their final letter, *mute stems*, *liquid stems*, *sibilant stems*. See 3.

MUTE STEMS

105.

PARADIGMS

Prīnceps, M., <i>chief.</i>	Rēx, M., <i>king.</i>	Jūdex, M., <i>judge.</i>	Aetās, F., <i>age.</i>	Caput, N., <i>head.</i>
Stem prīncip-	St. rēg-	St. jūdic-	St. aetāt-	St. capit-
SINGULAR				
N.V. prīncep s	rēx	jūdex	aetā s	caput
G. prīncip is	rēg is	jūdic is	aetāt is	capit is
D. prīncip ī	rēg ī	jūdic ī	aetāt ī	capit ī
Ac. prīncip em	rēg em	jūdic em	aetāt em	caput
Ab. prīncip e	rēg e	jūdic e	aetāt e	capit e
PLURAL				
N.V. prīncip ēs	rēg ēs	jūdic ēs	aetāt ēs	capit a
G. prīncip um	rēg um	jūdic um	aetāt um	capit um
D. prīncip ibus	rēg ibus	jūdic ibus	aetāt ibus	capit ibus
Ac. prīncip ēs	rēg ēs	jūdic ēs	aetāt ēs	capit a
Ab. prīncip ibus	rēg ibus	jūdic ibus	aetāt ibus	capit ibus

Pēs, M., <i>foot</i> . Mīlēs, M., <i>soldier</i> .		TERMINATIONS MASC. & FEM.	
St. ped-	St. milit-		
SINGULAR		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.V. pēs	mīles	s	ēs
G. pedis	militis	is	um
D. pedi	militi	i	ibus
Ac. pedem	militem	em	ēs
Ab. pede	militē	e	ibus
PLURAL		NEUTER	
N.V. pedēs	militēs	—	a
G. pedum	militum	is	um
D. pedibus	militibus	i	ibus
Ac. pedēs	militēs	—	a
Ab. pedibus	militibus	e	ibus

106. Observe that the vowel before the final consonant of the stem is not always the same in the nominative as in the other cases.

107. Consonant stems may be found by dropping the termination of the genitive singular. But there are some exceptions.

108. Decline *grex*, *poēma*, *servitūs*. Decline together *lapis asper*, *fidus comēs*, and *mīlēs aeger*. For the nouns, see 110.

109.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Poēta comitī aegrō poēma grātum recitāvit. 2. Comēs poētae poēmate grātō liberātus est cūrā.¹ 3. Māgnus erat equitum numerus. 4. Militēs multī ā servō dominī invītātī sunt. 5. Gregēs albōs habent agricolae² insulae vicīnae. 6. Ager vicīnus lapidēs multōs et asperōs habet. 7. In agrō vicīnō sunt lapidēs multī et asperī. 8. Servitūs ā virīs nōn est amāta. 9. Pēs puerī lapide asperō vulnerātus est. 10. Rēgis amīcī ā militibus gladiīs et pilīs sunt fugātī.

II. 1. The king has changed the fortune of the war. 2. The fortune of the war was changed by the king. 3. The

¹ from care. See 101. II. 6.

² The subject.

soldiers will free the king. 4. The king will be freed by the soldiers. 5. The king had armed the soldiers with shields and spears. 6. Dædalus fitted wings to his son. 7. Wings were fitted to his son by Dædalus. 8. We shall read aloud the poems of Homer. 9. The girl sings for the weary soldier and is praised.

110.

VOCABULARY

comēs, -itis, M. & F., *companion*.

equēs, -itis, M., *horseman*.

grex, gregis, M., *flock, herd*.

lapis, -idis, M., *stone*.

mīlēs, -itis, M., *soldier*.

pēs, pēdis, M., *foot*.

poēma, -ātis, N., *poem*.

rēx, rēgis, M., *king*.

servitūs, -ūtis, F., *slavery*.

voluptās, -ātis, F., *pleasure*.

aptō, 1, *fit*.

Daedalus, -ī, M., *Daedalus, builder of the Labyrinth*.

filius, -ī, M., *son (79)*.

vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring*.

111.

COLLOQUIUM

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA

brother

little sister

S. Quid hodiē nārrāvit magister in scholā?

to-day

school

F. Nārrāvit dē Īcarō, Daedalī filiō.

S. Mihi quoque dē Īcarō Latīnē nārrā. Fuitne Īcarus

me

also

in Latin

puer malus?

F. Minimē malus sed miserrimus. Habēbat ālās; ālās

not

unfortunate

wings

cērā aptāverat Daedalus; Īcarus ēvolāvit et cēra sōle

wax

flew away

sun

liquefacta est. Tum . . .

was melted

then

S. Tum . . . quid?

F. Mihi nōn sunt verba Latīna. Itaque haesitō.

words

that is why hesitate

S. Ergō nārrā Anglicē. Nam linguam Anglicam intellegō.

well, then

language

understand

F. Minimē. Latīnē tibi nārrō, nōn Anglicē.

by no means

CHAPTER XIV

SECOND CONJUGATION

112.

Ē-VERBS

Moneō (stem monē), *advise*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I advise, etc.**I am advised, etc.*

mon eō mon ēmus

mon eor

mon ēmur

mon ēs mon ētis

mon ēris, or -re mon ēminī

mon et mon ent

mon ētur

mon entur

IMPERFECT

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

mon ēbam mon ēbāmus

mon ēbar

mon ēbāmur

mon ēbās mon ēbātis

mon ēbāris, or -re mon ēbāminī

mon ēbat mon ēbant

mon ēbātur

mon ēbantur

FUTURE

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

mon ēbō mon ēbimus

mon ēbor

mon ēbimur

mon ēbis mon ēbitis

mon ēberis, or -re mon ēbiminī

mon ēbit mon ēbunt

mon ēbitur

mon ēbuntur

PERFECT

*I have advised, I advised, etc.**I have been (was) advised, etc.*

monu ī monu imus

monu istī monu istis

monu it monu ērunt, or -re

monit us	{	sum	monit ī	{	sumus
		es			estis
		est			sunt

PLUPERFECT

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monu eram monu erāmus

monu erās monu erātis

monu erat monu erant

monit us	{	eram	monit ī	{	erāmus
		erās			erātis
		erat			erant

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monu erō monu erīmus

monu erīs monu erītis

monu erit monu erint

monit us {
erō
eris
eritmonit ī {
erimus
eritis
erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

mon eam mon eāmus

mon eās mon eātis

mon eat mon eant

mon ear

mon eāmur

mon eāris, or -re

mon eāminī

mon eātur

mon eantur

IMPERFECT

mon ērem mon ērēmus

mon ērēs mon ērētis

mon ēret mon ērent

mon ērer

mon ērēmur

mon ērēris, or -re

mon ērēminī

mon ērētur

mon ērentur

PERFECT

monu erim monu erīmus

monu erīs monu erītis

monu erit monu erint

monit us {
sim
sīs
sitmonit ī {
sīmus
sītis
sint

PLUPERFECT

monu issem monu issēmus

monu issēs monu issētis

monu isset monu issent

monit us {
essem
essēs
essetmonit ī {
essēmus
essētis
essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

mon ē, advise thou.

mon ēte, advise ye.

mon ēre, be thou advised.

mon ēminī, be ye advised.

FUTURE

mon ētō, thou shalt advise.

mon ētō, he shall advise.

mon ētōte, you shall advise.

mon entō, they shall advise.

mon ētor, thou shalt be advised.

mon ētor, he shall be advised.

mon entor, they shall be advised.

ACTIVE	INFINITIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. mon ēre , <i>to advise.</i>	mon ērī , <i>to be advised.</i>	
PERF. monu isse , <i>to have advised.</i>	monit us esse , <i>to have been advised.</i>	
FUT. monit ūrus esse , <i>to be about to advise.</i>	monit um irī , <i>to be about to be advised.</i>	

PARTICIPLE

PRES. mon ēns, -entis , <i>advising.</i>	PRES. ———
FUT. monit ūrus, -a, -um , <i>about to advise.</i>	GER. mon endus -a, -um , <i>to be advised.</i>
PERF. ———	PERF. monit us, -a, -um , <i>having been advised.</i>

GERUND

- G. mon **endī**, *of advising.*
 D. mon **endō**, *for advising.*
 Ac. mon **endum**, *advising.*
 Ab. mon **endō**, *by advising.*

SUPINE

- Ac. monit **um**, *to advise.*
 Ab. monit **ū**, *to advise, to be advised.*

CHAPTER XV

SECOND CONJUGATION

113. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *moneō*.

114.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Monet, monētur. 2. Monēbat, monēbātur. 3. Monēbit, monēbitur. 4. Monē, monēre. 5. Monēte, monēmini. 6. Monēbimus, monēbimur. 7. Monēmus, monēmur. 8. Monēbās, monēs. 9. Monēbis, monēris. 10. Monērī, monēre.

I. 1. You are advising, you will be advised, you were advised. 2. Advise ye, be ye advised. 3. We do advise,

we are advising, we shall be advising. 4. We were advising, we were advised. 5. They are advised, they advised, they were advising. 6. They will advise, they will be advised.

115.

EXERCISES

Habeō, have, or hold; dēleō,¹ destroy; terreō, frighten.

I. 1. Habet, dēlēbat, terrēbit. 2. Nōne habēmus? nōne dēlēbāmus? nōne terrēbimus? 3. Dēlēs, habēbās, terrēbunt. 4. Habēte, terrēte, dēlēte. 5. Dēlētur,² habēbātur, terrēbātur.² 6. Terrēre, dēlēri, habēri. 7. Habetne? dēlētur? terrēbatne? 8. Dēlēbitur, habēbantur, terrēbimī. 9. Nōn terrēmus, nōn dēlēbunt, nōn habent. 10. Habēbuntur, terrentur, dēlēbantur.

II. 1. We are held, they will be destroyed, he was frightened. 2. I frighten, thou hast (you have) destroyed. 3. To have, to destroy, to be frightened. Is he frightened? are they destroyed? were you held? 5. Destroy (thou), have (ye); frighten. Have we not? does he not frighten? did he destroy? 7. You will be frightened, it is held, he was frightened. 8. I was holding, he was destroying, they were frightening. 9. I shall destroy, we shall frighten, they will be.

116.

EXERCISES

Before translating the following exercises, review the tables of declensions and terminations, pp. 41 and 42.

I. 1. Poenam merēbis, sī memoriam nōn exercēbis.³

¹ For principal parts of *dēleō*, see vocabulary, 119.

² The present, which denotes continued action, means *it is being (destroyed)*; the imperfect, *he was being (frightened)*.

³ Translate as if it were the present tense; but in Latin the future is necessary, because future time is meant. Cf. 93. I. 4. Observe the difference between the Latin and English idioms.

2. Exercē memoriam, comēs. 3. Studium memoriam auget. 4. Mīlitēs ā ducibus exercentur et docentur. 5. Perīcula mīlitēs nōn terrēbunt. 6. Perīculum nōn timēbit mīlēs. 7. Oppidum ā mīlitibus tenētur. 8. Jūdicēs poenīs malōs coercent. 9. Quid vidēs? 10. Multa videō.

II. 1. The tyrant is restrained. 2. The water of the river was increased. 3. The leader will have a statue. 4. The faithful comrade advises his friend. 5. The friend is advised by his faithful companion. 6. Lazy slaves fear a hard master. 7. A hard master is feared by lazy slaves. 8. Italy is the land of famous poets. 9. The soldiers will not be terrified by dangers. 10. The boy remembered the master's words.

117. *Malōs* (I. 8), *bad men*, and *multa* (I. 10), *many things*, are examples of the frequent use in Latin of an adjective without a noun. Compare, in English, *the good*, *the wise*.

118.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equōs et equitēs multōs in viā videō. 2. Cŷrus, prīmus Persārum rēx,¹ nōmina² mīlitum memoriā tenēbat. 3. Sī oppidum dēlēbunt, poenam merēbunt. 4. Prīncipēs ā templō deī prohibēbimus. 5. Voluptātēs memoriae augēbantur. 6. Studiō augētur memoria. 7. Mīlitēs ā prīncipe monēbantur. 8. Rēx māgnū mīlitum numerum tenēbat. 9. Prīnceps equitēs pigrōs exercēbat.

II. 1. In ancient states there were many slaves. 2. Why had the ancient Romans many slaves? 3. We saw the great number of horsemen in the road and were frightened. 4. Roman boys were often taught by Greek slaves. 5. Greek slaves often taught Roman boys. 6. The horsemen were trained by the king's son. 7. Many horses and horsemen are seen in the town. 8. The chief will deserve a great victory.

¹ *Rēx*, in apposition with *Cŷrus*. See 157.

² *names*.

119.

VOCABULARY

coerceō, 2, -uī, -itum, *check, restrain*.

exerceō, 2, -uī, -itum, *train, exercise*.

habeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *have, hold*.

mereō, 2, -uī, -itum, *deserve, merit*.

prohibeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *prevent, keep off*.

terreō, 2, -uī, -itum, *frighten*.

timeō, 2, -uī, —, *fear*.

augeō, 2, auxī,¹ auctum, *increase*.

dēleō, 2, -ēvī,² -ētum, *destroy*.

doceō, 2, -uī, doctum,³ *teach*.

teneō, 2, -uī, tentum,⁴ *keep, hold*.

videō, 2, vīdī,⁵ vīsum, *see*; passive, *seem*.

antīquus, -a, -um, adj., *old, ancient*.

cīvitās, -ātis, F., *state*.

cūr, adv., *why?*

Cȳrus, -ī, M., *Cyrus*.

dux, ducis, M. & F., *leader, general*.

fīdus, -a, -um, adj., *faithful*.

memoria, -ae, F., *memory*.

memoriā teneō, *remember*.

perīculum, -ī, N., *danger*.

poena, -ae, F., *punishment*.

quid, interrog. pron., *what?*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman* (94).

saepe, adv., *often*.

sī, conj., *if*.

studium, -ī, N., *zeal, study*.

templum, -ī, N., *temple*.

CHAPTER XVI

SECOND CONJUGATION

120. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of moneō.

121.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Monuī, monuerat, monuerit. 2. Monuērunt, monuerant, monuerint. 3. Monuī, monitus sum. 4. Monuerit, monitus erit. 5. Monuistī, monuerās, monueris. 6. Monitus est, monitus erat, monitus erit. 7. Monuisse, monitus esse.

II. 1. You have advised, you had advised, you will have advised. 2. They have been advised, they had been advised,

¹ Auxī for aug-sī. See p. 1, n. 2.

² Only fleō, *weep*, neō, *spin*, and the compounds of the obsolete pleō, *fill*, are conjugated like dēleō, with the perfect in ēvī.

³ Observe, not docitum.

⁴ Observe, not tenitum.

⁵ Vīdī. Perfect stem formed by lengthening the vowel of the present stem, vīd to vīd.

they will have been advised. 3. I had advised, I had been advised. 4. He has advised, he has been advised. 5. We have advised, we have been advised. 6. To have been advised, to have advised.

122.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Habuit, dēlēvit, terruit. 2. Habuistī, dēlēvistī, ter-
ruistī. 3. Nōndēlēvimus, nōndēlēverāmus, nōndēlēverimus.
4. Dēlētum est, territus erat, hābita sunt. 5. Habuerōne?
estne territa? suntne dēlētāe? 6. Nōnne habuerātis?
nōnne dēlētum erat? nōnne terruērunt? 7. Terruisse,
dēlēvisse, habitus esse. 8. Dēlēverās, territus ērās, habu-
istis. 9. Habuerint, dēlētum erit, habuērunt. 10. Dēlētā
sunt, habitī sumus, territae estis.

II. 1. They have had, they have frightened, they have
destroyed. 2. I had had, I had been frightened, I had
destroyed. 3. Have you had? had he destroyed? has he
frightened? 4. We had not destroyed, they (*fem.*) had not
been frightened, you had not destroyed. 5. We have had,
we shall have destroyed, we had been frightened. 6. To
have destroyed, to have been held, to have been fright-
ened. 7. Have you been frightened? had they (*neut.*)
been destroyed? has she had? 8. I have destroyed, I have
not had, I shall not have been frightened. 9. They will
have had, they will have been frightened, they (*neut.*)
will have been destroyed. 10. Have you not had? did
they not destroy? have you (*fem.*) not been frightened?

123.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēx Rōmam obsēderat. 2. Rōma ā rēge obsessa
erat. 3. Scriba cum (*with*) rēge sedēbat. 4. Īra ferōcem
(*fierce*) animum virī mōvit. 5. Rēgulī conjugī et liberīs

alimenta praebuērunt Rōmānī. 6. Captīvī retentī sunt. 7. Novamne lūnam vīdistī? 8. Aquila in (on) templō sēdit. 9. Poēta flēvit quia filius captīvus erat. 10. Caesar oppidum Galliae obsēdit.

II. 1. The town was besieged by the general. 2. Why did the general besiege the town? 3. The king is sitting¹ with his clerk. 4. The minds of the men were moved with anger. 5. Regulus was retained (as) a prisoner.² 6. Regulus deserved great glory. 7. The new moon has been seen. 8. The commander's daughter was a prisoner. 9. We wept because we were prisoners. 10. The town had been besieged by Pyrrhus:

124.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Militibus magna praemia ā rēge praebita sunt. 2. Militēs timuērunt quia elephantōs vīdērunt. 3. Numerum verbōrum auximus. 4. Caesar militēs in oppidō retinuerat. 5. Jūdicum bonōrum memoria nunquam delēbitur. 6. Multa Rōmānōrum monumenta³ delēta sunt. 7. Dux castra ab oppidō mōverat. 8. Dominus servōs in servitūte tenuit. 9. Multa verba in memoriā mānsērunt. 10. Militis conjunx in Minervae templō sedēbat.

II. 1. The king furnished food for his weary soldiers. 2. Elephants had frightened the horses of the Romans. 3. Have you increased the number of your friends? 4. Cæsar's soldiers were besieged in the town. 5. The sword of the tyrant has restrained the judge. 6. War has destroyed many monuments³ of great men. 7. The camp had been moved away from the town. 8. We weep if our children are held in slavery. 9. Shall you remain in Italy?

¹ Not passive.

² Predicate nom.; see 47.

³ When a noun is limited both

by an adjective and a genitive, the order often is: *adjective, genitive, noun*. Cf. 118. I. 2 and 8.

125.

VOCABULARY

fleō, 2, flēvī, flētum, *weep, bewail.*

maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsum, *remain, await.*

moveō, 2, mōvī,¹ mōtum, *move.*

ob-sideō, 2, -sēdī,¹ -sessum, *besiege.*

praebeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *furnish.*

re-tineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentum, *keep back, retain.*

sedeō, 2, sēdī,¹ sessum, *sit.*

alimentum, -ī, N., *food, support.*

animus, -ī, M., *mind.*

Caesar, -aris, M., *Cæsar* (134).

captivus, -ī, M., *prisoner, captive.*

castra, -ōrum, N. (pl.), *camp.*

conjunx, conjugis, F., *wife.*

elephantus, -ī, M., *elephant.*

ira, -ae, F., *anger.*

lūna, -ae, F., *moon.*

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new.*

nunquam, adv., *never.*

praemium, -ī, N., *reward.*

Pyrrhus, -ī, M., *Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.*

quia, conj., *because.*

Rēgulus, -ī, M., *Regulus, a Roman.*

scriba, -ae, M., *clerk* (11. 1).

126.

COLLOQUIUM

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS

P. Latīnē mihi interrogantī respondē sī possīs. Quae
to me asking answer you can what.
 insula Graeciae est parva quidem sed clāra?
to be sure

D. Admodum clāra est Ithaca insula, ubi habitābat
very where

Ulixēs.

Ulysses

P. Rēctē, mī puer, Ulixēs Ithacae rēx fuit et dux in
right leader
 bellō ēgregius. Quis cantāvit dē Ulixē ēgregiō?

D. Homērus, poēta caecus, quī autem Ulixem nunquam
blind who however never
 vīderat.

P. Tenēsne memoriā nōmen fidī servī Ulixis?
name

D. Servus Ulixis fidus erat Eumaeus.

¹ See page 49, note 5.

CHAPTER XVII

REVIEW

127.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Magister discipulōs invitāvit. 2. Nōnne ā magistrō discipulī invitātī sunt? 3. Vidistīne agricolārum arātra ferrea? 4. Militēs lapidēs māgnōs portābant. 5. Rēx ab oppidō castra mōvit. 6. Gregis custōdēs lapidibus fugātī sunt. 7. Mi¹ fili, poēmata Homērī recitāvistīne? 8. Sī oppidum tenuerimus, victōriam merēbimus. 9. Conjugēs militum pūgnam spectābant et flēbant. 10. In Italiā antīquā ā Pyrrhō Ēpīrī rēge superātī sunt Rōmānī.

II. 1. We shall see the flocks in the fields. 2. The king was not frightened by the elephant.² 3. Horses are frightened by elephants. 4. The townsmen were sitting on the wall. 5. The prisoners were wounded by the soldiers with their swords. 6. My boy, what are you looking at? 7. Do you not see the horsemen's swords? 8. Do you remember the poems of the Roman poet? 9. The king's sons were finding fault with fortune. 10. Why are the townsmen armed with swords?

128. *Examine the two following groups of sentences:—*

1. Iter ab Arare Helvētīī āverterant, *the Helvetii had turned their course from the Arar.*
2. Arāneās dēiciam dē pariete, *I will brush down the cobwebs from the wall.*
3. Hannibal ex Italiā excessit, *Hannibal withdrew from Italy.*
1. Nōs cūrā liberābis, *you will free us from care.*
2. Oculīs sē prīvāvit, *he deprived himself of his sight (eyes).*
3. Homo cibō caret, *the man is in want of food.*

129. The verbs have the general idea of *separation*; and in the first group the ablative with a preposition, in the second the ablative

¹ Vocative singular of *meus*, *my*.

² See 62.

alone, answers the question *from what? of what?* Observe further, that the verbs of the first group are compounds of *ā*, *dē*, *ex*, and the "separation" is *literal*, or *physical*; in the second group the "separation" is *figurative*, or less literal.

130. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Separation is expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*), in connection with verbs compounded with these prepositions,¹ or by the ablative alone with simple verbs meaning *to set free, deprive, or want*.

✓ **131.** **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Hunc (*him*) *ā* tuis *ārīs* arcēbis. 2. Filius rēgis Rōmānōs cūrā liberāvit. 3. Rōmānī *ā* filiō rēgis cūrā liberātī sunt. 4. Vir aeger aquā privātus est. —5. Servi servitūte liberābuntur. 6. Dux Rōmānus Corinthum multis statuīs privāvit. 7. Servi, equīs dēfessīs aquam praebe'te. 8.² Sātūrnus Italōs agrī cultūram docuit. 9. Liber vīnī erat deus et in Italiā templa multa habēbat. 10. Avārī milites *ārās* dōnīs spoliānt. 11. Mī puer, equus pābulō et aquā caret.

Before translating the following sentences, read over the explanations and rules on pp. 20, 21, and 36, and consider what expressions are equivalent to the Latin ablative of *agent* with *ā* or *ab*, the ablative of *means*, and the ablative of *separation*.

II. 1. They deprived the sick man of water. 2. The state was freed from the tyrant by Brutus. 3. The Italians were taught by Saturn. 4. The leader adorned the town with statues. 5. The horsemen are in want of swords and horses. 6. Corinth was robbed of many statues by a Roman general. 7. The goddess will keep off the Romans

¹ With other verbs than those indicated in 129 and 130, of similar meaning, the preposition is sometimes used and sometimes omitted.

² Observe the two accusatives, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*, with *doceō*.

from her temple. 8. The town was destroyed by the plans of the general. 9. Will not the Romans be kept off from the temple? 10. They thrust forth the leaders from the town. 11. The leaders are hustled out of town.

132.

VOCABULARY

agrī cultūra, -ae, F., <i>agriculture</i> .	exturbō, 1, <i>thrust out</i> .
avārus, -a, -um, adj., <i>greedy</i> .	Italus, -i, M., <i>an Italian</i> .
arceō, 2, -uī, —, <i>keep off</i> .	Liber, -erī, M., <i>Bacchus</i> , god of wine.
Brūtus, -ī, M., <i>Brutus</i> , a Roman.	meus, -a, -um, poss. adj., <i>my, mine</i> .
careō, 2, -uī, -itum, <i>want, lack</i> .	ōrnō, 1, <i>adorn</i> .
causa, -ae, F., <i>cause</i> .	privō, 1, <i>deprive</i> . [agriculture.
Corinthus, -ī, F., <i>Corinth</i> (11.4).	Sāturnus, -ī, M., <i>Saturn</i> , god of
custōs, -ōdis, M. & F., <i>keeper</i> .	spoliō, 1, <i>rob, despoil</i> .
Ēpirus, -ī, F., <i>Epirus</i> (11.4).	tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj., <i>thy, your</i> .

133.

COLLOQUIUM

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS

- P. Dīc mihi, puer, elephantōsne aliquandō vīdistī?
tell ever
- D. Certē, praeceptor, elephantōs māgnōs et parvōs vīdī.
- P. In agrīsne?
- D. Minimē vērō; in circō et interdum in viīs.
indeed circus sometimes
- P. Quis rēx clārus elephantōrum auxiliō pūgnābat?
what aid
- D. Pyrrhus, rēx Ēpirī, ita pūgnābat.
- P. Nōnne elephantī equōs Rōmānōrum terrēbant?
- D. Terrēbant. Militēs quoque terrēbantur.
yes also
- P. Superāvitne Pyrrhus Rōmānōs?
- D. Saepe superāvit.
often
- P. Quibus armīs pūgnant elephantī?
with what
- D. Dentibus, proboscide, pedibus, capite pūgnant.
tusks trunk feet

CHAPTER XVIII

THIRD DECLENSION

LIQUID STEMS

134.

PARADIGMS

Cōnsul, M., <i>consul.</i> St. cōnsul-	Pater, M., <i>father.</i> St. patr-	Pāstor, M., <i>shepherd.</i> St. pāstōr-	Leō, M., <i>lion.</i> St. leōn-
SINGULAR			
N.V. cōnsul	pater	pāstor	leō
G. cōnsul is	patr is	pāstōr is	leōn is
D. cōnsul ī	patr ī	pāstōr ī	leōn ī
Ac. cōnsul em	patr em	pāstōr em	leōn em
Ab. cōnsul e	patr e	pāstōr e	leōn e
PLURAL			
N.V. cōnsul ēs	patr ēs	pāstōr ēs	leōn ēs
G. cōnsul um	patr um	pāstōr um	leōn um
D. cōnsul ibus	patr ibus	pāstōr ibus	leōn ibus
Ac. cōnsul ēs	patr ēs	pāstōr ēs	leōn ēs
Ab. cōnsul ibus	patr ibus	pāstōr ibus	leōn ibus
Imāgō, F., <i>image.</i> St. imāgin-	Nōmen, N., <i>name.</i> St. nōmin-	TERMINATIONS	
SINGULAR		MASC. & FEM.	
		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.V. imāgō	nōmen	—	ēs
G. imāgin is	nōmin is	is	um
D. imāgin ī	nōmin ī	ī	ibus
Ac. imāgin em	nōmen	em	ēs
Ab. imāgin e	nōmin e	e	ibus
PLURAL		NEUTER	
N.V. imāgin ēs	nōmin a	—	a
G. imāgin um	nōmin um	is	um
D. imāgin ibus	nōmin ibus	ī	ibus
Ac. imāgin ēs	nōmin a	—	a
Ab. imāgin ibus	nōmin ibus	e	ibus

135. *Examine the following: —*

1. Hieme et aestāte, *in winter and summer.*
2. Sōlis occāsū,¹ *at the setting of the sun.*
3. Primā lūce, *at daybreak (first light).*
4. His vīgintī annīs, *within these twenty years.*

It will be seen that the above phrases are expressions of *time*, and answer the question *when?* or, *within what time?*

136. RULE OF SYNTAX. — *Time when* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; *time within which*, by the ablative alone, or by the ablative with *in*.

137.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Tertiā hōrā militēs fugātī sunt. 2. Primō annō Brūtum cōsulem creāvērunt Rōmānī. 3. Oppidum militibus ab imperātōre implētum est. 4. Imperātor oppidum militibus implēbit. 5. Terror clāmōre hominum augētur. 6. Clāmōrēs dēfēnsōrum omnēs² puerōs³ terrēbunt. 7. Nōmen et imāginem amīcī semper in memoriā habēbat. 8. Semper erit clārum imperātōris ēgregiī nōmen. 9. Nōne Hannibal Rōmānīs fuit terror? 10. Hannibal fortitudinem māgnam semper habēbat.

II. 1. Europe has no⁴ lions. 2. A slave had a great lion. 3. The name of the slave was Androclus. 4. There are many lions in Africa. 5. The friend of my brothers has seen a lion. 6. A lion has been seen by my father and my brother. 7. The shouts of the soldiers scared the men in the town. 8. The defenders of the town were scared by the shouts of the men. 9. Why are many men miserable in time⁵ of war? 10. Do we not see by the sun's light? 11. At daybreak they saw Hannibal's horsemen.

¹ Ablative of the fourth declension. See 245.

² All.

³ Children. See 60.

⁴ Not.

⁵ Tempore.

138.

VOCABULARY

clāmor, -ōris, M., *shout*.
 dēfēnsor, -ōris, M., *defender*.
 fortitūdō, -inis, F., *bravery*.
 frāter, -tris, M., *brother*.
 Hannibal, -ālis, M., *Hannibal*, a
 Carthaginian general.
 homō, -inis, M., *man*.
 imperātor, -ōris, M., *general*.
 lūmen, -inis, N., *light*.
 sōl, sōlis, M. (no gen. pl.), *sun*.
 terror, -ōris, M., *terror*.
 timor, -ōris, M., *fear*.

Āfrica, -ae, F., *Africa*.
 Androclus, -ī, M., *Androclus*.
 annus, -ī, M., *year*.
 creō, 1, *elect, choose*.
 Eurōpa, -ae, F., *Europe*.
 Horātius, -ī, M., *Horace*, a Roman
 poet (79).
 impleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum, *fill*.
 juventūs, -ūtis, F., *youth*.
 semper, adv., *always*.
 voluptās, -ātis, F., *pleasure*.

homo, *man*, as distinguished from gods and lower animals;
 general word for man, *mankind*.

vir (60), *man*, as distinguished from woman; man in an
 honorable sense, *hero*.

139.

COLLOQUIUM

MAGISTER ET DISCIPULUS

M. Quae, mī puer, sunt in pēnsō hodiernō?
 what things to-day's

D. Multa sunt in pēnsō, ut nōmina, adjectīva, dēclīnā-
 many things as nouns declensions
 tiōnēs, rēgulae.

M. Quot genera sunt nōminibus Latīnīs?
 how many genders

D. Genera sunt tria: masculīnum, fēminīnum, neutrum.
 genders three

M. Dē quibus nōminibus est rēgula prīma?
 what

D. Prīma rēgula est dē nōminibus generis masculīnī.
 Secunda rēgula est dē nōminibus generis fēminīnī.

M. Verbōrum quot sunt conjugātiōnēs?
 verbs how many

D. Quattuor sunt conjugātiōnēs, dēclīnātiōnēs autem
 four but

quīnque.
 five

CHAPTER XIX

THIRD DECLENSION

SIBILANT STEMS¹

140.

PARADIGMS

Mōs , M., <i>custom.</i>	Jūs , N., <i>right.</i>	Ōpus , N., <i>work.</i>	Corpus , N., <i>body.</i>
St. mōs-	St. jūs-	St. opes-	St. corpos-
SINGULAR			
N.V. mōs	jūs	opus	corpus
G. mōr is	jūr is	oper is	corpor is
D. mōr ī	jūr ī	oper ī	corpor ī
Ac. mōr em	jūs	opus	corpus
Ab. mōr e	jūr e	oper e	corpor e
PLURAL			
N.V. mōr ēs	jūr a	oper a	corpor a
G. mōr um	jūr um	oper um	corpor um
D. mōr ibus	jūr ibus	oper ibus	corpor ibus
Ac. mōr ēs	jūr a	oper a	corpor a
Ab. mōr ibus	jūr ibus	oper ibus	corpor ibus

141.

ADJECTIVE

Vetus, *old*. Stem **vetes-**

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V. vetus	vetus	veter ēs	veter a
G. veter is	veter is	veter um	veter um
D. veter ī	veter ī	veter ibus	veter ibus
Ac. veter em	vetus	veter ēs	veter a
Ab. veter e	veter e	veter ibus	veter ibus

142. The above were originally sibilant stems, the *s* having been changed to *r* between two vowels. Compare **eram** for **esam**, **erō** for **esō**, p. 25. But for practical purposes they may be regarded as stems in *r*.

¹ For table of terminations, see 134.

143.



EXERCISES

I. 1. Cerēs agrī cultūrae erat dea. 2. Cererī multa erant templa in Siciliā. 3. Cerēs multa templa in Siciliā habēbat. 4. Cerēs agrī cultūram docēbat. 5. Aestāte est pulvis molestus. 6. Servīs temporibus antiquīs nōn erant jūra. 7. Servī temporum veterum jūra nōn habēbant. 8. Equus perītō ab equite exercitus erat. 9. Equitī perītō praebitus erit equus niger.

II. 1. The statue of Minerva has been seen. 2. The statue of Minerva had often been praised. 3. The works of the Greeks were pleasing to the Romans. 4. Our pleasures have been increased by work¹ and zeal. 5. What² were seen in the temples of Greece? 6. In ancient times men saw statues of gods and goddesses. 7. Statues of gods and goddesses were seen by men in ancient times.

144. *Examine the following:—*

1. Cum virtūte vixit, *he lived with virtue (virtuously).*
2. Agricola agrum cum cūrā arat, *the farmer ploughs his field with care (carefully).*
3. Agricola agrum māgnā cum cūrā arat, *the farmer ploughs his field with great care.*
4. Summā vī proelium commiserunt, *they joined battle with the greatest violence.*

Manner is usually expressed by adverbs: bene, *well*; liberē, *freely*. So the phrases cum virtūte, cum cūrā, māgnā cum cūrā, and summā vī, plainly denote manner,—*how* a thing is done,—like adverbs of manner.

145. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Manner is sometimes expressed by the ablative with *cum*; but if the ablative has an adjective, *cum* is often omitted.

¹ Read again explanations and rule, p. 36. ² Quae = *what things*.

146.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Captīvī lūmen sōlis māgnō gaudiō vīdērunt. 2.¹ Sī in agrīs tempore flōrum eritis,² libenter eōs (*them*) vidēbitis. 3. Māgnā voluptāte aestāte videntur pulchrī flōrēs. 4. Librōs cum studiō et voluptāte recitāmus. 5. Puerī corpora cum studiō et cūrā exercent. 6. Multa Rōmānōrum opera tempore³ nōn dēlēta sunt.

II. 1. They look at the lion with great fear. 2. If he blames (is blaming) the boy angrily,⁴ he deserves punishment. 3. Dædalus had fitted wings to Icarus with care. 4. They remember the words of the good judge with joy. 5. The words of the good judge will be carefully⁴ remembered. 6. How many works of the Romans time has not destroyed!

147.

VOCABULARY

Cerēs, -eris, F., *Ceres*, goddess of agriculture.

flōs, flōris, M., *flower*.

pulvis, -eris, M., *dust*.

tempus, -oris, N., *time*.

aestās, -ātis, F., *summer*.

cum, prep. w. abl., *with*.

cūra, -ae, F., *care*.

gaudium, -ī, N., *joy*.

Īcarus, -ī, M., *Icarus*.

īra, -ae, F., *anger*.

libenter, adv., *gladly, with pleasure*.

molestus, -a, -um, adj., *troublesome*.

quam, adv., *how, than*.

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., *sacred*.

Sicilia, -ae, F., *Sicily*.

148.

COLLOQUIUM

DUO PUERĪ

Hodiē dūrum pēnsum habuī.

Studuistīne cum cūrā et dīligentiā?

did you study

diligence

Certē cum dīligentiā, nōn cum voluptāte studuī.

¹ Notice that *in the fields* = in agrīs; *in the time* = tempore.

² See p. 47, note 3.

³ Why would it be wrong to write ā tempore?

⁴ Compare 144. 1.

Cūr nōn cum voluptāte studuistī? Eratne magister
mōrōsus an pēnsū longum?

cross or

Meherculē! longum erat pēnsū neque memoriā tenē-
truly and not
bam. Aspice. Nōne vidēs multa vocābula in vocābulārīō
look words vocabulary
et verbum moneō et dēclīnātiōnis tertiæ substantīva et
adjectīva?

Heu amīcum miserum, quam studēs!

ah

have to study

CHAPTER XX

THIRD DECLENSION

STEMS IN *i*

149.

PARADIGMS

Hostis, M. & F.,

enemy.

St. hosti-

Nūbēs, F.,

cloud.

St. nūbi-

Turris, F.,

tower.

St. turri-

Ignis, M.,

fire.

St. igni-

SINGULAR

N.V. host is

G. host is

D. host ī

Ac. host em

Ab. host e

nūb ēs

nūb is

nūb ī

nūb em

nūb e

turris

turris

turr ī

turr im, em

turr ī, e

ign is

ign is

ign ī

ign em

ign ī, e

PLURAL

N.V. host ēs

G. host ium

D. host ibus

Ac. host ēs, īs

Ab. host ibus

nūb ēs

nūb ium

nūb ibus

nūb ēs, īs

nūb ibus

turr ēs

turr ium

turr ibus

turr ēs, īs

turr ibus

ign ēs

ign ium

ign ibus

ign ēs, īs

ign ibus

Animal, N., <i>animal.</i>	Mare, N., <i>sea.</i>	Calcar, N., <i>spur.</i>	TERMINATIONS	
St. animālī-	St. mari-	St. calcārī-	MASC. & FEM.	
SINGULAR			<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.V. animal	mar e	calcar	is, ēs	ēs
G. animāl is	mar is	calcār is	is	ium
D. animāl ī	mar ī	calcār ī	ī	ibus
Ac. animal	mar e	calcar	em, im	ēs, is
Ab. animāl ī	mar ī	calcār ī	e, ī	ibus

PLURAL			NEUTER	
N.V. animāl ia	mar ia	calcār ia	e or —	ia
G. animāl ium	—	calcār ium	is	ium
D. animāl ibus	mar ibus	calcār ibus	ī	ibus
Ac. animāl ia	mar ia	calcār ia	e or —	ia
Ab. animāl ibus	mar ibus	calcār ibus	ī	ibus

150.

ADJECTIVES

Ācer, keen, eager. St. ācri-

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.V. ācer	ācr is	ācr e	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
G. ācr is	ācr is	ācr is	ācr ium	ācr ium	ācr ium
D. ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus
Ac. ācr em	ācr em	ācr e	ācr ēs, is	ācr ēs, is	ācr ia
Ab. ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus

Levis, light, nimble. St. levi-

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V. lev is	lev e	lev ēs	lev ia
G. lev is	lev is	lev ium	lev ium
D. lev ī	lev ī	lev ibus	lev ibus
Ac. lev em	lev e	lev ēs, is	lev ia
Ab. lev ī	lev ī	lev ibus	lev ibus

Memor, mindful. St. memori-

SINGULAR		PLURAL
M. & F.	NEUT.	
N. V. memor	memor	memor ēs
G. memor is	memor is	memor um
D. memor ī	memor ī	memor ibus
Ac. memor em	memor	memor ēs, īs
Ab. memor ī	memor ī	memor ibus

151. An inspection of the table shows:—

1. That the *i* of the stem is sometimes lost, and sometimes changed to *e*. It appears in the terminations *im*, *īs* (acc. plur.), *ī* (abl. sing.), *ia*, and *ium*.

2. That the ablative singular has in some nouns *ī*, in some *e*, and in some *ī* or *e*; in adjectives, always *ī*.

3. That the genitive plural has *ium*, and the nominative and accusative plural neuter *ia*. Compare these endings with the nominative and genitive plural of consonant stems (**105, 134, 140**).

4. **Memor** has *um* in the genitive plural, masculine and feminine. It has no neuter plural. Like **memor** decline **vigil**, *watchful*, which has neuter plural **vigilia**, *vigilium*, etc.

152. To stems in *i* belong:—

1. Nouns in *is* and *ēs* not increasing in the genitive.¹

2. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

3. Adjectives of two terminations.

4. Adjectives of the third declension of three terminations.

153. Nouns in *ēs* (gen. *is*) are declined like **nūbēs**. Most nouns in *is* are declined like **hostis**. **Canis**, *dog*, has genitive plural **canum**.

154. The principal nouns declined like **turris** are: **clāvis**, *key*; **nāvis**, *ship*; **puppis**, *stern of a ship*; **secūris**, *axe*.

Like **ignis** are: **amnis**, *river*; **anguis**, *snake*; **avis**, *bird*; **cīvis**, *citizen*; **classis**, *fleet*; **collis**, *hill*; **finis**, *end*; **orbis**, *circle*; **postis**, *post*. **Sitis**, *thirst*, has acc. in *-im*, abl. in *-ī*.

¹ That is, having no more syllables than in the nominative.

155. Adjectives declined like *ācer* are called adjectives of three terminations; those declined like *levis*, adjectives of two terminations; while those declined like *vetus* (141), *audāx*, and *prūdēns* (164), are called adjectives of one termination.

156. Decline together *nāvis longa*, *ship of war*; *vallis profunda*, *deep valley*; *Alpēs altae*, *high Alps*. See 161.

157. *Paradigm illustrating apposition*: —

N.V. Cicerō cōsul, *Cicero, the consul*.

G. Cicerōnis cōsulis, *of Cicero, the consul*.

D. Cicerōnī cōsulī, *to or for Cicero, the consul*.

Ac. Cicerōnem cōsulem, *Cicero, the consul*.

Ab. ā Cicerōne cōsule, *by Cicero, the consul*.

158. RULE OF SYNTAX. — An appositive is in the same case as the noun or pronoun which it qualifies.

159.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In vallibus Alpium sunt fluviī pulchrī. 2. Quae (*what*) animālia aquilam timent? 3. Nāvēs Gallōrum erant longae et altae. 4. Gallī longās nāvēs habēbant. 5. Fui-mus in nāvī altā. 6. Rōbur tuum levī labōre augēbitur. 7. Somnus hominibus voluptātem praebet. 8. Habentne mīlitēs dēfessī cibum et aquam? 9. Hominēs cibum ignī coquunt (*cook*). 10. Leōnēs et elephantī sunt animālia fera.

II. 1. In the tower there were many men. 2. The towers of the ships were high. 3. From the high tower we saw the broad sea. 4. The broad sea was seen by men in the high tower. 5. The flight of the horsemen was seen by brave soldiers. 6. Robbers fear a brave man. 7. A brave man is feared by robbers. 8. On the shore they built a tower

for the king. 9. Numa, king of the Romans, changed the number of the months. 10. The number of the months was changed by Numa, a Roman king.

160.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Turrim altam vidēbant rēgis comitēs. 2. Corpora hominum nōn animī sunt mortālia. 3. Capita animālium multōrum vidēbantur. 4. Ācrī animō nāvem latrōnum submovent nautae. 5. Nāvis latrōnum ab ācribus nautīs submovētur. 6. Victōriam dēbēmus turribus nostrīs validīs. 7. Multa animālia sunt levia et vigilia. 8. Avium nōn multa genera in ruīnīs turrium antīquārum habitant. 9. Servī Graecī filiōs Rōmānōrum nōbīlium ēducābant. 10. Fīliī Rōmānōrum nōbīlium ā servīs Graecīs saepe ēducābantur.

II. 1. Polyphemus, son of Neptune, had a huge body. 2. Cyrus, the first king of the Persians, remembered all the names of his soldiers. 3. The names of all his soldiers were remembered by Cyrus, king of the Persians. 4. How many ships of the Gauls were driven off? 5. The number of fires in the town was great.

161.

VOCABULARY

Alpēs, -ium, F., *Alps*.
avis, -is, F., *bird* (154).
fortis, -e, adj., *brave*.
mēnsis, -is, M., *month*.
mortālis, -e, adj., *mortal*.
nāvis, -is, F., *ship* (154).
nōbilis, -e, adj., *noble*.
omnis, -e, adj., *all, every*.
vallis (or -ēs), -is, F., *valley*.
vigil, -is, adj., *watchful*.

animus, -ī, M., *mind, soul*.
ēducō, 1, *train, educate*.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild*.
fuga, -ae, F., *flight*.
genus, -eris, N., *kind, race*.
habitō, 1, *dwell, inhabit*.
latrō, -ōnis, M., *robber*.
lītus, -ōris, N., *shore*.
multitūdō, -inis, F., *multitude*.
Neptūnus, -ī, M., *Neptune, god of the sea*.
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., *our, ours*.
Numa, -ae, M., *Numa, a Roman king*.
Persae, -ārum, M., *the Persians*.

Polyphēmus, -ī, M., <i>Polyphemus</i> .	sub-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum,
quot, adj., indecl., <i>how many?</i>	(<i>move from beneath</i>) <i>remove</i> ,
rōbur, -ōris, N., <i>strength</i> .	<i>drive away</i> .
ruīna, -ae, F., <i>ruin</i> .	vītō, 1, <i>avoid, shun</i> .

162.

COLLOQUIUM

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA

S. Nārrā mihi, frāter, dē Polyphēmō; quis fuit et ubi
habitābat? where

F. Polyphēmus filius Neptūnī fuit et cum frātribus in
insulā habitābat.

S. Fuitne arātor et agrōs arābat?

F. Minimē. Neque fuit arātor neque agrōs arābat Poly-
phēmus. neither ploughman nor

S. Nauta igitur sine dubiō fuit, et maria nāvibus
nāvigābat. therefore

F. Errāvistī, meā sorōrcula, Polyphēmus fuit pāstor atque
māgnōs ovium gregēs habēbat. Fuit autem ingentis corporis
et ūnum tantum oculum habuit. Ulixēs dolōsus eī ūnum
oculum stīpite perforāvit. sheep and moreover huge
only crafty for him his one
stake dug out

S. Ēheu! miserrimum Polyphēmum!
Oh dear! poor

CHAPTER XXI

THIRD DECLENSION

MIXED STEMS¹

163.

PARADIGMS

Clīēns, M. & F., <i>client.</i>	Urbs, F., <i>city.</i>	Arx, F., <i>citadel.</i>	
SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
N.V. cliēns	urb s	arx	■
G. clientis	urb is	arc is	is
D. clientī	urb ī	arc ī	ī
Ac. clientem	urb em	arc em	em
Ab. client e	urb e	arc e	e
PLURAL			
N.V. clientēs	urb ēs	arc ēs	ēs
G. clientium	urb ium	arc ium	ium
D. clientibus	urb ibus	arc ibus	ibus
Ac. clientēs, is	urb ēs, is	arc ēs, is	ēs, is
Ab. clientibus	urb ibus	arc ibus	ibus

164.

ADJECTIVES

Audāx, bold; prūdēns, sagacious.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V. audāx	audāx	prūdēns	prūdēns
G. audāc is	audāc is	prūdent is	prūdent is
D. audāc ī	audāc ī	prūdent ī	prūdent ī
Ac. audāc em	audāx	prūdent em	prūdēns
Ab. audāc ī, e	audāc ī, e	prūdent ī, e	prūdent ī, e
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
N.V. audācēs	audāc ia	prūdentēs	prūdent ia
G. audāc ium	audāc ium	prūdent ium	prūdent ium
D. audāc ibus	audāc ibus	prūdent ibus	prūdent ibus
Ac. audācēs, is	audāc ia	prūdentēs, is	prūdent ia
Ab. audāc ibus	audāc ibus	prūdent ibus	prūdent ibus

¹ Usually classed as *i* stems. See 166.

165.

PARTICIPLE

Amāns, loving.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V. amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
G. amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
D. amanti	amanti	amantibus	amantibus
Ac. amante	amāns	amantēs, īs	amantia
Ab. amante, ī	amante, ī	amantibus	amantibus

166. Note in the above tables:—

1. That the nouns are declined in the singular like consonant stems (105, 134, 140), and the adjectives also, except that, like *i* stems, they have an ablative in *ī*.

2. That the plural of both nouns and adjectives is like that of *i* stems (149, 150).

167. To the class of mixed stems belong:—

1. Nouns in *ns* and *rs*. But *parēs* has the genitive plural *parentum*.

2. Monosyllables in *s* and *x* following a consonant, together with *nix*, *nivis*, *snow*; *nox*, *noctis*, *night*; *os*, *ossis*, *bone*; *mūs*, *mūris*, *mouse*.

3. Adjectives of one ending, with some exceptions, of which the most important are: *dives*, *rich*; *pauper*, *poor*; *particeps*, *sharing*; *princeps*, *chief*; and compounds of nouns that have consonant stems. These all have the genitive plural in *um*.

4. Present active participles.

168. RULES OF GENDER.—1. Nouns ending in *ō*, *or*, *ōs*, *er*, *es* (gen. *īdis*, *ītis*), are masculine.

But nouns ending in *dō* and *gō*, of more than two syllables, together with abstract¹ and collective² nouns in *iō*, are feminine.

2. Nouns ending in *ās*, *ēs* not increasing in the genitive, *is*, *x*, and *s* following a consonant, are feminine.

¹ Abstract nouns are such as denote a *thought* rather than a *thing*: *ratio*, *method*.

² Collective nouns are such as in the singular imply a number of things or persons: *legiō*, *legion*.

3. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us*, are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, which the learner should note as he advances.

169. Decline together *fōns profundus, deep spring; hostis audāx, bold enemy; māgna pars, great part*. See 172.

170.



EXERCISES

I. 1. Alpēs sunt montēs Eurōpae. 2. Saepe in lateribus montium sunt silvae. 3. Multōrum amnium fontēs sunt parvī. 4. In Alpibus sunt regiōnēs pulchrae et suāvēs. 5. Sunt vallēs profundae, rūpēs altae, silvae māgnae. 6. Ibi māgnam vidēbis multitudinem vulpium. 7. Aestāte ovium gregēs videntur. 8. Militem fortem nōn terrēbit periculum. 9. Mīles fortis periculō nōn terrēbitur. 10. Omnēs adulescentēs erūnt mīlītēs fortēs.

II. 1. There are mountains in Europe. 2. On the sides of the mountains are tall trees. 3. Many rivers have small sources. 4. Parts of the Alps are beautiful. 5. The Alps have deep valleys and high cliffs. 6. Wild beasts are seen on the sides of the Alps. 7. There you will see shepherds and sheep. 8. Brave soldiers do not fear dangers. 9. The fathers of the young men are soldiers. 10. We honor the brave soldier.

171.



EXERCISES

I. 1. Quid vident hominēs in montibus altīs? 2. Aquilam, avem audācem, in rūpibus vident. 3. Nōne in arboribus altīs habitat rēx avium? 4. Certē, et parvīs avibus est terror māgnus, nam inter avēs rēgnat. 5. Acrēs sunt aquilārum oculī; longē vident vēnatōrem. 6. In marī classem hostium vidēmus. 7. Classis nāvium ā latrōnibus vidēbatur. 8. Magister mōrēs bonōs et dīligentiam discipulōrum

laudābit. 9. Mōrēs bonī et dīligentia ā magistrō laudābuntur. 10. Omnis Galliae sunt partēs trēs (*three*).

II. 1. Men dwell in the deep valleys of the mountains. 2. In summer they have flocks on the mountains. 3. Why do men call the eagle the king¹ of birds? 4. Do not keen hunters see the eagle from afar? 5. The enemy's ships plough the deep sea. 6. The robbers saw the ships with great terror.² 7. Solon was the author of many good laws. 8. In ancient states there were free men and slaves. 9. The memory of the wise Solon has been honored.

172.

VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, -entis, M. & F., *youth, young man*.

fōns, fontis, M., *source, spring*.

mōns, montis, M., *mountain*.

pars, partis, F., *part*.

sapiēns, -entis, adj., *wise*.

amnis, -is, M., *river* (154).

arbor, -ōris, F., *tree*.

auctor, -ōris, M., *author*.

Belgae, -ārum, M., *the Belgians*.

classis, -is, F., *fleet* (154).

dīligentia, -ae, F., *diligence*.

fera, -ae, F., *wild beast*.

honōrō, 1, *honor*.

hostis, -is, M. & F., *enemy*.

ibi, adv., *there*.

inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among*.

latus, -eris, N., *side*. Cf. lātus, *broad*.

lēx, lēgis, F., *law*.

longē, adv., *afar, at a distance*.

mōs, mōris, M., *manner, custom*.

nam, conj., *for*.

ovis, -is, F., *sheep*.

pāstor, -ōris, M., *shepherd*.

perīculum, -ī, N., *danger, peril*.

profundus, -a, -um, adj., *deep*.

regiō, -ōnis, F., *region*.

rēgnō, 1, *be king, rule, reign*.

rūpēs, -is, F., *rock, cliff*.

silva, -ae, F., *wood, forest*.

Solōn, -ōnis, M., *Solon, an Athenian lawgiver*.

suāvis, -e, adj., *sweet, pleasant*.

vēnātor, -ōris, M., *hunter*.

vulpēs, -is, F., *fox*.

amnis, *a large, deep river*; not the common prose word for *river*.

flūmen (203), general word for *river*; *flowing*, as opposed to *still water*, as a lake or pond.

fluvius (84), not different from flūmen, but much less used.

hostis, general word for *enemy*: *a public enemy, enemy in war*.

inimicus (78), *a private or personal enemy*; opposed to amicus.

¹ Predicate accusative.

² See 144, 145.

COLLOQUIUM

173. *Translate into Latin:—*

FATHER AND SON

F. Tell me (*mihi*) about Solon, if you please (*sĩ placet*).

S. Solon was a wise Athenian (*Athēniēnsis*); his (*ējus*) laws were famous, and his memory will always be honored. He was the friend of poor men (*pauperum*). He saw many lands and many men. He did not fear Pisistratus the despot (*tyrannum*).

F. Was Miltiades also (*quoque*) an Athenian?

S. Certainly; he overcame the Persians (*Persās*) in the battle of Marathon.¹ He was a brave and skilful leader. He had a brave son.

CHAPTER XXII

REVIEW

174. Decline together *gladius ācer*, sharp sword; *cōnsilium ūtile*, useful counsel; *aquila celeris*, swift eagle; animal *vēlōx*, fleet animal. See 179.

175. Examples of the locative case in the third declension are: *Carthāginī*, or *Carthāgine*, at Carthage; *rūrī*, in the country.

176. *Affix the proper terminations to the adjectives in the following, and translate:—*

1. *Equō celer-*, *equōrum vēlōc-*, *equīs vēlōc-*. 2. *Puella trīst-*, *puellae trīst-*, *puellam trīst-*, *puellārum prūdēt-*. 3. *Gladiīs ācr-*, *gladiōs ācr-*, *gladium ācr-*. 4. *Librō ūtil-*, *librōrum ūtil-*, *librum ūtil-*. 5. *Dōnum ūtil-*, *dōna ūtil-*, *dōnī ūtil-*. 6. *Servī fidēl-*, *servō fidēl-*, *servōs fidēl-*, *servīs fidēl-*.

¹ Of Marathon, *Marathōnius*, -a, -um.

177.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equī sunt celerēs. 2. Proelium equestre fuit. 3. Virī fortēs laudantur. 4. Virum fortem laudāmus. 5. Omne initium est difficile. 6. Bella sunt trīstia. 7. Cōnsilium ducis audāx fuit. 8. Vetus vīnum est bonum. 9. Ācris et vĕlōx est aquila. 10. Multa animālia vītās brevēs habent.

II. 1. The soldiers have keen weapons. 2. I have a swift horse. 3. We praise brave men. 4. Do you like sweet food? 5. The lessons are not hard. 6. The plans of the commander are sagacious. 7. Life is short. 8. There are swift eagles in the mountains. 9. The king has bold sailors. 10. The wings of the swift eagle are long.

178.

EXERCISES

Write out the whole of 177. I in Latin, changing singulars to plurals and plurals to singulars. Thus, 4 will be virōs fortēs laudō.

Turn II into Latin, first changing the sentences as directed above in regard to I.

179.

VOCABULARY

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, eager.*

brevis, -e, adj., *short.*

celer, celeris, celere, adj., *quick, fleet, swift.*

difficilis, -e, adj., *difficult, hard.*

equester, -tris, -tre, adj., *equestrian.*

fidēlis, -e, adj., *faithful.*

initium, -ī, N., *beginning.*

tĕlum, -ī, N., *weapon.*

trīstis, -e, adj., *sad.*

ūtilis, -e, adj., *useful.*

vĕlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, fleet.*

vīta, -ae, F., *life.*

celer, *quick*, with the added notion of *eagerness* or *energy*.

vĕlōx, *swift*, sometimes implying *nimbleness*.

CHAPTER XXIII

THIRD CONJUGATION

180. Ě-VERBS

Regō (stem rege), rule.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxi,¹ rēctum.²

ACTIVE		INDICATIVE		PASSIVE	
		PRESENT			
<i>I rule, etc.</i>		<i>I am ruled, etc.</i>			
reg ō	reg imus	reg or		reg imur	
reg is	reg itis	reg eris, or -re		reg iminī	
reg it	reg unt	reg itur		reg untur	
		IMPERFECT			
<i>I was ruling, etc.</i>		<i>I was ruled, etc.</i>			
reg ēbam	reg ēbāmus	reg ēbar		reg ēbāmur	
reg ēbās	reg ēbātis	reg ēbāris, or -re		reg ēbāminī	
reg ēbat	reg ēbant	reg ēbātur		reg ēbantur	
		FUTURE			
<i>I shall rule, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be ruled, etc.</i>			
reg am	reg ēmus	reg ar		reg ēmur	
reg ēs	reg ētis	reg ēris, or -re		reg ēminī	
reg et	reg ent	reg ētur		reg entur	
		PERFECT			
<i>I have ruled, etc.</i>		<i>I have been ruled, etc.</i>			
rēx ī	rēx imus	rēct us	{ sum	rēct ī	{ sumus
rēx istī	rēx istis		{ es		{ estis
rēx it	rēx ěrunt, or -re		{ est		{ sunt
		PLUPERFECT			
<i>I had ruled, etc.</i>		<i>I had been ruled, etc.</i>			
rēx eram	rēx erāmus	rēct us	{ eram	rēct ī	{ erāmus
rēx erās	rēx erātis		{ erās		{ erātis
rēx erat	rēx erant		{ erat		{ erant

¹ Rēxī for reg-si. See p. 1, note 2.² Rēctum for reg-tum.

ACTIVE

FUTURE PERFECT

PASSIVE

*I shall have ruled, etc.**I shall have been ruled, etc.*

rēx erō	rēx erimus	rēct us	{	erō	rēct ī	{	erimus
rēx erīs	rēx eritis			eris			eritis
rēx erit	rēx erint			erit			erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE¹

PRESENT

reg am	reg āmus	reg ar	reg āmur
reg ās	reg ātis	reg āris, or -re	reg āminī
reg at	reg ant	reg ātur	reg antur

IMPERFECT

reg erem	reg erēmus	reg erer	reg erēmur
reg erēs	reg erētis	reg erēris, or -re	reg erēminī
reg eret	reg erent	reg erētur	reg erentur

PERFECT

rēx erim	rēx erimus	rēct us	{	sim	rēct ī	{	sīmus
rēx erīs	rēx eritis			sīs			sītis
rēx erit	rēx erint			sit			sint

PLUPERFECT

rēx issem	rēx issēmus	rēct us	{	essem	rēct ī	{	essēmus
rēx issēs	rēx issētis			essēs			essētis
rēx isset	rēx issent			esset			essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

reg e, rule thou.	reg ere, be thou ruled.
reg ite, rule ye.	reg iminī, be ye ruled.

FUTURE

reg itō, thou shalt rule.	reg itor, thou shalt be ruled.
reg itō, he shall rule.	reg itor, he shall be ruled.
reg itōte, ye shall rule.	
reg untō, they shall rule.	reg untor, they shall be ruled.

¹ See p. 26, note.

ACTIVE	INFINITIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. <i>reg ere, to rule.</i>	<i>reg ī, to be ruled.</i>	
PERF. <i>rēx isse, to have ruled.</i>	<i>rēct us esse, to have been ruled.</i>	
FUT. <i>rēct ūrus esse, to be about to rule.</i>	<i>rēct um īrī, to be about to be ruled.</i>	

PARTICIPLE

PRES. <i>reg ēns, -entis, ruling.</i>	PRES. ———
FUT. <i>rēct ūrus, -a, -um, about to rule.</i>	GER. <i>reg endus, -a, -um, to be ruled.</i>
PERF. ———	. PERF. <i>rēct us, -a, -um, having been ruled.</i>

GERUND

G. <i>reg endī, of ruling.</i>
D. <i>reg endō, for ruling.</i>
Ac. <i>reg endum, ruling.</i>
Ab. <i>reg endō, by ruling.</i>

SUPINE

Ac. <i>rēct um, to rule.</i>	Ab. <i>rēct ū, to rule, to be ruled.</i>
------------------------------	--

CHAPTER XXIV

THIRD CONJUGATION

181. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *regō*.

182.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Regitis, regēbātis, regētis.* 2. *Regitur, regēbātur, regētur.* 3. *Regō, regēbam, regam.* 4. *Reguntur, regēbantur, regentur.* 5. *Regere, regī.* 6. *Regite, regere.* 7. *Regis, regeris.* 8. *Regimus, regimur.* 9. *Regit, regitur.* 10. *Regitis, regiminī.*

II. 1. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 2. To be ruled, to rule. 3. They rule, they were ruling, they will

rule. 4. We rule, we are ruled. 5. We shall rule, we shall be ruled. 6. You are ruling, you were ruling, you will rule. 7. Rule (thou), be (thou) ruled. 8. He is ruling, he is ruled. 9. They ruled, they were ruled. 10. I rule, I ruled, I shall rule.

183.

EXERCISES

Scribō,¹ write, *mittō*,¹ send; *emō*,¹ buy.

I. 1. *Scribis, mittis, emis.* 2. *Mittitur, scribitur, emitur.* 3. *Nōne mittēbās? nōne scribēbant? nōne emēbam?* 4. *Scribētur, mittēbantur, ementur.* 5. *Mitte, scribite, emite.* 6. *Emere, scribere, mittere.* 7. *Nōn mittunt, nōn scribitis, nōn emet.* 8. *Scribaune? emuntne? mittimusne?* 9. *Mitteris, mittēris, scribētur.* 10. *Scribī, mittī, emī.*

II. 1. He writes, he is sent, they buy. 2. Is it written? does he send? are they bought? 3. I shall buy, thou wilt send, he will write. 4. It will not be written, we shall not be sent, thou wilt not be bought. 5. To write, to send, to buy. 6. Write, send, buy. 7. We are sent, they were bought, it is (being) written. 8. They write, they will buy, they were sending. 9. I was writing, we were sending, I shall buy. 10. You are sent, it was (being) written, they are bought.

184.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Imperātor multās urbēs vincet.* 2. *Multae terrae ab Rōmānīs regēbantur.* 3. *Omnem mundum regit Deus.* 4. *Dux Rōmānus ex Graeciā in Ītaliā portābat multās statuās.* 5. *Virī fortēs timōre nōn vincuntur.* 6. *Pābulum mīlitibus² emētur.* 7. *Hannibal mīlitēs trāns Alpēs dūcēbat.*

¹ For principal parts, see 186.

² What would be the meaning of *ā mīlitibus*?

8. Trāns fluvium erat parva urbs. 9. Urbs ā cīvibus dēfendebātur. 10. Nautae, ē nāvī dēscendite.

II. 1. The commander writes a letter. 2. Letters are written by the commander. 3. Hannibal was leading his soldiers into Italy. 4. The citizens are defended by their¹ leaders. 5. Cæsar conquered all his enemies. 6. Rome will be defended by the citizens. 7. Drive the sheep into the fields. 8. There are many robbers in the city. 9. Near the town is a broad valley. 10. Come down out of the tower.

185.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Omnis mundus ā Deō regitur. 2. Puerīs librōs emam. 3. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidī ā Caesaris mīlitibus vincentur. 4. In Āfricā servī emuntur. 5. Hieme multa animālia in vallēs dēscendunt. 6. Agricolaē in urbem ovēs agent. 7. Omnēs canēs ex urbe agēmus. 8. Epistolam dē bellō scribēbam. 9. Puer epistolam dē pēnsīs scribēbat. 10. Poēta bonus poēmata bona scribet.

II. 1. The king's brothers send soldiers into Greece. 2. I will send my brother's son into Africa. 3. You will be sent into Sicily. 4. Send men across the river. 5. The city was defended with² great bravery by all the citizens. 6. Pyrrhus led many men across the sea into Italy. 7. In³ winter many animals are overcome by hunger. 8. The farmers are buying food for their sheep. 9. Strong men were driving the white horses into the river. 10. The good shepherd leads his sheep.

¹ See 100.

² Is it necessary to translate *with* by *cum*? See examples and rule, 144, 145.

³ Is *in* to be separately expressed in Latin? See fifth sentence above, and examples and rule, 135, 136.

186.

VOCABULARY

agō, 3, ēgī, āctum, *drive, lead.*dē-fendō, 3, -dī, -sum, *defend.*dē-scendō, 3, -dī, -sum, *descend,*
*go down, come down.*dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductum, *lead.*emō, 3, ēmī, emptum, *buy.*mittō, 3, mīsī, missum, *send.*scribō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptum,
*write.*sūmō, 3, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take.*vincō, 3, vīcī, victum, *conquer.*Caesar, -āris, M., *Cæsar.*canis, -is, M. & F., *dog (153).*cīvis, -is, M. & F., *citizen.*dē, prep. w. abl., *concerning, about.*epistula, -ae, F., *letter.*famēs, -is, F., *hunger, famine.*hiems, hiemis, F., *winter.*latrō, -ōnis, M., *robber.*mundus, -ī, M., *world, universe.*prope, prep. w. acc., *near.*trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, beyond.*superō (102), *to have the upper hand, surpass, conquer.*vincō, *to get the mastery, vanquish, conquer.*

What difference do you make out from a comparison of the meanings?

187.

COLLOQUIUM

CHARŌN ET MERCURIUS

Ch. Salvē, Ō Mercurī!
*hail**M.* Et tū, salvē, portitor.
*ferryman**Ch.* Mercurī, dūcisne hodiē multōs mănēs?
*souls**M.* Hodiē mănium dūcō numerum māgnū. Trīste est
*soul*officium meum. Ithaca tibi procul dubiō nōta est atque Ulixēs.
*duty without doubt known**Ch.* Rēctē dixistī. Ithaca est insula inter Graeciam et
*you have said*Ītaliā sita; et mihi nōtus est Ulixēs, nam ipse ōlim hūc
vēnit.
*situated himself formerly hither came**M.* Jam aspice mănēs procerum et servōrum infīdōrum.
*now see chiefs unfaithful*Hī omnēs ab Ulixē necātī sunt.
*these**Ch.* Istud mihi placet. Mănēs in cymbā trānsveham.
that boat carry over

Valē, Mercurī.

M. Et tū valē, Charōn.

188.

FOR TRANSLATION¹

PŪBLIUS CORNĒLIUS SCĪPIŌ

Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō māior,² adulēscēns³ septendecim annōrum, ad Ticīnum flūmen patrem vulnerātum servāvit. In pūgnā Cannēnsī fortiter dīmicāvit. Posteā Carthāginem Novam, urbem in Hispāniā Poenōrum firmissimam, expūgnāvit. Obsidēs Hispānōrum benignē tractāvit et libertāte dōnāvit.⁴ Nōn minus fēliciter Scīpiō in Āfricā bellāvit ibique Poenōs ita ursit⁵ ut Hannibalem ex Ītaliā revocārent.⁶ Ad Zamam Scīpiōnis et Hannibalis exercitūs⁷ castra habuērunt; clārum est illud colloquium, quod Hannibal, dux Poenōrum, et Scīpiō, cōsul Rōmānus, ante pūgnam habuērunt. Poenī ā Scīpiōne superātī fugātīque sunt. Scīpiō triumphum māgnificum ex Āfricā reportāvit et ā populō Āfricānus appellātus est.

CHAPTER XXV

THIRD CONJUGATION

189. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *regō*.

190.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēxit, rēxerat, rēxerit. 2. Rēxērunt, rēxerant, rēxerint. 3. Rēxisse, rēctus esse. 4. Rēctum est, rēctum erat, rēctum erit. 5. Rēxistī, rēxerās, rēxeris. 6. Rēximus,

¹ For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.

² The elder.

³ When a youth.

⁴ Presented them with their liberty = set them free.

⁵ From *urgeō*; ita ursit, pressed so hard.

⁶ Ut . . . revocārent, that they recalled.

⁷ Nom. plur., subject of *habuērunt*.

rēctī sumus. 7. Rēxistis, rēctī estis. 8. Rēxī, rēxeram, rēxerō. 9. Rēxerant, rēctī erant. 10. Rēcta est, rēcta erat, rēcta erit.

II. 1. I have ruled, I had ruled, I shall have ruled. 2. I have ruled, I have been ruled. 3. They have ruled, they have been ruled. 4. You ruled, you had ruled, you will have ruled. 5. He will have ruled, he will have been ruled. 6. To have been ruled, to have ruled. 7. They had ruled, they had been ruled. 8. She has ruled, she has been ruled. 9. It was ruled, it had been ruled, it will have been ruled. 10. They (*neut.*) were ruled, they had been ruled, they will have been ruled.

191.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dūxit, ēmerit, sūmpserit. 2. Ēmit,¹ dūxistī, sūmpsī. 3. Sūmptus est, ductae sumus, ēmpta sunt. 4. Eratne ductus? erantne ēmptae? eratne sūmptum? 5. Dūxerimus, sūmpseritis, ēmerint. 6. Nōnne dūximus? nōnne ēmerāmus? nōnne ēmerimus? 7. Dūxistī, ēmērunt, sūmpsīmus. 8. Ducta est, ēmptum est, sūmpta erat. 9. Dūxisse, ēmissee, sūmpsisse. 10. Nōn dūxeram, nōn ēmerātis, nōn sūmpserō.

II. 1. She had been led, it has been bought, they (*neut.*) will have been taken. 2. I have taken, you have bought, he has led. 3. Has it not been taken? had he not been led? have they (*neut.*) not been bought? 4. I had led, you had bought, he had taken. 5. They will have taken, I shall have led, thou wilt have bought. 6. I was led, it was bought, it had been taken. 7. To have been led, to have been bought, to have been taken. 8. We shall have taken, I shall have bought, he will have led. 9. Did he take? didst thou buy? did you lead? 10. They did not lead, you had not bought, she will not have taken.

¹ How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?

192.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hostēs vīcimus. 2. Hostēs territī victīque sunt. 3. Horātius oculum in proeliō amiserat. 4. Ō patria, vīcistī iram meam. 5. Scīpiō in Hispāniam missus est. 6. Spartacus, dux gladiātōrum, cōsulēs Rōmānōs vīcit. 7. Gallia inter Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et Rhēnum posita est.¹ 8. Metellus bellum in Hispāniā gessit. 9. Quid timēs? Caesarem vehis. 10. Bellum ā Pyrrhō in Italiā gestum est. 11. Ā Spartacō, duce gladiātōrum, cōsulēs Rōmānī victī sunt.

II. 1. Have you lost your books? 2. My brother will sail² in a small ship. 3. Do men live in trees? 4. Neptune ruled (over) the deep sea. 5. A river flows out of the mountain. 6. The girl's head was encircled with flowers. 7. War has been waged in Italy. 8. A lazy boy is often despised. 9. The ancient Romans did not despise war. 10. The king had surrounded the city with walls. 11. Did not Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, wage war in Italy?

193.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Avēs multae in arboribus vīvunt. 2. Virī fortēs urbem templaque deōrum dēfendērunt. 3. Dux trāns mare in nāvī vectus est. 4. Tyrannī ā virīs fortibus contemptī sunt. 5. Pōnite pedēs in rūpem. 6. Virgō ā templō tracta erat. 7. Hannibal ā Scīpiōne victus est. 8. Caesar milītēs in equōs posuit. 9. Oppidum mūrō altō cīnctum erat. 10. Oppidānī oppidum mūrō altō cīnxērunt. 11. Inter montem et oppidum fluēbat fluvius lātus. 12. Bellum in Hispāniā ā Metellō imperātōre Rōmānō gestum est.

II. 1. A large fleet was bought with gold by Cæsar. 2. The general's daughter had been carried in a wagon.

¹ Posita est, is situated.

² Future passive of vehō.

3. The commander had carried on war against his enemies.
 4. All the property¹ of the enemy has been lost. 5. Many men live by agriculture. 6. We went away from Italy to² Sicily. 7. My brother has departed from his native land.
 8. Have they lost their books? 9. Have not men always despised tyrants? 10. The boys rode on horseback³ with great pleasure.⁴ 11. The farmer's cart is drawn by strong horses. 12. My books have been lost.

194.

VOCABULARY

ā-mittō, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missum*, *lose*.

cingō, 3, *cīnxī*, *cīnctum*, *bind*,
encircle, *surround*.

con-temnō, 3, *-temp̄sī*, *-temptum*,
despise.

dis-cēdō, 3, *-cessī*, *-cessum*, *depart*.

fluō, 3, *flūxī*, *fluxum*, *flow*.

gerō, 3, *gessī*, *gestum*, *carry on*,
wage (war).

pōnō, 3, *posuī*, *positum*, *put*, *place*.

trahō, 3, *-xī*, *-ctum*, *drag*, *draw*.

vehō, 3, *vēxī*, *vectum*, *carry*, *draw*.

vīvō, 3, *vīxī*, *vīctum*, *live*.

carrus, *-ī*, *M.*, *cart*, *wagon*.

contrā, *prep. w. acc.*, *against*.

Gallia, *-ae*, *F.*, *Gaul*.

gladiātor, *-ōris*, *M.*, *gladiator*.

Hispānia, *-ae*, *F.*, *Spain*.

Horātius, *-ī*, *M.*, *Horatius (79)*.

Metellus, *-ī*, *M.*, *Metellus*, a Ro-
 man general.

patria, *-ae*, *F.*, *native land*.

Pyrēnaeus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*, *Pyre-
 nean*, *Pyrenees*.

-que (enclitic⁵), *conj.*, *and*.

Rhēnus, *-i*, *M.*, *the Rhine*.

Scīpiō, *-ōnis*, *M.*, *Scipio*, a Roman
 general.

Spartacus, *-ī*, *M.*, *Spartacus*, a
 gladiator.

virgō, *-inis*, *F.*, *maiden*, *girl*.

habitō (161), *trans. and intrans.*, *live*, in the sense of *dwell*,
inhabit, with reference to place.

vīvō, *intrans.*, *have life*, *live*, often with reference to some con-
 dition or circumstance other than place.

¹ *Goods*. See 117.

² *Into*. See 52.

³ Ride on horseback = *be car-
 ried on a horse*.

⁴ See 145.

⁵ *I.e.*, appended to some word,

as in 192. I. 2.

195.

COLLOQUIUM

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS

P. Quis fuit Hannibal? Fuit Rōmānus an Carthāginiēnsis?

Carthaginian

D. Fuit Carthāginiēnsis et ā Scīpiōne victus est.

P. Ubi fuit Hannibalis patria?

where

D. Carthāgō, Hannibalis patria, fuit in Āfricā.

P. Cūr *fuit*? cūr nōn *est* in Āfricā?

why

D. Quia Carthāgō ā Scīpiōne dēlēta est.

was destroyed

P. Quot nōmina erant Scīpiōnī?

how many

D. Tria Scīpiōnī erant nōmina. Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō.

three

P. Rēctē, mī puer, praenōmen *Pūblius*; *Cornēlius* nōmen
first name

gentile; *Scīpiō* cōgnōmen.

family

cognomen

D. Nōne interdum appellātus est Scīpiō *Āfricānus*?

sometimes

was called

P. Certissimē. Hōc autem nōmen dicēbant Rōmānī
this moreover

cōgnōmen secundum.

CHAPTER XXVI

REVIEW

196.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dēfendite, cīvēs, cīvitātem. 2. Cīvitās est māter nostra. 3. Cīvēs sunt frātrēs nostrī. 4. Puerī, frātrēs amāte. 5. Ōrnāte, cīvēs, urbem monumentīs statuīsq̄ue. 6. Urbēs pulchrae in Ītaliā videntur. 7. Habitāsne in urbe pulchrā? 8. Urbs Rōma¹ mūrō cīncta est. 9. Rōma ā cīvibus cū fortitūdine dēfēnsa est. 10. Militēs Rōmānī erant fortēs.

¹ See 157, 158.

II. 1. The citizens are defenders of the state. 2. Roman mothers furnished brave heroes for the state. 3. Do you write letters to your brothers? 4. From¹ springs in the mountains the rivers flow. 5. The city will be adorned with golden² statues. 6. In Greece we do³ not see many beautiful cities. 7. The city is defended by watchful guards. 8. A high wall encircles the farmer's field. 9. We shall remain near Cæsar's camp. 10. We teach our children by means of stories.⁴

197.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Cōsulēs ā Pyrrhō victī sunt. 2. Urbs ā cōsulibus dēfendētur. 3. Filiī rēgis audācis sunt cīvitātis dēfēnsōrēs. 4. Clāmōribus mīlitum nostrōrum territī sunt hostēs. 5. Mīlītēs in urbe nostrā nōn saepe vidēmus. 6. In montibus et silvīs vīvunt aprī. 7. Malī⁵ poenae timōre coercentur. 8. Lēgibus patriae omnēs⁶ coercēmur. 9. Fluvius oppidum cingit. 10. Mōrēs malī ab hominibus bonīs contemnuntur.

II. 1. Who defeated the Roman consuls? 2. The consul was besieging a city of Spain. 3. We all have seen the pleasant light of the moon. 4. The sad maidens were sitting near a deep river. 5. The maidens were weeping because they had lost their flowers. 6. The boars are descending headlong into the sea. 7. Soldiers are not often seen in our streets. 8. The ancient city of Rome⁷ was ruled by kings. 9. The shepherd's son will weep if he loses (shall have lost) a sheep. 10. The teacher was teaching his pupils⁸ the poems of Homer.

¹ ē rather than ā.

² See page 37, note 1.

³ See page 14, note 1.

⁴ See 90 and 91.

⁵ See 117.

⁶ Omnēs agrees with the understood subject of *coercēmur*.

⁷ *The city of Rome* = *the city Rome*. See 157, 158.

⁸ Accusative. See page 54, n. 2.

198.

VOCABULARY

fābula, -ae, F., <i>story, tale, fable.</i>	omnis, -e, adj., <i>all, every, whole.</i>
frāter, -tris, M., <i>brother.</i>	praeceps, -cipitis, adj., <i>headlong.</i>
māter, -tris, F., <i>mother.</i>	trīstis, -e, adj., <i>sad, gloomy.</i>

199.

FOR TRANSLATION¹

PRŌSERPĪNA

Prōserpina, Cereris filia, aliquandō in Siciliā ad urbem Hennam in campīs flōrēs carpēbat, sarta nectēbat lūdēbatque cum comitibus. Nam campī ibi flōribus pulchrīs sparsī² sunt. Subitō terra concussa³ est atque Plūtō, inferōrum deus, ē terrā ēmersit;⁴ ējus currum equī ātrī vehēbant. Deus Prōserpinam abdūxit, ut uxor sua et inferōrum rēgīna esset;⁵ clāmōrem puellae compressit.⁶ Juppiter autem frātrī permīserat ut Prōserpinam abdūceret.⁷ Māter, cum⁸ ignōrāret ubi filia esset,⁹ tōtum orbem terrārum frūstrā peragrāvit.

[Continued on page 92.]

CHAPTER XXVII

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

200. The following adjectives have *ius* (rarely *ius*) in the genitive singular of all genders, and *ī* in the dative:

alius, alia, aliud, <i>another.</i>	tōtus, -a, -um, <i>whole.</i>
nūllus, -a, -um, <i>no one, none, no.</i>	ūllus, -a, -um, <i>any.</i>
sōlus, -a, -um, <i>alone, sole.</i>	ūnus, -a, -um, <i>one, alone.</i>

¹ For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.

² From spargō.

³ From concutiō.

⁴ From ēmergō.

⁵ Ut . . . esset, *that she might be.*

⁶ From comprimō.

⁷ Ut . . . abdūceret, *that he might lead away = to lead away.*

⁸ Cum ignōrāret, *since she did not know.*

⁹ Was.

alter, altera, alterum, the other of two.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two.

uter, utra, utrum, which of two?

uterque, utrâque, utrumque, each of two, both.

201.

PARADIGM

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	ali <u>us</u>	ali <u>a</u>	ali <u>ud</u>	ali <u>ī</u>	ali <u>ae</u>	ali <u>a</u>
G.	ali <u>us</u>	ali <u>us</u>	ali <u>us</u>	ali <u>ōrum</u>	ali <u>ārum</u>	ali <u>ōrum</u>
D.	ali <u>ī</u>	ali <u>ī</u>	ali <u>ī</u>	ali <u>īs</u>	ali <u>īs</u>	ali <u>īs</u>
Ac.	ali <u>um</u>	ali <u>am</u>	ali <u>ud</u>	ali <u>ōs</u>	ali <u>ās</u>	ali <u>a</u>
Ab.	ali <u>ō</u>	ali <u>ā</u>	ali <u>ō</u>	ali <u>īs</u>	ali <u>īs</u>	ali <u>īs</u>

202.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Virtūs sōla vēram dat voluptātem. 2. Alius¹ aliud dīxit. 3. In utram partem² fluit flūmen? 4. Alter³ Graecus, alter³ Rōmānus erat. 5. Utrī cōsulī dat cīvītās tōtam laudem? Neutrī. 6. Aliī⁴ virtūte, aliī⁴ dolīs hostēs superant.⁵ 7. Ūnīus hominis mors tōtam urbem servāvit. 8. Alterī discipulō laudem, alterī culpam dat⁵ praeceptor. 9. Nullīus precibus cēdēmus. 10. Ā Cicerōne ūnō urbs servāta est.

II. 1. The farmer was ploughing his field alone. 2. He is praised by one, blamed by another. 3. To which of the two does the teacher give the praise? 4. Some like⁶ boys, others like girls. 5. Death is feared by no good man. 6. The consul conquered some of his enemies, by others he

¹ Literally, *another said another thing*. The English of it is, *one said one thing, another another*.

² *Into which part?* i.e., *in which direction?*

³ *Alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.*

⁴ *Aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others; aliud . . . aliud, one thing . . . another thing.*

⁵ This sentence illustrates a common usage of the Latin. A verb belonging to two groups of words is often placed only with the last, and must be mentally supplied with the first. With the English it is the reverse. Show the application of the remark.

⁶ See note 5.

was conquered. 7. One leg is long, the other short. 8. Some praise one thing, others another. 9. The plan of the whole war was disclosed to the enemy. 10. The citizens praised Cicero alone.

203.

VOCABULARY

<i>brevis</i> , -e, adj., <i>short</i> .	<i>laus</i> , laudis, F., <i>praise</i> .
<i>cēdō</i> , 3, cessī, cessum, <i>yield</i> .	<i>mors</i> , mortis, F., <i>death</i> .
<i>Cicerō</i> , -ōnis, M., <i>Cicero</i> , a Roman orator.	<i>praeceptor</i> , -ōris, M., <i>teacher</i> .
<i>crūs</i> , crūris, N., <i>leg</i> .	<i>precēs</i> , -um, F., (plur.), <i>prayers</i> , <i>entreaty</i> .
<i>culpa</i> , -ae, F., <i>blame</i> , <i>fault</i> .	<i>ratio</i> , -ōnis, F., <i>plan</i> , <i>method</i> , <i>reason</i> .
<i>dolus</i> , -ī, M., <i>trick</i> , <i>deceit</i> .	<i>servō</i> , 1, <i>save</i> , <i>preserve</i> .
<i>ē-nūntiō</i> , 1, <i>disclose</i> , <i>announce</i> .	<i>vērūs</i> , -a, -um, adj., <i>true</i> .
<i>flūmen</i> , -inis, N., <i>river</i> (172).	<i>virtūs</i> , -ūtis, F., <i>virtue</i> , <i>courage</i> .

204.

COLLOQUIUM

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS

- D.* Quis fuit Cicerō ?
P. Clārus cōsul Rōmānus fuit.
D. Multane bella gessit ?
P. Minimē. Ōrātor fuit; dux militum semel.
D. Nōne ējus ōrātiōnēs in scholā legimus ?
P. Complūrēs. Multās epistulās quoque scrīpsit Cicerō.
D. Ad quōs epistulās scrīpsit ?
P. Ad frātre et amīcōs.
D. Fuitne Cicerō ējus "nōnten" ?¹
P. Nōn fuit "nōmen," sed "cōgnōmen."
D. Quid fuit ējus "nōmen" ?
P. *Tullius*.

¹ See 195.

D. Et praenōmen ?

P. *Mārcus*.

D. Hōc, praeceptor ērudītissime, dīc mihi sī placet;
most learned tell

difficilēsne sunt Cicerōnis ōrātiōnēs ?
hard

P. Sine dubiō difficilēs sunt, puer autem ācer eās intel-
but them
 legere potest.

CHAPTER XXVIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

205. Adjectives in Latin, as in English, change their terminations to express different degrees of quality: *altus, altior, altissimus, high, higher, highest.*

Adjectives may also be compared in Latin, as in English, by means of adverbs.

206. *Examine the following:—*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>altus</i> (alto)	<i>altior, altius</i>	<i>altissimus</i> , etc.
<i>levis</i> (levi)	<i>levior, levius</i>	<i>levissimus</i> , etc.
<i>prūdēns</i> (prudent)	<i>prudentior, prudentius</i>	<i>prudentissimus</i> , etc.
<i>pulcher</i> (pulchro)	<i>pulchrior, pulchrius</i>	<i>pulcherimus</i> , etc.
<i>miser</i> (misero)	<i>miserior, miserius</i>	<i>miserimus</i> , etc.
<i>ācer</i> (ācri)	<i>ācrior, ācrius</i>	<i>ācerimus</i> , etc.

Observe (1) that the comparative is formed in both the above groups by dropping the final vowel of the stem, if the stem ends in a vowel, and adding *ior, ius*.

(2) That the superlative is formed in the first group from the shortened stem by adding *issimus, issima, issimum*.

(3) But if the adjective ends in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*, *rima*, *rimum*, to the positive.

207. Six adjectives in *lis* drop the final vowel of the stem and add *limus* to form the superlative :

facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .	facilior, facilior	facil limus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i> .	difficilior, difficilior	difficil limus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i> .	similior, similior	simil limus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior, dissimilior	dissimil limus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i> .	humilior, humilior	humil limus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i> .	gracilior, gracilior	gracil limus, -a, -um

208. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	pējor, -us	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um	mājor, -us	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	——, plūs ¹	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, -us	minimus, -a, -um
vetus	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE

209.

PARADIGM

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V.	altior	altius	altiōr ēs	altiōr a
G.	altiōr is	altiōr is	altiōr um	altiōr um
D.	altiōr ī	altiōr ī	altiōr ibus	altiōr ibus
Ac.	altiōr em	altius	altiōr ēs, īs	altiōr a
Ab.	altiōr e, ī	altiōr e, ī	altiōr ibus	altiōr ibus

Compare, and decline in the comparative : —

atrōx, -ōcis, <i>fierce</i> .	liber, -era, -erum, <i>free</i> .
audāx, -ācis, <i>bold</i> .	piger, pigra, pigrum, <i>lazy</i> .
celer, -eris, <i>swift</i> .	placidus, -a, -um, <i>calm</i> .
fēlix, -īcis, <i>lucky</i> .	sapiēns, -entis, <i>wise</i> .

¹ Plūs has in singular only plural, nom. plūrēs, plūra, gen. plūrium, etc.

210.

EXERCISES

1. Of bolder soldiers. 2. For a bolder soldier. 3. On the highest tree. 4. The wisest king. 5. Of fiercer lions. 6. By a more lucky general. 7. With calmer joy. 8. Of a swifter horse. 9. For freer men. 10. Of wiser judges. 11. A deeper river. 12. Of deeper rivers. 13. In a deeper river. 14. For lazier boys.

211. We can say in Latin without difference in meaning :

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Quis est ēloquentior quam Cicerō ? | } <i>Who is more eloquent</i> |
| 2. Quis est ēloquentior Cicerōne ? | |
| | } <i>than Cicero ?</i> |

212. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when *quam* (than) is omitted.

But the ablative can take the place only of *quam* and the nominative, or *quam* and the accusative.

213.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fluvii altiōrēs sunt rīvīs, maria altissima¹ sunt. 2. In Āfricā sunt animālia atrōciōra quam in Americā. 3. Leōnēs sunt audācissimae bēstiae. 4. Elephantī sunt prūdentiōrēs leōnibus. 5. Gentēs Āfricae et Eurōpae sunt dissimillimae. 6. Pēnsu tuu facillimu, meu difficilimu est. 7. Rōma est Ītaliae urbs veterrima,¹ sed vetustiōrēs sunt in lītoribus colōniae Graecōrum. 8. Tempa Graeca erant humillima. 9. Nihil est pėjus quam mendācium. 10. Mendācium autem pėjus pigritiā et ignāviā est.

II. 1. A river is longer than a brook. 2. Seas are deeper than rivers. 3. The sources of great rivers are not always in high mountains. 4. Elephants bear heavier burdens than

¹ The superlative must often be translated by *very* with the positive.

horses. 5. The horse and the dog are very faithful. 6. Your dog is better than mine. 7. Not many cities are more beautiful than Rome. 8. The elephant is bolder than the horse. 9. Your task is easier than mine; but mine is not very hard. 10. The bravest men are not always the wisest.

214.

VOCABULARY

America, -ae, F., *America*.

autem,¹ conj., *but, moreover*.

bēstia, -ae, F., *beast*.

colōnia, -ae, F., *colony*.

gēns, gentis, F., *nation, people*.

ignāvia, -ae, F., *cowardice*.

lītus, -oris, N., *shore*.

mendācium, -ī, N., *lying*.

nihil, N. (indecl.), *nothing*.

pigritia, -ae, F., *laziness*.

quam, conj., *than*.

rīvus, -ī, M., *brook*.

*“ Proserpin gathering flours,
Herself a fairer flower, by gloomy Dis
Was gather'd, which cost Ceres all that pain
To seek her through the world.”*

215.

FOR TRANSLATION²

Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, quī omnia cōspicit, audīvit quis filiā abdūxisset.³ Itaque statim iter ad Jovem⁴ flēxit⁵ et precibus animum ejus inflēxit, ut filia ā Plūtōne remitteretur.⁶ Juppiter id permīsit, sī jējūna mānsisset.⁷ Sed cum⁸ Prōserpina mālī Pūnicī septem grāna gustāvisset,⁹ nōn licuit. Tandem Prōserpinae permissum est,¹⁰ ut per partem annī dīmidiam apud mātrem, per partem alteram apud inferōs esset.¹¹

¹ Always placed after the first or second word in the sentence.

² Continued from page 86.

³ *Had led away*.

⁴ Nom. Jūppiter.

⁵ From flectō.

⁶ Ut . . . remitteretur, *that her daughter might be sent back*.

⁷ *Had remained*.

⁸ *Since*.

⁹ *Had tasted*.

¹⁰ *It was permitted = permission was given*.

¹¹ Ut . . . esset, *that she should be = to be*. For the order, see page 87, note 5.

CHAPTER XXIX

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

216. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives, and follow them in comparison.

217. *Examine the following : —*

ADJECTIVE	STEM	ADVERB
grātus, <i>thankful.</i>	grāto	grāt ē, <i>thankfully.</i>
benignus, <i>kind.</i>	benīgno	benīgn ē, <i>kindly.</i>
miser, <i>wretched.</i>	misero	miser ē, <i>wretchedly.</i>
pulcher, <i>beautiful.</i>	pulchro	pulchr ē, <i>beautifully.</i>
fortis, <i>brave.</i>	forti	forti ter , <i>bravely.</i>
ācer, <i>eager.</i>	ācri	ācri ter , <i>eagerly.</i>
prūdēns, <i>wise.</i>	prūdent	prūden ter , <i>wisely.</i>
fēlix, <i>lucky.</i>	fēlici	fēlici ter , <i>luckily.</i>

Observe (1) that the adjectives of the first group are of the *o* (or second) declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by changing the final *o* of the stem to *ē*.

(2) That the adjectives of the second group are of the third declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by adding *ter*.

(3) But stems in *nt* drop *t* before adding the suffix *ter*.

218. *Examine the following : —*

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
multus, <i>much.</i>	multum, <i>much.</i>
facilis, <i>easy.</i>	facile, <i>easily.</i>
impūnis, <i>unpunished.</i>	impūne, <i>with safety.</i>
citus, <i>quick.</i>	citō, <i>quickly.</i>
subitus, <i>sudden.</i>	subitō, <i>suddenly.</i>
prīmus, <i>first.</i>	prīmō, <i>at first.</i>

Observe that in the first group the accusative singular neuter of the adjective is used as an adverb; in the second, the ablative.

219. *Examine the following : —*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
grātē	grātius	grātissimē
miserē	miserius	miserrimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
fēliciter	fēlicius	fēlicissimē
benē ¹	melius	optimē
malē	pējus	pessimē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
————	magis	māximē

Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter accusative singular of the adjective; and that the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing, as in the positive, the final *o* of the stem to *ē*.

If the adjective is irregular in comparison, the adverb is likewise.

Compare : —

placidē, <i>calmly</i> .	liberē, <i>freely</i> .	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> .
audācter, <i>boldly</i> .	celeriter, <i>quickly</i> .	prūdentē, <i>wisely</i> .

220.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ōlim fuit² Athēniēnsis clārissimus. 2. Fidēlīter lēgibus³ cīvītātis pārēbat. 3. Jūstē omnibus rēbus⁴ agēbat. 4. Audācter pūgnāvit atque amīcum fortiter dēfendit. 5. Sapienter juvenēs aliōsque docēbat. 6. Falsō et turpiter accūsātus est; liberē sē⁵ dēfendit neque timēbat. 7. Injūstissimē ad mortem damnātus est ā cīvibus. 8. Venēnum in carcere bibit placidē. 9. Ejus⁶ memoria dēlēbitur nunquam. 10. Quis fuit Athēniēnsis?

II. 1. Was Socrates an illustrious Athenian? 2. Was he more illustrious than other citizens? 3. Did he not act

¹ Formed irregularly from *bonus*.

² *There was*.

³ Observe the dative with *pārēō*.

⁴ *Things*. See 260.

⁵ *Himself*.

⁶ *Of him*.

most justly in all respects? ¹ 4. Did he very ² faithfully obey the laws of the Athenians? 5. Did he not teach the Athenians very wisely? 6. Did he not defend a young man in battle very bravely? 7. Why was he most basely accused and condemned to death? 8. We shall cherish his memory more diligently. 9. His memory will be cherished faithfully by the best men. 10. In vain shall we seek for a better man than Socrates.

III. 1. Julius Cæsar was a very famous man. 2. He was excellently brought up by his mother. 3. He learned the Greek language very well. 4. He was an illustrious general and fought many battles most successfully. 5. In Gaul he took towns, and cruelly slew many men. 6. He boldly sailed to Britain with many ships. 7. But the inhabitants did not basely beg for peace. 8. He quickly overcame all his enemies. 9. (As) consul he ruled the Roman state wisely and well. 10. He was foully slain by Brutus and other Romans.

221.

VOCABULARY

crūdēliter [crūdēlis], *cruelly*.

diligenter [diligēns], *diligently*.

falsō [falsus], *falsely*.

fidēliter [fidēlis], *faithfully*.

frūstrā, *in vain*.

injūstē [injūstus], *unjustly*.

jūstē [jūstus], *justly*.

liberē [liber], *freely, fearlessly*.

olim, *formerly*.

optimē, *very well, excellently*.

sapienter [sapiēns], *wisely*.

turpiter [turpis], *basely, foully*.

accūsō, 1 [ad, causa], *accuse*.

Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., *Athenian*.

bibō, 3, bibī, pōtum, *drink*.

carcer, -eris, M., *prison*.

colō, 3, coluī, cultum, *cultivate, cherish, care for*.

damnō, 1, condemn.

discō, 3, didici, —, *learn*.

juvenis, -is, M. & F., *youth*.

lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language*.

nāvigō, 1 [nāvis, agō], *sail*.

necō, 1, *kill*. Cf. interficiō.

pāreō, 2, -uī, —, *obey* (w. dat.).

pāx, pācis, F., *peace*.

petō, 3, -īvī (-iī), -itum, *beg for, ask*.

quaerō, 3, quaesivī (-iī), quaesitum, *seek for, ask, inquire*.

sed, conj., *but*. Cf. autem (214).

Sōcratēs, -is, M., *Socrates, an Athenian philosopher*.

venēnum, -ī, N., *poison*.

¹ Compare I. 3.

² See page 91, note.

222.

COLLOQUIUM

PATER ET FĪLIOLUS

P. Quid, mī filiōle, in scholā hodiē discēbās ?

little son

F. Discēbam, mī pater, pēnsū de adverbīis longissimū.

P. Cui partī ōrātiōnis est adverbium simillimū ?

to what

speech

F. Simillimū, ut opīnor, est adverbium adjectīvō.

as I think

P. Rēctē, puer; sed illud mihi explicā, sī poteris: Sī,

this

explain

if

you can

ut dīcis, adverbium adjectīvō est simile, unde nōmen trāxit ?

whence

has derived

F. Fortasse propter hōc, quod saepissimē verbīs ad-

perhaps

on account of this

because

very often

verbs

jungitur.

P. Optimē, filiōle; ēn tibi āsem !

here is for you

penny

CHAPTER XXX

FOURTH CONJUGATION

223.

Ī-VERBS

Audiō (stem audī), *hear*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum.

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I hear, etc.

I am heard, etc.

audiō audīmus

audior

audīmur

audīs audītis

audīris, or -re

audīmini

audīt audiunt

audītur

audiuntur

IMPERFECT

I was hearing, etc.

I was heard, etc.

audiēbam audiēbāmus

audiēbar

audiēbāmur

audiēbās audiēbātis

audiēbāris, or -re

audiēbāmini

audiēbat audiēbant

audiēbātur

audiēbantur

ACTIVE

FUTURE

PASSIVE

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

aud iam aud iēmus
aud iēs aud iētis
aud iet aud ient

aud iar aud iēmur
aud iēris, or -re aud iēmini
aud iētur aud ientur

PERFECT

*I have heard, etc.**I have been heard, etc.*

audīv ī audīv imus
audīv istī audīv istis
audīv it audīv ērunt, or -re

audīt us { sum
 es audīt ī { sumus
 est estis
 sunt

PLUPERFECT

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audīv eram audīv erāmus
audīv erās audīv erātis
audīv erat audīv erant

audīt us { eram audīt ī { erāmus
 erās erātis
 erat erant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audīv erō audīv erīmus
audīv erīs audīv erītis
audīv erit audīv erint

audīt us { erō audīt ī { erimus
 eris eritis
 erit erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE¹

PRESENT

aud iam aud iāmus
aud iās aud iātis
aud iat aud iant

aud iar aud iāmur
aud iāris, or -re aud iāmini
aud iātur aud iantur

IMPERFECT

aud īrem aud īrēmus
aud īrēs aud īrētis
aud īret aud īrent

aud īrer aud īrēmur
aud īrēris, or -re aud īrēmini
aud īrētur aud īrentur

PERFECT

audīv erim audīv erīmus
audīv erīs audīv erītis
audīv erit audīv erint

audīt us { sim audīt ī { simus
 sīs sītis
 sit sint

¹ See page 26, note.

ACTIVE

PLUPERFECT

PASSIVE

audīv issem	audīv issēmus	audīt us	{	essem	audīt ī	{	essēmus
audīv issēs	audīv issētis			essēs			essētis
audīv isset	audīv issent			esset			essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

aud ī, *hear thou.*aud īre *be thou heard.*aud īte, *hear ye.*aud īminī, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE

aud itō, *thou shalt hear.*aud itor, *thou shalt be heard.*aud itō, *he shall hear.*aud itor, *he shall be heard.*aud itōte, *ye shall hear.*aud iuntō, *they shall hear.*aud iuntor, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE

PRES. aud īre, *to hear.*aud īrī, *to be heard.*PERF. audīv isse, *to have heard.*audīt us esse, *to have been heard.*FUT. audīt ūrus esse, *to be about to hear.*audīt um īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE

PRES. aud iēns, -entis, *hearing.*

PRES. ———

FUT. audīt ūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*GER. aud iendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*

PERF. ———

PERF. audīt us, -a, -um, *heard, having been heard.*

GERUND

G. aud iendī, *of hearing.*D. aud iendō, *for hearing.*Ac. aud iendum, *hearing.*Ab. aud iendō, *by hearing.*

SUPINE

Ac. audīt um, *to hear.*Ab. audīt ū, *to hear, to be heard.*

CHAPTER XXXI

FOURTH CONJUGATION

224. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *audiō*.

225.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Audiō, audiēbam, audiam.* 2. *Audit, audiēbat, audiet.* 3. *Audītur, audiēbātur, audiētur.* 4. *Audī, audire.* 5. *Audīmur, audiēbāmur, audiēmur.* 6. *Audire, audiri.* 7. *Audītis, audiēbātis, audiētis.* 8. *Audīs, audiris.* 9. *Audiunt, audiuntur.* 10. *Audent, audientur.*

II. 1. Thou hearest, thou wast hearing, thou wilt hear. 2. I hear, I am heard. 3. He is hearing, he was hearing, he will hear. 4. To be heard, to hear. 5. We were hearing, we were (being) heard. 6. We hear, we heard, we shall hear. 7. They will hear, they will be heard. 8. You heard, you were heard. 9. Hear (ye), be ye heard. 10. I hear, I heard, I shall be heard.

226.

EXERCISES

Pūniō, punish; mūniō, fortify; vestiō, clothe.

I. 1. *Pūniēbam, mūniēbam, vestiēbam.* 2. *Mūnītur, pūnītur, vestītur.* 3. *Pūniet, vestiet, mūniet.* 4. *Pūnī, mūnīte, vestīminī.* 5. *Vestiētur, pūniētur, mūniētur.* 6. *Nōne pūnīmus? nōne vestīmus? nōne mūniuntur?* 7. *Vestīamne? pūnietne? mūniēturne?* 8. *Mūniēbant, pūniēbāminī, vestior.* 9. *Nōn vestīris, nōn pūnit, nōn mūniēmus.* 10. *Pūniar, mūniam, vestiēbāris.*

II. 1. He was clothing, he was punishing, he was fortifying. 2. They will be clothed, they will be fortified, they will be punished. 3. Be thou clothed, punish (thou), fortify. 4. I fortify, he punishes, we are clothing. 5. Are you not being clothed? was it not fortified? will he not

be punished? 6. They are being punished, it is being fortified, thou wilt be clothed. 7. We punish, we were fortifying, they will clothe. 8. Were you being clothed? will it be fortified? shall I be punished? 9. I shall not fortify, you are not being clothed, they will not be punished. 10. I punished, you will fortify, they clothe.

227.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Vēre terra grāmine et flōribus vestitur. 2. Vēre avium cantūs¹ audimus. 3. Mors vītam nostram finiet. 4. Puerī in grāmine dormiēbant. 5. Somnō mollimus cūrās. 6. Canēs agricolārum ovēs custōdiunt. 7. Militēs urbem custōdient. 8. Bellum ā Scīpiōne fīniētur. 9. Audite verba sapientium. 10. Injūstē puer pūnitur.

II. 1. A good father will nurture, clothe, and instruct his children. 2. It is very² pleasant³ to hear the sweet voice of the nightingale. 3. All our pains are ended by death. 4. The general justly punishes a cowardly soldier. 5. The sheep are carefully⁴ guarded by the dog. 6. Scipio finished the war in Africa. 7. The pupils are very faithfully instructed by their teachers. 8. My son, soothe your mother's cares. 9. The city is fortified by strong walls. 10. In the summer the trees are clothed with leaves.

228.

VOCABULARY

custōdiō, 4 [custōs], guard.

dormiō, 4, sleep.

ē-rudiō, 4 [rudis], teach, instruct.

fīniō, 4 [finis], end, finish.

mollīō, 4 [mollis], soften, soothe.

mūniō, 4, fortify, defend.

nūtriō, 4, nurture, nourish.

pūniō, 4, punish.

vestiō, 4, clothe.

carmen, -inis, N., song.

dolor, -ōris, M., pain.

folium, -i, N., leaf.

grāmen, -inis, N., grass.

īgnāvus, -a, -um, adj., cowardly.

jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant.

luscīnia, -ae, F., nightingale.

vēr, vēris, N., spring.

vōx, vōcis, F., voice.

¹ Songs. ² See page 91, note. ³ Neuter gender. ⁴ See 144, 145.

CHAPTER XXXII

FOURTH CONJUGATION

229. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *audiō*.

230.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. *Audīvī, audīveram, audīverō.* 2. *Audītus est, audītus erat, audītus erit.* 3. *Audīvimus, audīverāmus, audīverimus.* 4. *Audīverant, audītī erant.* 5. *Audīvistī, audīverās, audīveris.* 6. *Audīvisse, audītus esse.* 7. *Audīverātis, audītī erātis.* 8. *Audīvit, audīverat, audīverit.*

II 1. Thou hast heard, thou hadst heard, thou wilt have heard. 2. They have been heard, they had been heard, they will have been heard. 3. I have heard, I have been heard. 4. To have been heard, to have heard. 5. We have heard, we had heard, we shall have heard. 6. We have been heard, we had been heard, we shall have been heard. 7. You have heard, you have been heard. 8. He had heard, he had been heard.

231.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. *Fīnīveram, ērudīveram, vestīveram.* 2. *Fīnītum est, ērudītus sum, vestītus sum.* 3. *Nōnne fīnīta sunt? nōnne vestītus eram? nōnne ērudītus erō?* 4. *Vestīverās, ērudīverās, fīnīverās.* 5. *Fīnīveris, ērudītus eris, vestīverimus.* 6. *Vestītae erant, fīnīta erant, ērudītī erant.* 7. *Ērudīverātis, fīnīveram, vestīverint.* 8. *Vestītīne sumus? estne ērudītus? estne fīnītum?* 9. *Ērudīta es, fīnīstī,¹ vestīerās.²* 10. *Nōn ērudīstis, nōn fīnīverātis, nōn vestīverit.*

¹ For *fīnīvistī*. Perfects in *ivī* often drop *v* and contract *iī* to *ī*.

² For *vestīverās*.

II. 1. Have they not been clothed? have they (*neut.*) not been finished? were they not taught? 2. We have finished, we have clothed, we have taught. 3. She had been taught, they (*neut.*) had been finished, we (*fem.*) had been clothed. 4. Didst thou teach? have you finished? has she clothed? 5. They had clothed, they will have taught, I have finished. 6. I had clothed, thou hadst taught, he had finished. 7. We shall not have finished, they will not have clothed, you will not have taught. 8. It was not finished, we had not been taught, you will not have been clothed. 9. You have taught, you had finished, you will have clothed. 10. I shall have clothed, I had taught, I finished.

232.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Medicus rēgis nocte ad Fabricium vēnit.¹ 2. Fabricius medicum vinxit et ad dominum mīsit. 3. Urbs virtūte et fortitūdine mīlitum mūnīta erit. 4. Rōmānī artibus² et litterīs² ā Graecīs ērudītī sunt. 5. Octō hōrās dormīre puerīs satis est. 6. Lūce sōlis calōreque aperīuntur flōrēs. 7. Omnēs terrās fortibus virīs aperuit nātūra. 8. Mīlītēs arcem fidēliter custōdīvērunt. 9. Brūtus in castra Caesaris vēnerat. 10. Nihil scīre turpissimum est.

II. 1. The king's physician was bound by Fabricius' slave. 2. The valor and endurance (*fortitūdō*) of the soldiers fortified the city. 3. The Greeks instructed the Romans in the arts.³ 4. Is it enough for a boy to sleep two hours?⁴ 5. The light and heat of the sun had opened the flowers. 6. The citadel was very⁵ carefully guarded by

¹ How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?

² In the arts and literature.

⁴ Duās hōrās.

³ Compare I. 4.

⁵ See page 91, note.

- the soldiers. 7. To know many things¹ is very useful. 8. To be ignorant of many things is not disgraceful. 9. The general's camp² had not been fortified. 10. Did you not hear the voice of your father?

233.

VOCABULARY

aperiō, 4, -uī, -tum, *open, disclose.*

ne-sciō, 4, *know not, be ignorant of.*

sciō, 4, *know, know how.*

veniō, 4, vēmī, ventum, come.

vinciō, 4, vinxī, vinctum, *bind*.

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards.*

ars, artis, F., *art* (167. 2).

calor, -ōris, M., *heat*.

Fabricius, -ī, m., *Fabricius*, a
Roman general.

litterae, -ārum, F., letters, literature ; often = epistula.

lūx, lūcis, F., *light, daylight.*

medicus, -ī, M., *physician*.

nox, noctis, F., *night* (167. 2).

octō, num. adj., indecl., *eight*.

turpis, -e, *adj.*, *base, disgraceful.*

234.

COLLOQUIUM

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS

P. Dē quā rē est pēnsūm hodiernū ?

D. Pēnsūm hodiernū est iterū dē conjugātiōne quartā.

P. Herī quartam conjugātiōnem nesciēbās; scīsne hodiē?

D. Partim sciō, modum autem subjunctivum nesciō.

P. Mox subjunctivum quoque discēs.

D. Estne ūtilius indicātivum scīre quam subjunctivum?

P. Utrumque debemus scire; indicativus autem saepius invenitur.

D. Adhūc conjugātiōnēs didicī quattuor. Suntne plūrēs?
thus far

P. Nōn plūrēs ; sed multa verba sunt anōmala.
irregular

¹ See 117.

² Remember that the Latin word for *camp* is plural, *castra*.

castrōrum. - What must be the number of the verb of which castra is the subject?

CHAPTER XXXIII

THIRD CONJUGATION

235.

VERBS IN *iō*¹**Capiō** (stem *cape*), *take*.PRINCIPAL PARTS : *capiō*, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captum*.

ACTIVE		INDICATIVE MOOD	
		PRESENT	PASSIVE
<i>I take, etc.</i>		<i>I am taken, etc.</i>	
<i>cap iō</i>	<i>cap imus</i>	<i>cap ior</i>	<i>cap imur</i>
<i>cap is</i>	<i>cap itis</i>	<i>cap eris, or -re</i>	<i>cap iminī</i>
<i>cap it</i>	<i>cap iunt</i>	<i>cap itur</i>	<i>cap iuntur</i>
		IMPERFECT	
<i>I was taking, etc.</i>		<i>I was taken, etc.</i>	
<i>cap iēbam</i>	<i>cap iēbāmus</i>	<i>cap iēbar</i>	<i>cap iēbāmur</i>
<i>cap iēbās</i>	<i>cap iēbātis</i>	<i>cap iēbāris, or -re</i>	<i>cap iēbāminī</i>
<i>cap iēbat</i>	<i>cap iēbant</i>	<i>cap iēbātur</i>	<i>cap iēbantur</i>
		FUTURE	
<i>I shall take, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be taken, etc.</i>	
<i>cap iam</i>	<i>cap iēmus</i>	<i>cap iar</i>	<i>cap iēmur</i>
<i>cap iēs</i>	<i>cap iētis</i>	<i>cap iēris, or -re</i>	<i>cap iēminī</i>
<i>cap iet</i>	<i>cap ient</i>	<i>cap iētur</i>	<i>cap ientur</i>
		PERFECT	
<i>cēp ī, cēp istī, cēp it, etc.</i>		<i>cap tus sum, es, est, etc.</i>	
		PLUPERFECT	
<i>cēp eram, cēp erās, cēp erat, etc.</i>		<i>cap tus eram, erās, erat, etc.</i>	
		FUTURE PERFECT	
<i>cēp erō, cēp erīs, cēp erit, etc.</i>		<i>cap tus erō, eris, erit, etc.</i>	

¹ Verbs in *iō* of the third conjugation are distinguished from those of the fourth by the active

infinitive present. What forms of *capiō* are like those of *audiō*?
Make a general statement.

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

cap iam, cap iās, cap iat, etc.

cap iar, -iāris *or* -re, -iātur, etc.

IMPERFECT

cap erem, cap erēs, cap eret, etc.

cap erer, -erēris *or* -re, -erētur

PERFECT

cēp erim, cēp erīs, cēp erit, etc.

cap tus sim, sīs, sit, etc.

PLUPERFECT

cēp issem, cēp issēs, cēp isset, etc.

cap tus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRES. cap e, *take thou.*cap ere, *be thou taken.*cap ite, *take ye.*cap iminī, *be ye taken.*FUT. cap ito, *thou shalt take,*
etc.cap itor, *thou shalt be taken,*
etc.

INFINITIVE

PRES. cap ere, *to take.*cap ī, *to be taken.*PERF. cēp isse, *to have taken.*cap tus esse, *to have been taken.*FUT. cap tūrus esse, *to be about*
*to take.*cap tum īrī, *to be about to be*
taken.

PARTICIPLE

PRES. cap iēns, *taking.*

PRES. ———

FUT. capt ūrus, *about to take.*GER. capiendus, *to be taken.*

PERF. ———

PERF. capt us, *having been taken.*

GERUND

cap iendī, *of taking,*
etc.

SUPINE

Ac. capt um, *to take.*Ab. capt ū, *to take, to be taken-*

CHAPTER XXXIV

THIRD CONJUGATION

236.

VERBS IN *iō*

Learn all the tenses of the indicative, the present imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *capiō*.

237.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Capiunt, capiēbant. 2. Capior, capiēbar, capiar. 3. Capimur, capiēbāmur, capiēmur. 4. Capis, caperis. 5. Cēpī, captus sum. 6. Cēpimus, cēperāmus, cēperimus. 7. Capta sunt, capta erant, capta erunt. 8. Cape, capere. 9. Capere, capī. 10. Cēpisse, captus esse.

II. 1. We are taking, we were taking, we shall be taking. 2. Take, be taken. 3. Thou art taking, thou wast taking, thou wilt take. 4. You have taken, you had taken, you will have taken. 5. It is taken, it was taken, it will be taken. 6. I was taking, I was taken. 7. To take, to have taken. 8. To be taken, to have been taken. 9. It (*fem.*) has been taken, it had been taken, it will have been taken. 10. We have taken, we have been taken.

238.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Tarentīnī lēgātīs Rōmānōrum injūriam fēcērunt. 2. Pyrrhus, Ēpīrī rēx, ad Tarentīnōs vēnit. 3. Contrā Pyrrhum missus est Laevīnus cōsul. 4. Pyrrhus elephantīs vīcit, nam Rōmānōrum equī territī sunt et fugiēbant. 5. Nox proelī fīnem fēcīt; Laevīnus per noctem fūgit. 6. Multī et fortēs Rōmānī in pūgnā interfectī sunt. 7. Captīvōs Rōmānōs summō in honōre habuit Pyrrhus. 8. Deinde¹ in Campāniam sē recēpit. 9. Lēgātī, ā Rōmānīs missī,²

¹ Pronounced de-in'-de.

² Sent.

honōrificē ā Pyrrhō exceptī sunt. 10. Pāx cum Pyrrhō nōn facta¹ est.

II. 1. A wrong was done¹ to the Romans by the Tarentines. 2. Against Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, the Romans sent the consul Lævinus. 3. The spies of Pyrrhus were taken by Lævinus and led through his camp. 4. The Romans did not make peace with King Pyrrhus. 5. Fabricius saw through the design of the king and was not² frightened. 6. You will welcome your friend to-day. 7. I welcome my best friend with great pleasure.³ 8. The enemy threw their spears and fled into the woods. 9. Did not Cæsar either conquer or slay all his enemies? 10. Finally he was himself (*ipse*) slain by Brutus his friend, and others.

239.

VOCABULARY

ex-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō],
catch, accept, welcome.

faciō,¹ 3, fēcī, factum, make, do.

fugiō, 3, fūgī, fugitum, flee.

inter-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō],
kill, slay. Cf. necō (221).

jaciō, 3, jēcī, jactum, throw.

per-spiciō, 3, -spēxī, -spectum
[speciō], see through, into.

re-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō],
take back, get again, receive.

se recipere, withdraw, retreat.

aut . . . aut, conj., either . . . or.
Campānia, -ae, F., Campania, a
division of Italy.

contrā, prep. w. acc., against.

de-inde, adv., then, next.

dēnique, adv., finally.

explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout, spy.

finis, -is, M., end.

honor, -ōris, M., honor.

honōrificē, adv., honorably.

injūria, -ae, F., wrong, injury.

Laevīnus, -ī, M., Lævinus, a Roman.

lēgātus, -ī, M., ambassador, lieutenant.

per, prep. w. acc., through.

proelium, -ī, N., battle. Cf. pūgna
(102).

summus, -a, -um (sup. of superus), adj., highest.

Tarentīnus, -ī, M., an inhabitant
of Tarentum, a Tarentine.

¹ For the passive of faciō, see 327. ² And . . . not, neque.

³ See 144, 145.

CHAPTER XXXV

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

240.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Amāmus, monēmus, regimus, audīmus. 2. Laudant, dēlent, agunt, custōdiunt. 3. Ōrnābam, dēlēbam, vincēbam, mūniēbam. 4. Cantāvistī, habuistī, posuistī, vinxistī. 5. Mūtāvērunt, tenuērunt, ēgērunt, cēpērunt, mūnīvērunt. 6. Portāverātis, dēlēverātis, prae-buerātis, dūxerātis, dormīverātis.

II. 1. Fugātur, terrētur, pōnitur, vincitur. 2. Servāberis, tenēberis, mittēre, vestiēre. 3. Laudātī sumus, prohibītī sumus, ductī sumus, ērudītī sumus. 4. Ōrnāre, monēre, trahere, pūnīre. 5. Amārī, docērī, contemnī, jacī, aperīrī. 6. Amātae sunt, monitae sunt, exceptae sunt, audītae sunt.

III. 1. Dormīte, superāte, facite, vincite, vincite, prae-bēte. 2. Vulnerāvisse, jēcisse, vēnisse, docuisse, fluxisse. 3. Recipimur, spectāmur, agimur, vestimur, docēmur. 4. Docēbitis, pūniētis, trahētis, fugiētis, creābitis. 5. Mīsīt, habuit, armāvit, jēcīt, fūgit. 6. Vinciminī, vituperāminī, terrēminī, vincīminī, capiminī.

241.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Thou lovest, thou advisest, thou rulest, thou hear-est. 2. I shall praise, I shall destroy, I shall drive, I shall guard. 3. You were adorning, you were seeing, you were conquering, you were fortifying. 4. We have sung, we have had, we have placed, we have bound. 5. You have changed, you have held, you have driven, you have taken, you have fortified. 6. I had carried, I had destroyed, I had furnished, I had led, I had slept.

II. 1. We are put to flight, we are frightened, we are placed, we are bound. 2. He will be saved, he will be held, he will be sent, he will be clothed. 3. They have been praised, they have been prevented, they have been led, they have been instructed. 4. They will be adorned, they will be advised, they will be drawn, they will be punished. 5. To be loved, to be taught, to be despised, to be thrown, to be opened. 6. Thou hast been loved, thou hast been advised, thou hast been welcomed, thou hast been heard.

III. 1. Sleep, surpass, do (*fac*), bind, conquer, furnish. 2. To wound, to throw, to come, to teach, to flow. 3. They are received, they are witnessed, they are driven, they are clothed, they are taught. 4. I shall teach, I shall punish, I shall draw, I shall flee, I shall create. 5. They have sent, they have had, they have armed, they have thrown, they have fled. 6. Thou art conquered, thou art blamed, thou art frightened, thou art bound, thou art taken.

242.

COLLOQUIUM

JACŌBUS ET AUGUSTUS

J. Dēnique ad fīnem pēnsī pervēnimus; quid jam
finally end now
 incipiēmus?
begin

A. Tū quidquid vidēbitur incipiēs: ego incipiam nihil.
you whatever seems good

J. Quārē? esne dēfessus?
why

A. Certē, admodum dēfessus; pēnsū recōgnōscendum
certainly downright review
 mē quidem paene fīnīvit.
at least almost

J. Mox recreāberis, sī mēcum ad natandum veniēs.
soon will be rested with me swim

A. Profectō tēcum veniam, nam natāre mihi est jūcun-
 surely with you for
 dissimum et semper et praecipuē cum
 both especially when

“*Sōle sub ardentī resonant arbusta cicādīs.*”
 under glowing resound groves the cicadas

J. Quam lautē poētā aliquem laudās!
 how elegantly some quote

A. Hunc Vergilī versiculum mē docuit praeceptor.
 this Vergil line

CHAPTER XXXVI

FOURTH DECLENSION

243. The stem ends in *u*.

244. RULE OF GENDER.—Nouns in *us* are masculine ;
 those in *ū* are neuter.

1. The following nouns, and a few others, are feminine : *acus*,
needle ; *domus*, *house* ; *īdūs* (plur.), *Ides* ; *manus*, *hand* ; *porticus*,
portico ; *tribus*, *tribe*.

245.

PARADIGMS

Gradus, M., <i>step</i> .		Genū, N., <i>knee</i> .	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. grad us	grad ūs	gén ū	gen ua
G. grad ūs	grad uum	gen ūs	gen uum
D. grad uī (ū)	grad ibus	gen ū	gen ibus
Ac. grad um	grad ūs	gen ū	gen ua
Ab. grad ū	grad ibus	gen ū	gen ibus

MASC.		NEUT.	
TERMINATIONS			
N.V. us	ūs	ū	ua
G. ūs	uum	ūs	uum
D. uī (ū)	ibus (ubus)	ū	ibus (ubus)
Ac. um	ūs	ū	ua
Ab. ū	ibus (ubus)	ū	ibus (ubus)

246. The fourth declension is a modification of the third. Thus, *gradūs*, genitive singular, is for *graduis*, *gradum* for *graduem*, *gradū* for *gradue*, etc.

247. *Artus*, *joint*, *partus*, *birth*, *tribus*, *tribe* ; sometimes *portus*, *harbor*, *verū*, *a spit* ; also dissyllables in *cus*, have the termination *ubus* in the dative and ablative plural.

248. *Domus*, *house*, has also forms of the second declension. See special paradigms, **262**.

249. Decline together *domus mea*, *my house* ; *exercitus māgnus*, *large army* ; *Īdūs Mārtiae*, *Ides of March*.

250.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Vēre adventus avium hominibus est jūcundissimus. 2. Sēnsūs avium ācrēs sunt, mōtūs celerēs. 3. In lacubus et in palūdibus māgna avium est multitūdō. 4. Avēs multae in porticibus altīs domicilium habent. 5. Quercus Jovī sacra erat. 6. Quercūs frōns est victōris ōrnāmentum. 7. Cōsulātus erat Rōmānōrum magistrātus amplus. 8. Salūs cīvītātis in manibus cōsulum erat. 9. Cōsulēs exercituum erant imperātōrēs. 10. Erant in portibus nāvēs longae.¹

II. 1. The enemy (*plur.*) were conquered on the arrival² of Cæsar. 2. Many animals fight with their horns. 3. Many lakes are seen in the Alps. 4. The ancients honored the oak (as) the tree³ of Jupiter. 5. The songs of birds are heard among the oaks. 6. In ancient times men fought with bows and arrows. 7. The consulship of Cicero was very renowned. 8. Cæsar came into Italy with a large army. 9. The arrival of the army freed the citizens from fear.⁴ 10. Between school and home we take (make) many steps.

¹ Nāvēs longae, *ships of war*.

² See 136.

³ Predicate accusative.

⁴ See 128, 129, 130.

251.

VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, M. [adveniō], *arrival, approach*.
 arcus, -ūs, M., *bow*.
 cantus, -ūs, M., *song*.
 cōsulātus, -ūs, M. [cōnsul], *consulship*.
 cornū, -ūs, N., *horn*.
 exercitus, -ūs, M. [exerceō], *army*.
 lacus, -ūs, M., *lake*.
 magistrātus, -ūs, M. [magister], *office, magistrate*.
 manus, -ūs, F., *hand*.
 metus, -ūs, M., *fear*.
 mōtus, -ūs, M. [moveō], *movement, motion*.

palūs, -ūdis, F., *swamp, marsh*.
 portus, -ūs, M., *harbor*.
 quercus, -ūs, F., *oak* (11. 4).
 sēnsus, -ūs, M. [sentiō], *sense, feeling*.
 amplus, -a, -um, adj., *great, renowned, honorable*.
 domicilium, -ī, N., *home* (79).
 frōns, frondis, F., *chaplet of leaves*.
 Juppiter, Jovis, M., *Jupiter, the supreme god* (262).
 sagitta, -ae, F., *arrow*.
 salūs, -ūtis, F., *safety*.
 schola, -ae, F., *school*.
 victor, -ōris, M. [vincō], *conqueror*.

CHAPTER XXXVII

FIFTH DECLENSION

252. The stem ends in *ē*.

253. RULE OF GENDER. — Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs*, *day*, which is commonly masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.

254.

PARADIGMS

Diēs, day.		Rēs, thing, affair.		TERMINATIONS	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	ēs	ēs
G. diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	ēī	ērum
D. diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	ēī	ēbus
Ac. diem	diēs	rem	rēs	em	ēs
Ab. diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	ē	ēbus

255. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have nominative and accusative plural.

256. Decline together *rēs pūblica*, *state*; in sing., *bona fidēs*, *good faith*; *māgna spēs*, *great hope*; *diēs quīntus*, *fifth day*.

257.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In omnibus rēbus certus ōrdō est. 2. Domina rērum hūmānārum est fortūna. 3. Tertiō diē cōsul in urbem veniet. 4. Dux exercitum in plānitie dūxit. 5. Ibi aciem instrūxit et hostēs exspectābat. 6. Māgnam victōriæ spem habuit. 7. Nam māximæ erant mīlitum fidēs et virtūs. 8. Prōsalūtereī pūblicæ pūgnābant. 9. Posterō diē hostēs in pūgnam prōcessērunt. 10. Ad diē finem victi sunt et fugāti.

II. 1. God is the creator of all things. 2. The commonwealth is dear to all good citizens. 3. In all human affairs there is much uncertainty.¹ 4. The army was marshalled in a large plain. 5. The enemy advanced against² the Romans' line of battle. 6. The general praised the soldiers for³ their⁴ fidelity. 7. In the line of battle were many foot-soldiers. 8. They had great hopes of victory. 9. In⁵ a few days the arrangement of things will be changed. 10. The consul gave a pledge to the state.

258.

VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēī, F., *line of battle*.
 fidēs, ēī, F., *faith, fidelity, pledge*.
 plānitēs, -ēī, F., *plain*.
 rēs pūblica, F., *commonwealth*.
 spēs, spēī, F., *hope*. [*state*.]
 cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious*.
 certus, -a, -um, adj., *fixed, certain*.
 creātor, -ōris, M., *creator*.
 domina, -ae, F., *mistress*.
 ex-spectō, 1, *await, expect*.
 hūmānus, -a, um, adj., *human*.

in-certus, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain*.
 in-struō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctum,
draw up, marshal.
 ōrdō, -inis, M., *order, arrangement*.
 paucus,⁶ -a, -um, adj., *few, little*.
 pedes, -itis, M. [pēs], *foot-soldier*.
 posterus, -a, -um, adj., *following,*
next.
 prō, prep. w. abl., *for, in behalf of*.
 prō-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, *ad-*
vance.

¹ Many things are uncertain.

² In with accusative.

³ Dē with ablative.

⁴ Omit.

⁵ See 135, 136.

⁶ Mostly used in the plural.

259. *Examine the following :—*

1. Claudus alterō pede, *lame in one foot.*
2. Mōribus similēs, *similar in character.*
3. Virtūte praecēdunt, *they excel in courage.*
4. Numerō ad duodecim, *about twelve in number.*

Observe that the ablatives *pede*, *mōribus*, *virtūte*, and *numerō*, answer the question *in what respect?* This ablative is called the ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

260. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The ablative is used to denote that in respect to which anything is said to be, or to be done.

261.

COLLOQUIUM

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS

P. Omnium dēclīnātiōnum quae est difficillima ?
which

D. Tertia mihi videtur difficillima.

P. Quārē ita cēnsēs ?
why think

D. Varietātis causā terminātiōnum in nōminātīvō singulārī. Genus quoque est mihi molestissimum, praesertim nōminum in is dēsinentium.
variety on account
gender also especially
nouns ending

P. Tenēsne memoriā quae nōmina plūrālem genetivum in ium habeant ?
have

D. Primum nōmina in is et es dēsinentia, sī in genetivō singulārī nōn crēscunt; ut *hostis* et *nūbēs*.
increase

Deinde monosyllaba in s vel x dēsinentia, sī ante s et x stat cōnsonāns; ut *urbs* et *arx*.
consonant

Tum nōmina in ns et rs dēsinentia; ut *cliēns* et *cohors*.

Dēnique neutra in e, al, ar dēsinentia; ut *mare*, *animal*, *calcar*.
neuters

P. Optimē, mī puer; bene studuistī et bene memoriā tenēs. Jam tibi licet ire ad lūdendum.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

262. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

Vir, M., <i>man.</i>	Vis, F., <i>strength.</i>	Deus, M., <i>god.</i>	Senex, M., <i>old man.</i>
SINGULAR			
N.V. vir	vīs	de us	senex
G. vir ī	vīs ¹	de ī	sen is
D. vir ō	vī ¹	de ō	sen ī
Ac. vir um	vim	de um	sen em
Ab. vir ō	vī	de ō	sen e

PLURAL

N.V.	vir ī	vir ēs	de ī, di ī, d ī	sen ēs
G.	vir ōrum	vir ium	de ōrum, de ūm	sen um
D.	vir īs	vir ibus	de īs, di īs, d īs	sen ibus
Ac.	vir ōs	vir ēs	de ōs	sen ēs
Ab.	vir īs	vir ibus	de īs, di īs, d īs	sen ibus

Iter, N.,	Juppiter,	Bōs, M. & F.,	Domus, F.,
<i>way.</i>	<i>Jupiter.</i>	<i>ox, cow.</i>	<i>house.</i>

SINGULAR

N.V. iter	Juppiter	bōs	dom us
G. itineris	Jov is	bov is	dom ūs
D. itinerī	Jov ī	bov ī	dom uī, ō
Ac. iter	Jov em	bov em	dom um
Ab. itinere	Jov e	bov e	dom ō, ū

PLURAL

N.V. itiner a	bov ēs	dom ūs
G. itiner um	bov um, bo um	dom uum, ōrum
D. itiner ibus	bōb us, būb us	dom ibus
Ac. itiner a	bov ēs	dom ōs, ūs
Ab. itiner ibus	bōb us, būb us	dom ibus

¹ The genitive and dative singular are rare.

263.

FOR TRANSLATION

PROSERPINA IS CARRIED OFF BY PLUTO

[Review 199 and 215.]

Dum Proserpina luco
 Lūdit, et aut violas aut candida lilia carpit,
 Dumque puellari studio ¹ calathosque ² sinumque ²
 Implet, et aequales ³ certat superare legendo,⁴
 Paene simul visa est dilectaque ⁵ raptaque ⁶ Diti.⁷

HER CHANCE OF RETURN IS LOST

Dixerat.⁸ At Cereri certum est ⁹ educere ¹⁰ natam.¹¹
 Non ita fata sinunt, quoniam jejunia virgo
 Solverat et, cultis ¹² dum simplex errat ¹³ in hortis,
 Poeniceum ¹⁴ curva ¹⁵ decerpserat arbore pomum,
 Sumptaque callenti septem de cortice grana
 Presserat ¹⁶ ore suo: solusque ex omnibus illud
 Ascalaphus vidit. . . .
 Vidit, et indicio reditum crudelis ademit.

¹ Puellārī studiō = puellārī cum studiō. See 144 and 145.

² Que . . . que, both . . . and.

³ Aequālēs = comitēs.

⁴ Legendō, in gathering (flowers).

⁵ Dilecta, from diligō.

⁶ Rapta, from rapiō. With dilecta and rapta supply est.

⁷ Diti. Translate as if, instead of the dative, it were ā Dīte.

⁸ Dixerat, i.e. Juppiter.

⁹ Cererī certum est, to Ceres it is determined = Ceres is resolved.

¹⁰ Ēducere, that is, from the lower world.

¹¹ Nātam, = filiam.

¹² Cultis, with hortis.

¹³ Errat. Translate as if it were errābat. The present referring to past time is very often used after dum. So lūdit, l. 2.

¹⁴ Poeniceum, with pōmum.

¹⁵ Curvā, bending. The tree is loaded with fruit.

¹⁶ Presserat, from premō.

CHAPTER XXXIX

PRONOUNS

Pronouns may be divided into eight classes, and arranged in three groups :

I. {	1. Personal.	II. {	4. Determinative.	III. {	6. Relative.
	2. Reflexive.		5. Demonstrative.		7. Interrogative.
	3. Possessive.				8. Indefinite.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

264.

PARADIGMS

FIRST PERSON

Egð, I.

SINGULAR

N.	egð, <i>I.</i>
G.	meī, <i>of me.</i>
D.	mihī (mī), <i>to, for me.</i>
Ac.	mē, <i>me.</i>
Ab.	(ā) mē, <i>by me.</i>

PLURAL

nōs, <i>we.</i>
nostrum, or nostrī, <i>of us.</i>
nōbīs, <i>to, for us.</i>
nōs, <i>us.</i>
(ā) nōbīs, <i>by us.</i>

SECOND PERSON

Tū, thou.

N.	tū, <i>thou.</i>
G.	tui, <i>of thee.</i>
D.	tibi, <i>to, for thee.</i>
Ac.	tē, <i>thee.</i>
Ab.	(ā) tē, <i>by thee.</i>

vōs, <i>you, ye.</i>
vestrum, or vestrī, <i>of you.</i>
vōbīs, <i>to, for you.</i>
vōs, <i>you.</i>
(ā) vōbīs, <i>by you.</i>

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

Suī, of himself, etc.

SINGULAR

N.	_____
G.	suī, <i>of himself, herself, itself.</i>
D.	sibi, <i>to, for himself, etc.</i>
Ac.	sē (sēsē), <i>himself, etc.</i>
Ab.	(ā) sē (sēsē), <i>by himself, etc.</i>

PLURAL

suī, <i>of themselves.</i>
sibi, <i>to, for themselves.</i>
sē (sēsē), <i>themselves.</i>
(ā) sē (sēsē), <i>by themselves.</i>

265. 1. The personal pronoun of the third person is *is, ea, id, he, she, it*. But when reference is made in the oblique cases to the subject of the sentence, the reflexive *suī* is used: *Omnēs hominēs sē* (or *sēsē*) *amant, all men love themselves*.

2. The nominatives of the personal pronouns are much less frequently used in Latin than their equivalents in English. Why is this? In general, they are used only for emphasis or contrast: *Ego sum aegrōtus, tū valēs, I am sick, you are well*.

3. "*With me, with you,*" etc., are not expressed, as you would expect, by *cum mē, cum tē*, etc., but always by *mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum*. So *quibuscum* (**279**).

4. The oblique cases of personal pronouns of the first and second person are often used with reflexive sense: *Tū tē amās, thou lovest thyself; ego mihi noceō, I do harm to myself*.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS

266. Possessive adjective pronouns are formed from the stems of personal and reflexive pronouns:

<i>meus, -a, -um, my, mine</i>	<i>suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their (own).</i>
(voc. sing. masc. <i>mī</i>).	<i>noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.</i>
<i>tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine;</i>	<i>vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours.</i>
<i>your, yours.</i>	

267.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Pater mē amat et patrem ego amō.* 2. *Tū quoque patrem meum amās.* 3. *Patrem tuum ego quoque amō.* 4. *Puella nimium sē culpāt.* 5. *Fīlium tuum amāmus nōs omnēs.* 6. *Vōs (acc.) agitātis.* 7. *Nōn ut aliī nōs (acc.) vidēmus.* 8. *Brūtus sē suō gladiō perfōdit.* 9. *Nōs sumus miserī, beātī estis vōs.* 10. *Sine tē et tēcum pariter sumus miserī.* 11. *Mēcum eris miserrimus.* 12. *Dē tē erat mea ōrātiō.* 13. *Vōbīscum tristis erō nunquam.* 14. *Mihi mea vīta, tibi tua est cāra.* 15. *Amīcus noster est memor vestrī.*

II. 1. *Thy mother is dear to thee, mine to me.* 2. *All your plans are known to us.* 3. *The boy loves himself too much.* 4. *The burden will be carried by me, by you, by us,*

by thee. 5. With you and without you we shall be equally happy. 6. Thee I love, but not thy dog. 7. O, how I shall miss you, my friend! 8. We¹ are poor, you¹ are rich. 9. Our life is very short. 10. The boy carried a wooden cup with him(self).

268.

VOCABULARY

agitō, 1 [agō, put in motion], disturb, vex, chase.

beātus, -a, -um, adj., happy.

culpō, 1 [culpa], blame, censure, reproach.

dēsiderō, 1, desire, long for, miss.

ligneus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum, wood], of wood, wooden.

nimum, adv., too, too much.

nōtus, -a, -um, adj., known.

onus, -eris, N., burden.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F. [ōrō], speech, talk, address.

pariter, adv. [pār, equal], equally.

pauper, -eris, adj., poor (167.3).

per-fodiō, 3, -fodi, -fossus, dig through, stab, pierce.

quoque, conj., also, too.

sine, prep. w. abl., without.

ut, adv. and conj., as.

269.

COLLOQUIUM

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA

F. Age, sorōrcula mea, sī tibi placet, ambulābimus.
come little sister walk

S. Quō est tibi in animō, cāre frāter, ambulāre? Nōne
whither

in agrōs?

F. Ita est, in agrōs et in umbrā silvārum.
yes shade

S. Libenter tēcum ambulō, tamen . . .
gladly but

F. Quid? cūr tantum dubitās, sī, ut dīcis, mēcum ambu-
so much hesitate

lās libenter?

S. Nōlī mē rīdēre. Metuō anguēs. "*Frīgīdus latet*
don't laugh at snakes cold lurks
anguis in herbā," ut cantat Vergilius.

F. Nōlī metuere. Venī; ubi frāga mātūra sunt repperī.
where strawberries ripe are have found

S. Ō quam suāve! In mē nōn jam est mora.
delightful now delay

¹ Why should the pronouns be expressed in Latin?

CHAPTER XL

DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS

270.

PARADIGMS: *Is, idem, ipse**Is, that, this; also, he, she, it.*

SINGULAR				PLURAL	
N. <i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
G. <i>ējus</i>	<i>ējus</i>	<i>ējus</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
D. <i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
Ac. <i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
Ab. <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

Īdem, same.

SINGULAR				PLURAL	
N. <i>īdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	{ <i>eīdem</i> <i>iīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
G. <i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
D. <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	{ <i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>
Ac. <i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
Ab. <i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	{ <i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>

Ipse, self (himself, etc.).

SINGULAR				PLURAL	
N. <i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
G. <i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
D. <i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
Ac. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
Ab. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

1. Determinative pronouns, like adjectives, agree with nouns expressed or understood; *īdem* and *ipse* also with pronouns.

2. *Is* is very often used as a personal pronoun, meaning *he, she, it, they*. Also as the antecedent of *quī, who; is quī, he who*.

3. *Īdem* is compounded of *is* and the suffix *dem*. *Īdem* is for *isdem*; *idem* for *iddem*; *eundem*, etc., for *eumdem*, etc.; *eōrundem*, etc., for *eōrumdem*, etc.

4. *Ipse, self* (intensive), is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood, and must be distinguished from *sē, self* (reflexive):

- (1) *Homo ipse veniet, the man himself (and not another) will come.*
- (2) *Hominem ipsum vīdī, I saw the man himself.*
- (3) *Homo sē culpat nimium, the man blames himself too much.*
- (4) *Miles frātre, dein sē ipsum interfēcit, the soldier killed his brother, then himself.*

5. How do we indicate in English in speech, and how in writing, when we use *self* (*himself, etc.*), whether we intend the intensive or the reflexive *self*?

6. *Ipse* may be variously translated: *ipse fēcī, I MYSELF did it, I did it ALONE, I did it OF MY OWN ACCORD.*

271. Decline together is *homo, that man; ea nāvis, that ship; id bellum, that war; idem diēs, the same day; eadem manus, the same hand; idem onus, the same burden; vir ipse, the man himself.*

272.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Cicerō est scriptor elegantissimus; ejus librōs legimus.* 2. *Fīdum amīcum habeo; eum ego magis quam tū amās.* 3. *Eum magis quam tē amō.* 4. *Nōn semper eundem hominem laudāmus.* 5. *Magister ipse tē laudābit.* 6. *Sunt sex partēs orbis terrārum; māxima eārum est Asia.* 7. *Fortūna nunc mihi,¹ nunc ei¹ favet.* 8. *Interdum amīcīs¹ ipsīs, interdum inimīcīs¹ nocet.* 9. *Semper idem erat Sōcratis vultus.* 10. *In eōdem specū habitābant Androclus et leō.*

II. 1. Sallust is an elegant author; have you read his writings? 2. I have not read those, but Cicero's. 3. Fortune favored now you,² now them.² 4. Even (*ipse*) your own friend will blame you. 5. The minds of men are not always the same. 6. We were sailing³ with you in the same ship. 7. He gave me the book of his own accord.⁴ 8. The

¹ Indirect object, though translated as a direct object. See 343.

² Dative. Cf. I. 7.

³ Use passive of *vehō*.

⁴ See 270. 6.

master offers the same rewards to the boys. 9. The same rewards are offered by the master himself.

273.

VOCABULARY

Androclus, -ī, M., *Androclus*.
auctor, -ōris, M. [*augeō*, *increase*],
maker, author.
ēlegāns, -ntis, adj., *choice, elegant*.
faveō, 2, *fāvī*, *fautum*, *be favorable to, befriend* (with dat.).
interdum, adv., *sometimes*.
mēns, *mentis*, F., *mind, purpose*.
noceō, 2, *nocuī*, *nocitum*, *do harm to, hurt, injure* (with dat.).
orbis, -is, M., *circle*.
orbis terrarum, *the earth, the world*.

Sallustius, -ī, M., *Sallust, a historian* (79).
scriptor, -ōris, M. [*scribō*], *writer, author*.
scriptum, -ī, N. [*scribō*], *writing, written work*.
sex, num. adj., indecl., *six*.
specus, -ūs, M., *cave*.
suāviter, adv. [*suāvis*], *sweetly, delightfully*.
vultus, -ūs, M., *countenance, features, looks*.

animus (161), *mind, soul, heart*; the general word for *mind*.
mēns, *mind*, as that which thinks, *intellect*; more limited in meaning.

COLLOQUIUM

274. *Translate into Latin*:—

BROTHER AND LITTLE SISTER — *Continued*

B. Let us carry ¹ with us two ² little-baskets.³

S. See! ⁴ I have them in my hand already.⁵

B. The sun is hot,⁶ but there is a cool ⁷ breeze.

S. Oh, how the trees and flowers delight me!

B. To stay in the house is downright ⁸ stupid.⁹

S. Yes, indeed,¹⁰ and I don't mean to any more.¹¹

B. Here are ¹² the strawberries. Now we will fill our baskets. Isn't it jolly? ¹³

¹ *Let us carry*, *portēmus*.

² *Duās*. See 311. 4.

³ *Corbula*, -ae.

⁴ *Ecce!*

⁵ *Jam*.

⁶ *Ārdēns*.

⁷ *Frīgidus*.

⁸ *Admodum*.

⁹ *Molestus*.

¹⁰ *Yes, indeed, ista sunt, those things are (true)*.

¹¹ *Neither is it in mind to me more. See 269, l. 2.*

¹² *Here are = ēn! or ecce!*

¹³ *suāvissimum*.

CHAPTER XLI

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

275.

PARADIGMS: *Hīc, iste, ille**Hīc, this (near), this of mine.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
N.	<i>hīc</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
G.	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
D.	<i>huīc</i>	<i>huīc</i>	<i>huīc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
Ac.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
Ab.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

Iste, that, that of yours.

N.	<i>iste</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i>
G.	<i>istīus</i>	<i>istīus</i>	<i>istīus</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>
D.	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>
Ac.	<i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>
Ab.	<i>istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>

Ille, that (yonder).

N.	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
G.	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
D.	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
Ac.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
Ab.	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

1. *Hīc* is used of that which is near the speaker in *place, time, or thought*, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the First Person: *Hīc equus, this horse (near me, or belonging to me).*

2. *Iste* is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Second Person: *Iste equus, that horse (near you, or belonging to you).*

3. *Ille* is used of that which is relatively remote from the speaker, or person addressed, in *place, time, or thought*, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Third Person: *Ille equus, that horse (yonder).*

4. *Ille* often means *that well-known, that famous.*

5. *Hic* and *ille* are sometimes used in contrast: *Hic*, *the latter*; *ille*, *the former*.

6. *Is*, as a determinative pronoun, sometimes approaches *hic* in meaning, sometimes *ille*. Hence it is to be translated *this* or *that*, according to the connection.

276.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Illius hominis filium laudabant omnes*. 2. *Iste canis semper latrat*. 3. *Hujus scholae semper memores erimus*. 4. *Dabo tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum*. 5. *Illi lapides duri sunt*. 6. *Multi viri divites in hac urbe habitant*. 7. *Varii sunt colores hujus floris*. 8. *Nomen illius poetae est clarissimum*. 9. *Horum avium cantus nos delectat*. 10. *Ista tua studia amo et laudo*. 11. *Has terras silvis pulcherrimis ornavit Deus*. 12. *Illud ducis consilium nobis utile fuit*.

II. 1. These mountains are very¹ high. 2. I shall always be mindful of that friend of yours.² 3. This thing will be hurtful to you. 4. Demosthenes and Cicero were famous³ orators; the former⁴ was a Greek, the latter⁴ a Roman. 5. The citizens of yonder city are most wretched. 6. The air in these mountains is lighter than in those valleys. 7. He gave me this pretty bird. 8. That old farmer's wine is good. 9. I have read that book of yours. 10. That book of yours has been read by me, by you, by us, by us ourselves.

277.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Hannibal, clarissimus ille imperator, Alpes montes superavit*. 2. *Militum animos hac oratione firmavit*. 3. *Videtis, milites fortissimi, Italiam illam*. 4. *Illud est domicilium hostium nostrorum*. 5. *Galli, incolae harum regionum, socii amicique nostri erunt*. 6. *Hi nobis omnes res necessarias praebebunt*. 7. *Hi erunt hostes illorum*

¹ See page 91, note.

² *That of yours* = *iste*.

³ Superlative.

⁴ See 275. 5.

Rōmānōrum improbōrum. 8. Rōma illa praeda vestra erit. 9. Vōs ipsī expūgnāvistis Saguntum, oppidum illud firmis-simum. 10. Hās Alpēs, illōs Pȳrēnaeōs montēs superā-vistis; Rōmānōs mox vincētis.

II. 1. Hannibal increased the courage of the soldiers by these words. 2. Again, soldiers, have you defeated those famous Romans. 3. The gods and your own courage have given us the victory. 4. This fair Italy will soon be ours. 5. Rome itself, that proud city, will be taken. 6. Those arms of yours will be stained with the best blood of Rome. 7. Those famous legions have been defeated. 8. Cross with me yonder mountains. 9. Those fierce enemies of the Romans, the Samnites, will welcome us. 10. Rome shall be the reward of valor. Forward! ¹

278.

VOCABULARY

āēr, āeris, M., *air*.

cantus, -ūs, M., *singing, song*.

dēlectō, 1, *delight*.

Dēmōsthenēs, -is, M., *Demosthe-
nes, an Athenian orator*.

dīvēs, -itis, adj., *rich* (167. 3).

dō, dare, dēdī, datum, *give*.

ex-pūgnō, 1, *take by storm, take*.

fīrmō, 1 [fīrmus], *make firm or
steadfast, fortify, strengthen*.

fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, firm*.

improbus, -a, -um, adj., *bad*.

iterum, adv., *a second time, again*.

lātrō, 1, *bark, bark at*.

legiō, -ōnis, F., *legion*.

maculō, 1, *stain*.

mox, adv., *soon*. [sary.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *neces-
praeda, -ae, F., booty, spoil*.

Saguntum, -ī, N., *Saguntum, a
town in Spain*.

Samnīs, -ītis, M. & F., *a Samnite*.

sanguis, -inis, M., *blood*.

silva, -ae, F., *wood, forest*.

socius, -ī, M., *ally, associate*.

superbus, -a, -um, adj., *proud*.

tenuis, -e, adj., *thin, light*.

trāscendō, 3, -ī, -sum, *cross*.

cantus, *song, melody*, whether of the voice of man, of birds, or of musical instruments.

carmen, *song*, as *melody*, and also in a wider sense; often with reference to the composition. Hence, *a poem*.²

¹ Prōcēdite.

² It must not be supposed that

distinctions in synonymous words are always observed in usage.

CHAPTER XLII

PRONOUNS : RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE

279. PARADIGMS : **Quī, quis, aliquis**RELATIVE : **Quī, who, which, that.**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INTERROGATIVE : **Quis, who? which? what?**

N.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INDEFINITE : **Aliquis, some one, some, any one.**

	SINGULAR		
N.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid or -quod
G.	alicūjus	alicūjus	alicūjus
D.	alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid or -quod
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

	PLURAL		
N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

1. Observe the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative plural of **aliquis**, and compare them with corresponding forms of **quis**.

2. *Aliquis* is used adjectively in the neuter form *aliquod*, and sometimes in the masculine and feminine forms. The same is true of *quīdam* and *quisque* (4).

3. Besides the interrogative *quis* and its compounds, there is an interrogative adjective *quī* (*which? what?*) declined like the relative *quī*.

4. Besides *aliquis*, the most important indefinites are :

<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quiddam</i> , or <i>quoddam</i> , <i>certain one, certain.</i>
<i>quisquam</i>	(<i>wanting</i>)	<i>quidquam</i> , <i>any one (at all)</i> , no plural.
<i>quisque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>	<i>quidque</i> , or <i>quodque</i> , <i>each one, every.</i>

5. *Quīdam*, *quisquam*, and *quisque* are declined like the simple pronouns. *Quīdam* changes *m* to *n* before *d*; *quendam*, etc., *quōrundam*, etc.

6. *Aliquis*, *some one, any one* (without emphasis); *quisquam*, *any one at all* (emphatic), also in negative and interrogative sentences. *Quis* after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, is indefinite, *any one*.

7. *Aliquis* means *some man*, I don't know who; *quīdam*, *a certain man*, whom I know, but don't mean to describe.

280. *Examine the following:—*

1. *Puer quī vēnit*, *the boy who came.*
2. *Puella quae vēnit*, *the girl who came.*
3. *Librī quōs legis*, *the books which you read.*
4. *Puellae quās vīdistī*, *the girls whom you saw.*

Compare the relative in each of the above examples with the noun to which it refers (called the *antecedent*) in respect, first to gender, and then to number.

Look now at the case of the relative in each of the examples, and compare the English with the Latin. Plainly, the case of the relative has nothing to do with that of the antecedent. It may be the same or different.

281. RULE OF SYNTAX.¹—A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*.

¹ As the *person* of the antecedent has no effect on the relative, it is wrong, though customary, to

say "the relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person."

282. *Examine the following:—*

1. Ego quī vēnī, *I who came.*
2. Vōs quī vēnistis, *you who came.*

Observe now the person and number of the verb in these two examples, and in the first two given in 280.

283. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The verb of which a relative pronoun is the subject agrees in *person* and *number* with the antecedent of the relative.

284.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis forum Rōmānōrum rōstris ōrnāvit? 2. Gājus Duilius, quī māgnam praedam ā Carthāginiēnsibus reportāvit. 3. Quae amīcitia potest esse¹ inter improbōs? 4. Quis clārior fuit in Graeciā Themistocle?² 5. Quem timēs in meā domō? 6. Quae animālia sunt celerrima et ferōcissima? 7. Omne animal quod sanguinem habet cor habet. 8. Dīvitēs sunt iī quī suis rēbus contentī sunt. 9. Erant quōque³ annō duo cōsulēs in cīvitāte Rōmānā. 10. Sunt animālia quaedam in quibus est aliquid simile ratiōnī.

II. 1. What have you in your hand? 2. By whom was the Roman forum adorned with the prows of ships? 3. We see the general whom you praise. 4. He is rich who is contented. 5. He will be praised whose⁴ courage saved our country. 6. We love those whose manners are pleasing. 7. The boy has something in his hand. 8. Certain labors are pleasant to us. 9. We are the same⁵ to-day that⁵ we were yesterday. 10. What things are brought to us from Africa?

¹ Potest esse, *can be.*

² See 212.

³ Ablative of quisque.

⁴ Of whom.

⁵ The same . . . that, or same . . . as, idem . . . quī.

285.

EXERCISES

Before trying to do the following exercises, review the declension of irregular adjectives (200, 201), and write out the declension of *quīdam*, *quisquam*, and *quisque*.

I. 1. Est *quisquam* tibi *cārior* quam *parentēs* tuī? 2. *Proprii* liberī *cārissimī* cuique sunt. 3. Erant duo filiī *Rhēae* *Silviae*, quōrum alterī erat nōmen *Rōmulus*, alterī *Rēmus*; uterque fortis erat. 4. Estne in ullō animālī māior prūdētia quam in cane? 5. Vidēsne illa duo sīdera? Utrius lūx clārior est? 6. Virtūs eōrum quī patriam nostram servāvērunt semper laudābitur. 7. In istīs arboribus quae hortum ōrnant avēs variae cantant. 8. Rīsus aliōrum saepe causa irae nostrae est. 9. Nūllum malum sine aliquō bonō est. 10. Nēmō nostrum idem est in senectūte quī¹ fuit in juventūte. 11. Urbēs illae, quārum glōria magna est, ā militibus nostrīs expūgnātae sunt.

II. 1. All animals that have blood have hearts. 2. We shall be the same¹ to-morrow as¹ we are to-day. 3. Is any² animal more sagacious than the elephant?³ 4. We have five fingers on each hand. 5. Those have hope who have nothing else.⁴ 6. Many men build houses which they will never inhabit. 7. The moon sends upon the earth the light which she has received from the sun. 8. *Cornelia* had two sons, both of whom⁵ were killed. 9. *Hector*, by whose bravery many Greeks were slain, was himself killed. 10. Will not some friend relieve me of this burden?⁶

286.

VOCABULARY

<i>accipiō</i> , 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [ad-	<i>Carthāginiēnsis</i> , -e, adj. [Carthā-
capiō], take to, receive, accept.	gō], of Carthage, Carthaginian.
<i>bonum</i> , -ī, N., good thing, blessing.	<i>clārus</i> , -a, -um, bright, famous.

¹ See page 128, note 5.

³ See 211, 212.

⁵ Of whom each.

² See I. 4.

⁴ Aliud.

⁶ See 128, 129.

contentus, -a, -um, adj., *contented*.

cor, cordis, N., *heart*.

crās, adv., *to-morrow*.

digitus, -ī, M., *finger*.

duo, -ae, -o; num. adj., *two* (311. 4).

ex-pūgnō, 1 [pūgna], *take, capture*.

forum, -ī, N., *market-place, forum*.

Gājus Duilius, -ī, M., *Caius Duilius*.

Hector, -oris, M., *Hector, chief of the Trojan heroes*.

herī, adv., *yesterday*.

hodiē, adv., *to-day*.

labor, -ōris, M., *labor*.

malum, -ī, N., *bad thing, evil*.

nēmō, (-inis), M. & F. [nē, homō], *no one*. For genitive and ablative use nūllius, nūllō.

parēns, -entis, M. & F., *parent* (167. 1).

proprius, -a, -um, adj., *one's own*.

prūdētia, -ae, F. [prūdēns], *fore-sight, sagacity, wisdom*.

Remus, -ī, M., *Remus, brother of Romulus*.

re-portō, 1, *bring back*.

Rhēa Silvia, -ae, F., *Rhea Silvia*.

rīsus, -ūs, M. [rīdeō], *laughter*.

Rōmulus, -ī, M., *Romulus, first king of Rome*.

rōstrum, -ī, N., *prow of a vessel*.

sīdus, -eris, N., *star, constellation*.

Themistoclēs, -is, M., *Themistocles, a famous Greek*.

varius, -a, -um, adj., *different, changeable, various*.

CHAPTER XLIII

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS

Review the paradigms.

287.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Īdem es quī¹ semper fuistī. 2. Hodiē eadem dic-
titat quae¹ herī. 3. Ecce domum quam aedificāvit Jōhan-
niculus. 4. Quīdam puer cachinnābat. 5. Iste homō, quī
tē laudābat, est stultissimus. 6. Sua cuique² cārissima
sunt. 7. Suī cuique² cārissimī sunt. 8. Cōram mē aliquis
illam fābulam nārrābat. 9. Egēns est et is quī nōn satis
habet, et is cui nihil satis est. 10. Beātus est quī³ nōn
cupit quae³ nōn habet.

¹ See page 128, note 5.

² Notice the order; quisque
likes to stand after the reflexives.

³ The antecedent of the rela-
tive is often omitted when it is
some form of is.

II. 1. She is the same that¹ she always has been. 2. He will say the same things to-morrow as¹ to-day. 3. Certain boys laughed out loud in school. 4. That friend of yours is a very wise man. 5. Those trees yonder are covered with leaves. 6. This man is praised by the citizens, that one is blamed. 7. The general himself led his brave soldiers. 8. The soldiers were led by the brave general himself. 9. Danger itself is pleasing to the brave.² 10. Those who are most faithful to their friends are most dear to us.

288.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Quod³ nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit. 2. Līber est quī³ nullī turpitūdīnī servit. 3. Quis est amīcior frātrī quam frāter? 4. Saepe nihil est inimīcius hominī quam ipse sibi. 5. Saepe īī nōbīs nocent⁴ quī nōs amant. 6. Eōs quī aliōrum rēbus adversīs nōn moventur omnēs contemnunt. 7. Eōs vincere difficile est quī nihil timent. 8. Dēforme est dē sē ipsō praedicāre. 9. Aliud⁵ bonum, aliud⁵ malum est. 10. Alterī⁶ laudem, alterī⁶ culpam dabat.

II. 1. Some one has done this. 2. Yesterday a story was read to us by some one. 3. The slave killed himself together with his master. 4. My friend will migrate with me into Gaul. 5. The inhabitants of the city were frightened by the coming of the enemy. 6. Some⁷ bear⁸ thirst easily, others⁷ hunger. 7. The fruits of this tree are pleasing to me, for they are sweet. 8. Those⁹ trees are higher than these⁹ houses. 9. These towers are high, those are low. 10. Those¹⁰ maidens whose modesty is known are praised by all.

¹ See page 128, note 5.

² Plural. See 117.

³ See page 130, note 3.

⁴ See 343.

⁵ See page 87, note 4.

⁶ See page 87, note 3.

⁷ See page 87, note 4.

⁸ See page 87, note 5.

⁹ See 275. 1 and 3.

¹⁰ A form of is.

289.

VOCABULARY

ad-versus, -a, -um, adj., *unfavorable*.

cachinnō, 1, *laugh aloud*. Cf. rīdeō.

cōram, prep. w. abl., *in presence of*.

cupiō, 3, -ivī, -itum, *desire*.

dē-formis, -e, adj. [forma], *misshapen, ugly, base, disgraceful*.

dictitō, 1 [dicō], *keep saying*.

ecce, interj., *lo! see! see there!*

egēns, -entis, adj., *in want, needy*.

ē-ripiō, 3, -ui, ēreptum [rapiō], *snatch away; seize and bear off*.

famēs, -is, F., *hunger, famine*.

frondōsus, -a, -um, adj. [frōns], *covered with leaves, leafy*.

fructus, -ūs, M., *fruit*.

Jōhanniculus, -ī, M., *little John, Johnny, Jack*.

migrō, 1, *move from one place to another, migrate*.

modestia, -ae, F., *modesty*.

nārrō, 1, *tell, relate, report*.

prae-dicō, 1 [prae, before; dicō, -āre, make known], *proclaim, boast*. Cf. praedicō, *predict*.

satis, adv., *enough*.

serviō, 4 [servus], *be a slave to, serve* (w. dat.).

sitis, -is, F., *thirst* (154).

tolerō, 1, *bear, endure*.

turpitūdō, -inis, F. [turpis], *ugliness, baseness*.

290.

COLLOQUIUM

SŌCRATĒS ET RHADAMANTHUS

R. Tū, nisi fallor, es Sōcratēs, ille Athēniēnsis.
unless I am mistaken

S. Rēctē dicis. Ego sum Sōcratēs, filius, ut ferunt,
as say
Sōphroniscī.

R. Cūr dicis ut ferunt? Nōnne rē vērā es filius illius?
in truth

S. Ipse quidem nesciō, Ō Rhadamanthe, cūjus sim filius.
indeed not know

R. Num¹ mē lūdis, Sōcratēs? Cavetō. Nōnne tē sapi-
mock beware

entem dīxit ōrāculum?

oracle

S. Ita est; sed quā rē nōn intellegō, nisi quia mē ipse
yes why understand

Inscium perspicīō.

ignorant see plainly

¹ This word is used in asking questions when the answer *no* is expected. It is not to be translated.

tamen frētus numerō cōpiārum suārum cōnfligere cupiēbat, eōquē¹ magis, quod priusquam Lacedaemoniī subsidio² venirent³ dīnicāre ūtile arbitrābātur. Itaque in aciem peditum centum,⁴ equitum decem mīlia prōdūxit proeliumque commisit. In quō tantō⁵ plūs virtūte⁶ valuērunt Athēniēnsēs ut decemplicem numerum hostium prōfligārint,⁷ adeōque eōs perterrūerunt ut Persae nōn castra, sed nāvēs petierint.⁸ Quā pūgnā⁹ nihil adhūc exstitit nōbilius: nūlla enim unquam tam exigua manus tantās opēs prōstrāvit.¹⁰ — *Nepos, Milt. v.*

CHAPTER XLIV

COMPOUNDS OF *Sum*

292. Possum, posse, potuī, —, *be able, can.*

Possum is compounded of *potis*, *able*, and *sum*. *Potis* is everywhere shortened to *pot*; then *t* is changed to *s* before *s*, and *f* is dropped after *t*.

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres. <i>I am able, can, etc.</i>				
	possum	possumus	possim	possimus
	potes	potestis	possis	possitis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
Impf. <i>I was able, could, etc.</i>				
	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
Fut. <i>I shall be able, etc.</i>				
	poterō	poterimus		

¹ Eōque magis, *and the more.*

² Subsidio: cf. auxiliō, first line, and note.

³ Venirent, *should come.*

⁴ Centum: supply mīlia.

⁵ Tantō plūs valuērunt, *were so much superior.*

⁶ Virtūte. See 259, 260.

⁷ Prōfligārint, *they routed.*

⁸ Petierint, *fled to.* See page 101, note 1.

⁹ Pūgnā: ablative after the comparative nōbilius (212).

¹⁰ From prōsternō.

PERF. *I have been able, could, etc.*

potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerīmus
-------	----------	----------	------------

PLUP. *I had been able, could have, etc.*

potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
----------	------------	-----------	-------------

FUT. PERF. *I shall have been able, etc.*

potuerō	potuerīmus
---------	------------

INFINITIVE

PRES. *posse, to be able.*

PERF. *potuisse, to have been able.*

293. Prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *benefit.*

Prōsum is compounded of prōd (old form of prō), *for*, and sum. The *d* of prōd is retained before *e*.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRES. *I benefit, etc.*

prō-sum	prō-sumus
---------	-----------

prōd-es	prōd-estis
---------	------------

prōd-est	prō-sunt
----------	----------

prō-sim	prō-sīmus
---------	-----------

prō-sīs	prō-sītis
---------	-----------

prō-sit	prō-sint
---------	----------

IMPF. prōd-eram prōd-erāmus

prōd-essem prōd-essēmus

FUT. prōd-erō prōd-erimus

PERF. prō-fuī prō-fuimus

prō-fuerim prō-fuerimus

PLUP. prō-fueram prō-fuerāmus

prō-fuissem prō-fuissēmus

F. P. prō-fuerō prō-fuerīmus

IMPERATIVE

PRES. prōd-es, prōd-este

FUT. prōd-estō, prōd-estōte

INFINITIVE

PRES. prōd-esse

PERF. prō-fuisse

FUT. prō-futūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

FUT. prō-futūrus

The other compounds of sum are inflected like the simple verb.

294. Learn the tenses of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive of *possum* and *prōsum*.

295. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The compounds of *sum*, except *possum* and *absum*, all take the dative; but *īnsum* is often followed by *in* with the ablative, and *intersum* by *inter* with the accusative.

296.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In *vērā amīcitiā māgnūm inest praesidium*. 2. *Amīcus vērū adest amīcō, neque deerit in periculō*. 3. *Amīcō prōdesse dulce est, amīcō deesse turpe*. 4. *Amīcus fidus nōn aberit ab amīcō in cāsibus fortunae*. 5. *Mōrēs malī amīcitiae obsunt; inter hominēs malōs vērā amīcitiā nōn interest*. 6. *Cicerō cōsul rei pūblīcae praefuit*. 7. *Multae epistolae Cicerōnis et ejus amīcōrum supersunt*. 8. *Virī praestantēs Athēniēnsibus nullō tempore defuerunt*. 9. *Mōrēs tyrannī sibi¹ amīcōs parāre nōn poterant*. 10. *Nōn omnēs hominēs rēgēs esse possunt*.

II. 1. Cornelia was able to train her sons wisely. 2. All can be good citizens.² 3. Hannibal was not able to take the city. 4. In Hannibal there was great cunning and bravery. 5. Hannibal was long absent from his own country. 6. He commanded armies in Spain and Italy. 7. He was present at many battles, and was the terror³ of the Romans. 8. He benefited his country in many ways.⁴ 9. But his enemies in his own land injured him. 10. Scipio defeated him in battle⁵ in Africa. 11. He survived this defeat many years.⁶ 12. His name will never lack renown.⁷

¹ For him. ² See 47.

³ Ablative without in.

⁴ Compare *auxiliō*, 291, first line, and note.

⁶ Accusative.

⁷ Renown will never be wanting to his name.

⁵ Ways = things. See 259, 260.

297.

VOCABULARY

- ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, *be away, absent* (ā or ab w. abl.).
 ad-sum, -esse, -fuī (also affuī), *be present, stand by, side with*.
 dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be wanting, lack*.
 in-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be in, among*.
 inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be present at, among*.
 ob-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be against, opposed to, injure*.
 possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can*.
 prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be before, at the head of, command*.
 prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fuī, *be useful, benefit*.
 super-sum, -esse, -fuī, *remain over, survive, exist*.
 calliditās, -ātis, F. [callidus], *shrewdness, cunning*.
 cāsus, -ūs, M. [cadō, fall], *falling down, mischance, misfortune*.
 clādēs, -is, F., *destruction, defeat*.
 diū, adv., *long, a long time*.
 dulcis, -e, adj., *sweet, pleasant*. Cf. suāvis.
 fāma, -ae, F., *rumor, fame, renown*.
 ne-que, conj., *and not, nor*; neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*.
 parō, 1, *make ready, prepare, get*.
 patria, -ae, F., *native land, country*.
 praesidium, -ī, N. [prae, sedeō], *defence, help, garrison*.
 praestāns, -tis, adj. [prae-stō, stand before], *preëminent, distinguished*.

CHAPTER XLV

DEPONENT VERBS

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

298. Deponent verbs have the forms of the passive voice with the meaning of the active. There are deponents of each of the four regular conjugations:

Admīrāmur opera Deī, *we admire the works of God*.

Miserōs tuēbimur, *we shall protect the wretched*.

Audī multa, loquere pauca, *listen much, say little*.

Caesar prōvinciam sortītus est, *Cæsar obtained (by lot) a province*.

299. Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of *amō* and *moneō* (86, 112).

The principal parts of deponent verbs are thus given:

admīror, admīrārī, admīrātus (sum).

tueor, tuērī, tuitus and tūtus (sum).

loquor, loquī, locūtus (sum).

sortior, sortirī, sortītus (sum).

300.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Admīrāmur māgnitūdinem caelī. Quis nōn admīrābitur?* 2. *Nocte contemplāmur sīdera.* 3. *Pars vagātur certīs cursibus, plūrima nōn vagantur.* 4. *Sōl dominātur inter stellās.* 5. *Terram lūna comitātur ūna, Jovis stellam lūnae comitantur quattuor.* 6. *Dārēus Alexandrō māgnam Asiae partem pollicitus est.* 7. *Improbī sunt īī quī nēmīnem verentur.* 8. *Homō facinus cōfessus est.* 9. *Comitēs quī salūtem rēgis tuitī erant māximum praemium accēpērunt.*

II. 1. Who does not admire the beauty of the stars? 2. Other nations accompanied the Cimbri across the Rhine. 3. They wandered far¹ and wide¹ through Gaul and Spain. 4. The Romans wondered at the great bodies of the Germans. 5. Certain animals imitate human voices. 6. We were contemplating that beautiful likeness. 7. The general promised the soldiers² a great reward. 8. He³ is a bad man who does not respect any one.⁴ 9. Children respect their parents, slaves fear their master.

301.

VOCABULARY

ad-mīror, 1, *wonder at, admire.*

Alexander, -drī, M., *Alexander*, king of Macedon.

beneficium, -ī, N., *benefit, favor.*

caelum, -ī, N., *sky, heavens.*

Cimbri, -ōrum, M., *Cimbri*, a German tribe.

comitor, 1 [*comes, -itis*], *accompany, attend.*

cōn-fiteor, 2, *-fessus, confess.*

¹ *Longē lātēque.*

² Not accusative.

³ *Is.*

⁴ *Not any one = no one.*

P. Certē, filiōle, idque vehementer.

F. Num ego, sī diligenter didicerō, ēruditus, ut tū, fiam ?
right hard

P. Procul dubiō. At jam tibi eundem est dormitum.
learn learned as become
you must go to bed

CHAPTER XLVI

DEPONENT VERBS

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

303. *Examine the following : —*

1. Ūtor vestrā benīgnitāte, *I avail myself of (use) your kindness.*
2. Abūtitur patientiā nostrā, *he abuses our patience.*
3. Lūx quā fruimur ā Deō nōbis datur, *the light which we enjoy is given us by God.*
4. Fungor vice cōtis, *I serve as (discharge the office of) a whetstone.*
5. Māgnā praedā potītus est, *he got great booty.*
6. Lacte et carne vescēbantur, *they lived upon milk and flesh.*

Compare the translation of the examples with the Latin. Observe that the direct object of the verb, or of the preposition closely connected with the verb in English, is represented in Latin by the ablative case.

304. **RULE OF SYNTAX.** — The deponents *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds, take the ablative.

305. *Examine the following : —*

1. Meminit praeteritōrum, *he remembers the past.*
2. Haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit, *to remember these things will one day give pleasure.*

3. Tōtam causam oblītus est, *he forgot the whole case.*

4. Tōtius causae oblītus est, *he forgot the whole case.*

Observe that in the above examples the genitive is used in 1 and 4, the accusative in 2 and 3.

306. RULE OF SYNTAX. — Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* take the genitive or accusative.

1. Neuter pronouns and adjectives are commonly put in the accusative. Recordor regularly takes the accusative.

307. Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of regō and audiō (180, 223).

308.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sūlla urbem Rōmam armātus¹ ingressus est. 2. Athēniēnsium dux māximam adeptus est glōriam. 3. Alexander Māgnus in Asiam profectus est. 4. Eum multī et nōbilēs virī secūtī sunt. 5. Quās injūriās passus es oblīvīscere.² 6. Beneficia quae accēpimus nōn oblīvīscēmur. 7. Quod beneficium accēpit id oblīvīscitur. 8. Omnia patī³ discimus. 9. Cicerō māgnā cum glōriā cōsulātū fūctus est. 10. Lūx quā fruimur dōnum est Deī.

II. 1. Alexander and his companions entered Asia. 2. They suffered both⁴ hunger and thirst. 3. He obtained great glory by his victories. 4. He did not forget the words of his master. 5. For he had been the pupil of a wise man. 6. The soldiers follow their general. 7. They⁵ are bad men who forget benefits. 8. We can learn to endure all things. 9. Who does not enjoy the light which is given us by God? 10. The boys faithfully discharged their duty.

309.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar, Pompējus, Crassus, imperium inter sē partīti sunt. 2. Caesar Galliam prōvinciam sortītus est.

¹ Armed.

² Imperative.

³ Present infinitive of patior.

⁴ Et.

⁵ II. See 270. 2.

3. Saepissimē bellī fortūnam expertus est. 4. Posteā tōtā Ītaliā potītus est. 5. Patrēs bona sua cum liberīs partiuntur. 6. Multa in Ītaliā bella orta sunt. 7. Frōns, oculī, vultus, saepe mentiuntur. 8. Quī post mortem Alexandrī rēgnō illius potītī sunt? 9. Optimē scīmus quod expertī sumus.

II. 1. Soldiers often try the fortune of war. 2. The leaders had divided among themselves the property ¹ of the enemy. 3. The Rhone rises not far from the sources of the Rhine. 4. The Rhine, which rises in the Alps, flows into the ocean. 5. The best friends share perils with friends. 6. Who possessed the kingdom after Alexander? 7. We will make trial of our valor. 8. They got possession of the camp of the enemy. 9. Who gets by lot Sicily (as) his province? ²

310.

VOCABULARY

adipīscor, 3, adeptus, *get, obtain.*

Cf. potior.

castra, -ōrum, N. (plur.), *camp.*

Crassus, -ī, M., *Crassus, a rich Roman, contemporary of Cæsar.*

ex-perior, 4, expertus, *make trial of, test.*

frōns, frontis, F., *brow, forehead.*

fruor, 3, fruitus (frūctus), *enjoy.*

fungor, 3, fūctus, *perform, discharge.*

imperium, -ī, N. [imperō], *command, authority, power.*

in-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior], *enter.*

mentior, 4, *lie, deceive.*

oblivīscor, 3, oblītus, *forget.*

ōceanus, -ī, M., *ocean.*

officium, -ī, N., *duty.*

optimē, adv., *most excellently, best.*

orior,³ 4, ortus, *rise, appear, begin.*

partior, 4 [pars], *divide, share.*

patior, 3, passus, *bear, suffer.*

Pompējus, -ēī, M., *Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.*

posteā, adv., *afterwards.*

potior, 4, *become master of, get.*

Cf. adipīscor.

proficīscor, 3, -fectus, *set out, march.*

prōvincia, -ae, F., *province.*

rēgnum, -ī, N., *kingdom.*

sequor, 3, secūtus, *follow.*

sortior, 4, *draw lots, obtain by lot.*

Sūlla, -ae, M., *Sulla, a Roman general and statesman.*

¹ Compare I. 5. ² Predicate accusative. ³ See vocab. page 248.

CHAPTER XLVII

311.

NUMERALS

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus, <i>or</i> alter
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quartus
5. quīnque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decmius
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim, <i>or</i> sexdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvīgintī ¹	duodēvīcēsīmus
19. ūndēvīgintī ¹	ūndēvīcēsīmus
20. vīgintī	vīcēsīmus
21. { vīgintī ūnus, <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus prīmus, <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcēsīmus
22. { vīgintī duo, <i>or</i> duo et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus secundus, <i>or</i> alter et vīcēsīmus
28. duodētrīgintā ¹	duodētrīcēsīmus
29. ūndētrīgintā ¹	ūndētrīcēsīmus
30. trīgintā	trīcēsīmus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus

¹ Duodēvīgintī = *two from twenty*; ūndēvīgintī = *ūnus dē vīgintī, one from twenty*. Similarly are formed 28, 29, 38, 39, etc.

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100.	centum	centēsīmus
101.	{ centum ūnus, or centum et ūnus	{ centēsīmus prīmus, or centēsīmus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus
300.	trecentī	trecentēsīmus
400.	quadrīgentī	quadrīgentēsīmus
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus
600.	sēscentī	sēscentēsīmus
700.	septīgentī	septīgentēsīmus
800.	octīgentī	octīgentēsīmus
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus
1,000.	mīlle	mīllēsīmus
2,000.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsīmus
100,000.	centum mīlia	centiēs mīllēsīmus

1. Cardinal numbers answer the question *how many?* ordinals, *which in order?*

2. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum**, inclusive, are indeclinable: **quattuor hominēs**, *four men*; **quattuor hominum**, *of four men*.

3. **Ūnus** is declined like **bonus**, except that it has genitive and dative singular **ūnīus**, **ūnī**, like **alius** (201).

4. **Duo** and **trēs** are thus declined:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

5. The hundreds, **ducentī**, etc., are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

6. **Mīlle** is indeclinable in the singular, and is sometimes an adjective and sometimes a noun: **mīlle hominēs**, *a thousand men*; **mīlle hominum**, *a thousand (of) men*. The plural has the forms **mīlia**, **mīlium**, **mīlibus**, and is always a noun: **tria mīlia hominum**, *three thousand men (three thousands of men)*.

7. The ordinals are declined like **bonus**.

8. Other kinds of numerals are the distributives: **singulī, -ae, -a**, *one each*, **bīnī, -ae, -a**, *two each*, etc.; and the numeral adverbs: **semel, once, bis, twice**, etc.

312. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Decem annōs Trōja oppugnābātur**, *Troy was besieged for ten years.*

2. **Turris alta est centum pedēs**, *the tower is a hundred feet high.*

The accusative **annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time*; **pedēs**, extent of *space*. The accusative, then, is used to answer the question *how long?* or *how far?* (in *time* or *space*), and may be called the **ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT**.

313. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Extent of *time* or *space* is expressed by the accusative.

314.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Homō ūlum ōs, duās aurēs, duōs oculōs habet.** 2. **Alexander Māgnus tredecim annōs rēgnāvit.** 3. **Templum Diānae quadringentōs quinquāgintā pedēs longum et ducentōs vīginti pedēs lātum erat.** 4. **Annus spatium trecentōrum sexāgintā quīnque diērum est.** 5. **Duodecim sunt mēnsēs.** 6. **Mēnsis trīgintā diēs habet, Februārius duodētrīgintā.** 7. **Diēs vīginti quattuor hōrās habet.** 8. **Rōmānōrum veterum annus decem mēnsēs habēbat; Mārtius erat primus, December decimus.** 9. **Aut tertius decimus aut quīntus decimus diēs mēnsis Iūdus nōminābātur.**

II. 1. Romulus, the first king of Rome, reigned thirty-seven years. 2. This house is fifty-nine¹ feet long and forty-eight feet wide. 3. The river is fourteen feet deep and ninety-two feet wide. 4. With² the ancient Romans September was the seventh month; with us September is the ninth month. 5. The Roman consuls held power for one year.

¹ See page 143, note.

² **Apud**, with accusative.

6. In the five hundred and fiftieth year of the city Scipio was consul. 7. Five and twenty languages were known to King Mithridates. 8. In the first month of the year there are thirty-one days. 9. A Roman legion had five thousand foot-soldiers and three hundred horse-soldiers.

315.

VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, M., *year*.

auris, -is, F., *ear*.

December, -bris, M. [decem],
December. Often as adj.

Diāna, -ae, F., *Diana*, goddess of
the chase. [as adj.]

Februārius, -ī, M., *February*. Oft.

Īdūs, -uum, F. (plur.), *the Ides of*
the month (244. 1).

lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language*.

Mārtius, -ī, M. [Mārs], *March*.

Often as adj.

Mithridātēs, -is, M., *Mithridates*,
king of Pontus.

ōs, ōris, N., *mouth, face*.

September, -bris, M. [septem],
September. Often as adj.

spatium, -ī, N., *room, space, period*.

CHAPTER XLVIII

316.

IRREGULAR VERBS

Volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*.

Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*.

Mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*.

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nōlam	mālam
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	(Wanting)	nōlī	(Wanting)
		nōlīte	
FUT.	(Wanting)	[nōlītō, etc.]	(Wanting)

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	(Wanting)
-------	--------	--------	-----------

317. Learn the tenses of the indicative and infinitive of volō, nōlō, and mālō, and the present imperative of nōlō.

318.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Nōs scrībere volumus, tū vīs legere, ille puer lūdere vult. 2. Cūr in hortō ambulāre volunt? 3. In hortō ambulāre mālunt quod ibi sunt fontēs et arborēs. 4. Volēbantne vitia sua excūsāre? 5. Nōlī excūsāre vitia tua. 6. Nōlīte

oblīvīscī praeceptōrum¹ parentum. 7. Tīmoleōn māluit dīligī quam metuī. 8. Valēre māluerat quam dīves esse. 9. Aliēna quisque vitia reprehendere māvult quam sua corrigere. 10. Volumus ad finem itineris prōgredi.

II. 1. Why would you rather read than write? 2. We would rather walk in the fields with you. 3. Who would not rather be praised than blamed? 4. They will be unwilling to accept your gift. 5. Do not forget,² boys, the precepts of your teacher. 6. Do not forget, my boy, the lesson which I have explained. 7. He listened because he wished to learn. 8. He would not³ blame another's fault; he greatly desired to correct his own. 9. We wish the same (things) as⁴ you. 10. Our friends will wish the same (thing) as ourselves.

319.

VOCABULARY

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alius],
belonging to another, another's.

ambulō, 1, walk, take a walk.

corrigō, 3, -rēxī, -rēctum [com,
regō, keep straight], make
straight, reform, correct.

dīligō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctum [dis,
apart, legō, choose], esteem,
love. Cf. amō.

ex-cūsō, 1 [causa], excuse.

ex-plicō, 1, -avī, -ātum (-uī,
-itum) [plicō], unfold, explain.

ibi, adv., there. Cf. ubi, where.

iter, itineris, N. [eō, 327. 1],
journey (262).

lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum, play.

mālō, mālī, mālūī, — [magis,
volō], wish rather, prefer, would
rather.

māximē, adv. (sup. of magis,
more), most, especially, greatly.
metuō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [metus],
fear. Cf. timeō.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — [nōn, volō],
be unwilling, will not, not wish.

praeceptum, -ī, N. [praecipiō],
maxim, precept.

prō-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior],
go forward, advance.

quod, conj., because. Cf. quia.
re-prehendō, 3, -hendī, -hēnsūm,
hold back, restrain, reprove.

Tīmoleōn, -ontis, M., Timoleon,
a Corinthian.

valeō, 2, -uī, -itum, be strong or well.

vitium, -ī, N., fault, blemish, vice.

volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing,
will, wish, desire. Cf. dēsiderō.

¹ From praeceptum.

² Compare I. 6.

³ Was unwilling.

⁴ See page 128, note 5.

amō, love, not implying and not excluding *esteem*; the common word.

diligō, love unselfishly and with esteem; more restricted in meaning than *amō*.

volō means both less and more than *wish*, namely, *consent* and *will*; very much used.

dēsiderō means *wish ardently*, with the notion (which *volō* has not) of *lacking* or *missing* the thing much desired; more restricted in meaning than *volō*.

320.

FOR TRANSLATION

Multi hominēs volunt quidem rectē facere, sed nōn faciunt; nam velle et facere nōn idem est. Saepe homō rectē agere vult, sed virēs dēsunt. Multi peccāta sua excūsāre quam dēpōnere mālunt. Saepe aliēna peccāta vituperāre quam nostra corrigere mālunt. Multi suā sorte nōn sunt contentī, sed aliēna appetere mālunt. At cūr nōn fēliciter vivere māvīs? Fēlix is est quī rectē agere vult rectēque agit.

CHAPTER XLIX

321

THE IRREGULAR VERB *Ferō*

Ferō, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*: *bear*, *carry*, *endure*.

		INDICATIVE	
ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i>
	<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris, or-re</i>
	<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>feruntur</i>
IMPF.	<i>ferēbam</i>		<i>ferēbar</i>
FUT.	<i>feram</i>		<i>ferar</i>
PERF.	<i>tulī</i>		<i>lātus sum</i>
PLUP.	<i>tuleram</i>		<i>lātus eram</i>
F. P.	<i>tulerō</i>		<i>lātus erō</i>
		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	<i>feram</i>		<i>ferar</i>
IMPER.	<i>ferrem</i>		<i>ferrer</i>
PERF.	<i>tulerim</i>		<i>lātus sim</i>
PLUP.	<i>tulisse</i>		<i>lātus essem</i>

IMPERATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE
PRES. <i>fer</i> ¹	<i>ferte</i>	[<i>ferre</i>]	<i>ferimini</i>
FUT. <i>fertō</i>	<i>fertōte</i>	<i>fertor</i>	
	<i>fertō</i>	<i>feruntō</i>	<i>feruntor</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>ferre</i>	<i>ferri</i>
PERF.	<i>tulisse</i>	<i>lātus esse</i>
FUT.	<i>lāturus esse</i>	<i>lātum iri</i>

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	<i>ferēns</i>	PRES. ———
FUT.	<i>lāturus</i>	GER. <i>ferendus</i>
PERF.	————	PERF. <i>lātus</i>

GERUND

G.	<i>ferendī</i>
D.	<i>ferendō</i>
Ac.	<i>ferendum</i>
Ab.	<i>ferendō</i>

SUPINE

Ac. <i>lātum</i>	Ab. <i>lātū</i>
------------------	-----------------

322. Compounds of *ferō* are conjugated like the simple verb. Observe the changes suffered by certain of the prepositions in the following:

ab-	<i>auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum.</i>
ad-	<i>adferō, adferre, attulī, allātum (adl).</i>
com-	<i>cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (conl).</i>
dis-	<i>differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum.</i>
ex-	<i>effērō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum.</i>
in-	<i>īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum (inl).</i>
ob-	<i>offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum.</i>
sub-	<i>sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum.</i>

323. Learn the tenses of the indicative, the imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *ferō*.

¹ For *fere*; *dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō*, have imperative present second singular *dīc, dūc, fac, fer*.

324.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Aufert, aufertur. 2. Auferet, auferētur. 3. Abs-tulit, ablātus est. 4. Cōferre, cōferri. 5. Cōferunt, cōferuntur. 6. Cōferent, cōferentur. 7. Contulerant, collatī erant. 8. Distulērunt, dilātī sunt. 9. Distulerit, dilātus erit. 10. Distulisse, dilātus esse. 11. Differēbant, differēbantur.

II. 1. We bear, we are borne. 2. We were bearing, we were borne. 3. We have borne, we have been borne. 4. We shall bear, we shall be borne. 5. We had borne, we had been borne. 6. Bear thou, bear ye. 7. To offer, to be offered. 8. Ye shall offer, ye shall be offered. 9. To have offered, to have been offered. 10. Ye offer, ye will offer. 11. Ye are offered, ye will be offered.

325.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ferte patienter¹ labōrēs. 2. Bene ferre māgnam fortūnam disce. 3. Ferte patienter quae² mūtārī nōn pos-sunt. 4. Nōn omnis ager quī seritur fert frūgēs. 5. Benī-gnum rēgem nōn tulistis; jam ferum et barbarum fertōte. 6. Nōlite differre pēnsū quod hodiē facere potestis. 7. Im-perātor militibus dēfessīs auxilium attulit. 8. In ūnum locum collātum est ex agrīs omne frūmentum. 9. Longa³ nōbīs est omnis mora quae gaudia differt. 10. Caesar omnibus quī contrā sē arma tulerant veniam dedit.

II. 1. They bore labor with patience. 2. They did not endure a good king; now they are enduring a bad one.⁴ 3. We cannot put off our tasks. 4. We shall learn to bear our good fortune well. 5. They bore with patience that⁵ which they could not change. 6. The robbers bore off the

¹ What might be substituted for the adverb? See 144, 145.

² See page 130, note 3. ³ Tedious. ⁴ Omit. ⁵ Id.

booty which they had seized. 7. Do not¹ bring me that which I do not want. 8. Delays which postpone our joy are always tedious. 9. The townsmen carried their all² with them out of the town.

326.

VOCABULARY

ad-ferō (afferō), adferre, attulī, adlātum, *bear to, bring.*

au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum [ab(s)], *bear off, carry away.*

auxilium, -ī, N., *help, aid.*

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, barbarous.*

benīgnus, -a, -um, adj., *kind, good.*

cōn-ferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (conlātum), *bring together, collect; sē cōnferre, betake one's self.*

dif-ferō, differre, distulī, dilātum [dis, apart], *bear apart, scatter, put off, postpone.*

ef-ferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum [ex], *bear out, bring forth.*

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, cruel.*
frūgēs, -um, F. (plur.), *fruits.*

gaudium, -ī, N. [gaudeō, rejoice], *joy, delight.*

in-ferō, inferre, intulī, illātum (inlātum), *bear in, cause; bel-lum inferre, to make war; w.dat.*

jam, adv., *already, now, at last.*

mora, -ae, F., *delay.*

of-ferō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum [ob, before], *present, offer.*

patienter, adv. [patiēns], *patiently, with patience.*

serō, 3, sēvī, satum, *sow, plant.*

suf-ferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum [sub], *undergo, endure.*

venia, -ae, F., *indulgence, kindness, mercy.*

CHAPTER L

327.

IRREGULAR VERBS

Eō, ire, īī [ivī], itum, *go.*

Fīō, fierī, factus sum (supplies pass. to faciō), *be made, become.*

INDICATIVE

	Eō		Fīō	
PRES. eō		īmus	fīō	fīmus
īs		ītis	fīs	fītis
it		eunt	fīt	fīunt

¹ Compare I. 6.

² *Their all, omnia sua.*

	Eō	Fīō
IMPF.	ībam	fiēbam
FUT.	ībō	fiam
PERF.	īī	factus sum
PLUP.	ieram	factus eram
F. P.	ierō	factus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	eam	fiam
IMPF.	īrem	fierem
PERF.	ierim	factus sim
PLUP.	īlsem	factus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES. I	īte	fī	fīte
FUT. Itō	ītōte		
	itō		
	euntō		

INFINITIVE

PRES.	īre	ferī
PERF.	īsse	factus esse
FUT.	itūrus esse	factum īrī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	īēns, gen. euntis	PRES. ———
FUT.	itūrus	GER. faciendus
PERF.	————	PERF. factus

GERUND

G.	eundī
D.	eundō
Ac.	eundum
Ab.	eundō

SUPINE

Ac.	itum	Ab.	itū
-----	------	-----	-----

1. The root of eō, namely *i*, is changed to *e* before a vowel, except in perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, and in nominative singular of present participle.

2. Compounds of eō generally form the perfect in *ii* instead of *mi*. The simple verb rarely, if ever, has *mi*, *weram*, etc.

3. The *i* of fīō is long except when followed by *er*, and in *fit*.

328. Learn the tenses of the indicative, the imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive of eō and fīō.

329.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Nōlite velle id quod fierī nōn potest. 2. Amīcī Alexandrī rēgēs factī sunt. 3. Nēmō nāscitur sapiēns, nēmō cāsū fit bonus. 4. Leve fiēbat onus, quod bene ferēbātur. 5. Apud veterēs Rōmānōs ex agricolīs fiēbant cōsulēs. 6. Omnēs ferē¹ hominēs senectūte fiunt pruden-
tiorēs. 7. Quīdam amnēs subeunt terram rūsusque in
terram redeunt. 8. Alpēs nēmō ante Hannibalem cum
exercitū trānsiit. 9. Miltiadēs Parum insulam expūgnāre
nōn potuit et in patriam rediit. 10. Populus solet nōn
nunquam² dignōs praeterīre.

II. 1. That has been done which you wished. 2. My
friends, you become wiser by old age. 3. Men never
become good by chance. 4. Who will cross the river with
me?³ 5. The generals crossed the mountains with a large
part⁴ of their forces. 6. Light become the burdens that
are patiently borne. 7. Our friends have gone away, but
they will return. 8. The people passed by many worthy
men. 9. The inhabitants of the city went out with their
horses and wagons. 10. The generals return to⁵ their
country with prisoners and booty. 11. Do not⁶ cross the
very deep river.

330.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Septiēs Marius, quī Cimbrōs et Teutonēs duōbus
ācerrimīs proeliīs vīcit, cōsul factus est. 2. Sōcratēs aequō
animō diem suprēmum obiit. 3. Ariovistī cōpiae intrā
annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subierant. 4. Autumnō
multae avēs in aliās terrās proficiscuntur, at vēre novō

¹ Ferē is often thus placed be-
tween an adjective and its noun.

² Nōn nunquam, not never =
sometimes.

³ See 265. 3.

⁴ See page 21, note 1.

⁵ To = into.

⁶ See 318. I. 5 and 6.

redeunt. 5. Abeunt omnia unde orta sunt. 6. Alexander cōnsiliō¹ fortitūdineque omnēs anteībat; omnēs labōrēs subībat.

II. 1. In winter² the days become shorter and the nights longer. 2. After the battle many perished of cold³ and hunger. 3. Cicero was made consul⁴ by the Romans. 4. By the prudence (*cōnsilium*) and valor of Scipio Hannibal was compelled to return into Africa. 5. We ought to meet our last day with equanimity.⁵ 6. Alexander came off victorious⁶ from all his battles.

331.

VOCABULARY

ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go off, come off, go away* (327. 2).

aequus, -a, -um, *adj., level, equal; calm.*

ante-eō, -īre, -iī, —, *go before, surpass.*

apud, *prep. w. acc., with, in, near, among.*

Ariovistus, -ī, *M., Ariovistus, king of a German tribe.*

autumnus, -ī, *M., autumn.*

cōgō, 3, -ēgī, -āctum [*com, agō*], *drive together; compel.*

cōpia, -ae, *F., power, abundance, wealth; plur., troops, forces.*

dēbeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go out.*

ferē, *adv., nearly, for the most part.*

intrā, *prep. w. acc., within.*

Marius, -ī, *M., Marius, a famous Roman general.*

nāscor, 3, nātus, *be born.*

ob-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go towards, meet.*

Parus, -ī, *F., Paros, an island in the Ægean Sea* (11. 4).

per-eō, -īre, -iī, —, *perish.*

praeter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go by, pass by, omit.*

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *return.*

re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry back.*

rūsus, *adv. [re-vorsus, re-vertō], turned back, back, again.*

septiēs, *num. adv. [septem], seven times.*

sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go under, enter, undergo.*

tēctum, -ī, *N. [tegō, cover], covering, shelter, roof.*

Teutonēs, -um, *M., the Teutons, a German tribe.*

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go over, cross.*

¹ See 260.

² Compare I. 4.

³ Ablative.

⁴ Compare I. 1; also 47.

⁵ Compare I. 2.

⁶ Victor.

1. **In**, meaning *into, to, towards, for*, that is after verbs denoting *motion*, takes the accusative.

2. **In**, meaning *in, on, at*, that is after verbs denoting *rest*, takes the ablative. See 334.

3. **Sub**, *under, up to*, after verbs of *motion*, takes the accusative; after verbs of *rest*, the ablative.

4. Remember that all prepositions, except the ten mentioned and **in** and **sub**, are followed by the accusative only.

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

334. *Examine the following:—*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. In oppidō , <i>in the town.</i> | 8. Athēnīs , <i>at (in) Athens.</i> |
| 2. In nāvī , <i>on shipboard.</i> | 9. Corinthī , <i>at (in) Corinth.</i> |
| 3. Ad montem , <i>to the mountain.</i> | 10. Thūriīs , <i>at (in) Thurii.</i> |
| 4. Ex agrīs , <i>from the fields.</i> | 11. Carthāginī , <i>at (in) Carthage.</i> |
| 5. In Ītaliā , <i>in Italy.</i> | 12. Rōmae , <i>at (in) Rome.</i> |
| 6. In Ītaliā , <i>to Italy.</i> | 13. Rōmam , <i>to Rome.</i> |
| 7. Ex Ītaliā , <i>from Italy.</i> | 14. Rōmā , <i>from Rome.</i> |

Observe the ways of denoting the place *in, on, at, to, from* which. In English we always¹ use a preposition with the noun of *place*, as the examples show. So in Latin (see examples 1–7), except with names of towns.² For these a rule may be inferred from the examples 8–14.

335. RULE OF SYNTAX.—With names of towns—

1. The place *in* or *at* which is expressed by the locative. (See 14. 2; 40; 175).

2. The place *to* which, by the accusative without a preposition.³

3. The place *from* which, by the ablative without a preposition.⁴

¹ Except in the case of the word *home*, after a verb of *motion*.

² Names of small islands are often treated like names of towns.

³ This accusative may be called

the ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT, because it denotes the limit, or end, of motion.

⁴ This ablative is the *ablative of separation*. (128, 129, 130.)

336. *Domus*, home, house, and *rūs*, the country, have the construction of names of towns: .

domī, at home.

domum, (to) home.

domō, from home.

rūrī, in the country.

rūs, to (into) the country.

rūre, from the country.

337.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Cōsulēs* in *sēdem* suam *prōcessēre*.¹ 2. *Porsena* *rēx* *infestō* cum *exercitū* *Rōmam* *vēnit*. 3. *Rōmānī* ex *agrīs* in *urbem* *dēmigrant*. 4. *Nova* *Rōmae* *dignitās* *creāta* *est*, *quae* *dictātūra* *appellāta* *est*. 5. *Tarquinius* *Cūmās* *sē* *contulit*. 6. *Missī* *sunt* *Rōmā* *ad* *Coriolānum* *ōrātōrēs* *dē* *pāce*. 7. *Is* *dē* *forō* *domum* *sē* *recipiēbat*. 8. *Erat* *quīdam* *Athēnīs* *quī* *sē* *sapientem* *profitēbātur*. 9. *Rēgulus* in *Āfricam* *trājēcit*. 10. *Deinde* *Rōmam* *missus* *est*, *sed* *mox* *Carthāginem* *rediit*. 11. *Rōmā* *missī* *sunt* *Carthāginem* *lēgātī*. 12. *Rōmānī* *duās* *clādēs* in *Hispāniā* *accēpērunt*. 13. *Tunc* *Scīpiō* *ex* *Siciliā* in *Āfricam* *profectus* *est*. 14. *Hannibal* *ex* *angustiīs* *ēvāsīt*.

II. 1. The consul set out from Rome with a large army. 2. We have removed from the city into the country. 3. Then the general retreated² into Campania. 4. I have lived in Athens three years.³ 5. Tarquin remained at Cumæ a long time. 6. Scipio defeated Hannibal at Zama. 7. Regulus returned from Africa to Rome. 8. Afterwards he was sent back from Rome to Carthage. 9. Cæsar carried on war in Gaul eight years.³ 10. Cicero was born at Arpinum. 11. The consul proceeded to Athens with his army. 12. From Athens he sailed⁴ to Italy. 13. Do you remain (*imperative*) at home; I will return to the army. 14. Shall you come home soon?

¹ From *prōcēdō*, perfect tense.

² See I. 7, and 239.

³ See 313.

⁴ See 272. II. 6.

338.

VOCABULARY

angustiae, -ārum, F. (plur.) [angustus, narrow], narrow pass.

Cf. Eng. "narrows."

appellō, 1, address, call, name.

Arpinum, -ī, N., Arpinum, a town in Italy.

Athēnae, -ārum, F. (plur.) Athens.

Carthāgō, -inis, F., Carthage, a city in Africa.

Coriolānus, -ī, M., a surname of C. Marcius, a Roman consul.

Cūmae, -ārum, F. (plur.), Cumæ, a town in Campania.

dē-migrō, 1, emigrate, remove.

dictātūra, -ae, F. [dictātor], office of dictator, dictatorship.

dignitās, -ātis, F. [dignus, worthy], worth, dignity, office.

ē-vādō, 3, ēvāsī, ēvāsum, go forth, escape.

infestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile, troublesome, dangerous.

ōrātor, -ōris, M. [ōrō, speak, plead], orator, ambassador.

Porsena, -ae, M., Porsena, an Etruscan king.

pro-fiteor, 2, -fessus [fateor], acknowledge, confess, declare.

re-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, send back.

sēdēs, -is, F. [sedeō, sit], seat, abode.

Tarquinius, -ī, M., Tarquin, a Roman king.

trā-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [trāns, jaciō], throw across, pass over, cross.

tum, adv., then, at that time.

Zama, -ae, F., Zama, a town in Africa.

339.

FOR TRANSLATION

THE BATTLE OF CANNÆ, B.C. 216

Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnerat. Adversus eum Rōmā profectī sunt duo cōsulēs, Aemilius Paullus et Terentius Varrō. Paullō¹ cunctātiō Fabī² magis placēbat; Varrō autem, ferōx³ et temerārius, ācriōra sequēbātur cōsilia. Ambō cōsulēs ad vīcum, quī Cannae appellābātur, castra commūnīverunt. Ibi deinde Varrō invītō collēgā⁴ aciem instrūxit et sīgnum pūgnae dedit. Hannibal autem ita cōstituerat aciem ut Rōmānīs⁵ et⁶ sōlis radiī et ventus ab oriente

¹ For the case, see 343.

² Fabius Maximus, whose policy had been one of prudence, or rather, of extreme caution.

³ Impetuous.

⁴ His colleague unwilling = against the wishes of his colleague. See 412.

⁵ To the Romans, dative with adversī. ⁶ Both.

pulverem adflāns¹ adversī essent.² Victus caesusque est Rōmānus exercitus; nūsqum graviōre vulnere afflīcta est rēs pūblica.

[Continued on page 177.]

CHAPTER · LII

ADDITIONAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX

340. *Examine the following : —*

1. Alter cōsulūm, *one of the consuls.*
2. Ūnus militūm, *one of the soldiers.*
3. Quis vestrum? *who of you?*
4. Nihil novī, *nothing (of) new.*
5. Satis pecūniae, *enough (of) money.*
6. Ūnus ex militibus, *one of the soldiers.*
7. Minimū ex illis, *the youngest of them.*

The first five of the examples illustrate what is called the **PARTITIVE GENITIVE**, the word in the genitive denoting a *whole*, and the word which it limits a *part* of that whole; 6 and 7 illustrate another way of expressing the partitive idea.

341. *Examine the following : —*

1. Catilīna fuit ingeniō malō, *Catiline was (a man) of bad disposition.*
2. Iccius summā nōbilitāte fuit, *Iccius was (a man) of the highest rank.*
3. Puer sēdecim annōrum, *a boy of sixteen years.*
4. Vestis magnī pretī, *a garment of great value.*
5. Vir summae virtūtis, *a man of the highest courage.*

The above are examples of the **DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE** and the **DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE**. Observe that in each instance the ablative or genitive is limited by an adjective, and that the adjective and noun together denote a *quality* or *characteristic* of that which is described.

¹ Present participle of *adflō*.

² *Were an annoyance.*

342. *Examine the following : —*

1. Rēgī serviō, *I serve the king.*
2. Cīvitātī prōdest, *he benefits the state.*
3. Caesarī placuit, *it pleased Cæsar.*
4. Frātrī persuādet, *he persuades his brother.*
5. Crēde mihi, *believe me.*
6. Lēgibus cīvitātis pārēbat (220. I. 2).
7. Interdum amicīs nocet (272. I. 8).

Observe that the verbs, which in English have a direct object, are followed in Latin by the dative (the case of the indirect object). Such verbs should be carefully noted as they occur in the exercises. They may be summed up in the following —

343. RULE OF SYNTAX. — Many verbs signifying to *please or displease, benefit or injure, command or obey, serve, resist, believe, threaten, persuade, and the like, take the dative.*

344. *Examine the following : —*

1. Māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit, *it was of great service to our men.*
2. Est mihi cūrae, *it is (for) a care to me.*
3. Equitātum auxiliō Caesarī mīserant, *they had sent cavalry to aid Cæsar (for aid to Cæsar).*
4. Quīnque cohortēs castrīs praesidiō relinquit, *he leaves five cohorts to defend the camp (for defence of the camp).*

Observe in each of the above sentences two datives, one translated (literally) with *for*, the other with *to*. In 1 and 2, ūsuī and cūrae are like the predicate nominative, which is often used where we might expect this dative; in 3 and 4, auxiliō and praesidiō denote a purpose. . This dative *for which* is sometimes called the DATIVE OF SERVICE. The two together are sometimes called the DOUBLE DATIVE.

Observe instances of the foregoing constructions as they occur in the exercises and reading lessons.

CHAPTER LIII

DERIVATION

345. Some derivations have been indicated in the vocabularies by separating the parts of compound words, and, beginning with **221**, by putting words in brackets. The bracketed words, however, are not to be understood as the primitives or originals of the words against which they stand, as is customarily the case in lexicons and special vocabularies, but that they are *connected with them in formation from a common root or stem*. The habit of observing such relationships is the important thing. The following list is selected from previous vocabularies for further study of the subject:—

1. *amō*, love; *amicus*, loving, friendly; *amicitia*, friendship; *inimicus* (for *in-amicus*), unfriendly, hostile.
2. *ager*, field, land, soil; *agri-cola* (*colō*, cultivate), one who cultivates the soil, farmer; *agrī cultūra*, cultivation of the soil, agriculture. *Colō* also means dwell, hence *incola*, inhabitant. Meaning of *incolō*?
3. *cīvis*, citizen; *cīvilis*, pertaining to a citizen; *cīvitās*, the condition of a citizen, or a body of citizens, state. Like *cīvilis*, form and define adjectives from the stems of *puer* and *hostis*.
4. *regō*, v., rule; *rēx* (*rēgs*), ruler, king; *rēgīna*, ruler, queen; *rēgnum*, kingdom; *rēgnō*, be king, reign; *rēgula*, n., rule.
5. *faciō*, do; *facinus*, thing done, deed; *facilis* (that may be done), easy; *difficilis* (for *dis-facilis*), not to be done, difficult.
6. *nōscō*, know; *nōmen*, n. (that by which a thing is known), name; *nōminō*, v., name; *nōbilis* (that can be known), well-known, noble, cf. *facilis*.
7. *fuga*, flight; *fugiō*, flee. *liber*, adj., free; *liberō*, v., free.
metus, n., fear; *metuō*, v., fear. *laus*, n., praise; *laudō*, v., praise.
timor, n., fear; *timeō*, v., fear. *discō*, learn; *discipulus*, learner.
dō, give; *dōnum*, gift. *moveō*, move; *mōtus*, motion.
fluō, flow; *fluvius*, *flūmen*, stream, river.
dominus, lord, master; *domina*, mistress; *dominor*, be master.
8. *aurum*, gold; *aureus*, of gold, golden.
lignum, wood; *ligneus*, of wood, wooden.

ferrum, *iron*; **ferreus**, *of iron, iron*.

argentum, *silver*. Form an adjective from the stem of **argentum**, and define it.

9. **alō**, *nourish*; **alimentum** (*that which nourishes*), *food, provisions*.
moneō, *remind*; **monumentum** (*that which reminds*), *monument*.

ōrnō, *adorn*; meaning of **ōrnāmentum**?

10. **pulcher**, *beautiful*; **pulchritūdō**, *beauty*.

fortis, *brave*; **fortitūdō**, *bravery*.

turpis, *base*; **turpitūdō**, *baseness*.

altus, *high*. Form a noun from the stem of **altus**, and define it.

11. **īgnāvus** (*not busy*), *idle*; **īgnāvia**, *idleness*.

memor, *mindful*; **memoria** (*mindfulness*), *memory*.

piger, *lazy*; **pigritia**, *laziness*.

prūdēns, *wise, prudent*; **prūdentia**, *wisdom, prudence*.

sapiēns, *wise*; **sapientia**, *wisdom*.

amicus, *friend*; **amicitia**, *friendship*.

Form a noun from the stem of **inimicus**, and define it.

12. **equus**, *horse*; **eques**, *horseman*.

pēs (stem **ped**), *foot*; **pedēs**, *foot-soldier*.

13. **arō**, *v., plough*; **arātrum**, *n. (thing to plough with), plough*.

(**rōdō**, *gnaw*); **rōstrum** (*that which gnaws*), *beak, snout, hence beak of a ship*.

14. **vir**, *man*; **virtūs**, *manliness, virtue*.

servus, *slave*; **servitūs**, *slavery*.

cōsul, *consul*; **cōsulātus**, *office of a consul, consulship*.

magister, *master*; **magistrātus**, *office of a magister, magistracy, also magistrate*.

15. **perīculum**, *danger*; **perīculōsus**, *full of danger, dangerous*.

frōns, *leaf*; **frondōsus**, *covered with leaves, leafy*.

studium, *zeal*; meaning of **studiōsus**?

16. **audeō**, *dare*; **audāx**, *daring*.

rapīō, *seize*; **rapāx**, *grasping*.

teneō, *hold*; meaning of **tenāx**?

17. **scribō**, *write*; **scrip̄tor**, *writer*.

vincō (*victum*), *conquer*; **victor**, *conqueror*.

dēfendō, *defend*; **dēfēnsor**, *defender*.

From stem of **amō**, *love*, form a word meaning *lover*; from stem of **audiō**, *hear*, in the same way, a word meaning *hearer*.

18. *ūllus*, *any*; *nūllus*, *not any*.
sciō, *know*; *nesciō*, *know not*.
19. *homō*, *man*; *hūmānus* (*belonging to a man*), *human*.
mors, *death*; *mortālis* (*belonging to death*), *mortal*.
alius, *another*; *aliēnus* (*belonging to another*), *another's*.
20. Observe also the force of the various prefixes, *ā* (*ab*), *ad*, *dē*, *dis*, *in*, *prae*, *prō*, *re*, *sub*, etc., as in *ā-mittō*, *ac-cēdō*, *dē-scendō*, *dī-mittō*, *īn-ferō*, *prae-sum*, *prō-cēdō*, *re-ferō*, *sub-eō*, etc.

CHAPTER LIV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

SEQUENCE OF TENSES: PRACTICE ON FORMS

346. Learn the subjunctive of *sum* (73) and its compounds (292, 293).

The chief use of the subjunctive is in subjoined, that is, dependent, clauses.

347. *Examine the following:—*

1. *Audiō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit*, *I hear where he is, has been or was, is going to be.*
2. *Audiam ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit*, *I shall hear where he is, has been or was, is going to be.*
3. *Audīverō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit*, *I shall have heard where he is, has been or was, is going to be.*
4. *Audiēbam ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset*, *I heard where he was, had been, was going to be.*
5. *Audīvī ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset*, *I heard, have heard¹ where he was, had been, was going to be.*
6. *Audīveram ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset*, *I had heard where he was, had been, was going to be.*

¹ Occasionally the perfect meaning *have*, *has*, is followed by the subjunctive present or perfect.

Notice what tenses are used in the principal clauses of each of the preceding groups of examples. Those in the first group—the present, the future, and the future perfect—are called *primary* or *principal* tenses. Those in the second group—the imperfect, the perfect, and the pluperfect—are called *secondary* or *historical* tenses.

Observe also that primary tenses of the subjunctive are used in the first three, secondary in the last three.

348. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Primary tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and secondary follow secondary.¹

Observe that the subjunctive in the foregoing examples is translated like the indicative.

349. Examine the following:—

1. *Nēmō adest quīn sit fortis, no one is present who is not brave.*
2. *Quis adest quīn sit fortis? who is present who is not brave?*
3. *Nēmō dubitat quīn sit fortis, no one doubts that he is brave, or his being brave.*
4. *Nōn dubium est quīn sit fortis, there is no doubt that he is brave, or of his being brave.*
5. *Nōn dubitō quīn sit fortis, I do not doubt that he is brave, or his being brave.*

Observe (1) that the subjunctive follows *quīn*; (2) that *quīn* is used after negative expressions and questions that expect a negative answer; (3) that the subjunctive clause with *quīn* (compounded of *quī*, *who*, and *nē*, *not*) may be variously rendered *who . . . not, that, etc.*

350.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Quis dubitat quīn sint fortēs?* 2. *Nēmō dubitat quīn vīta sit brevis.* 3. *Nōn dubitō quīn adfuerint.* 4. *Nōn dubium erat quīn essent fortēs.* 5. *Quis dubitābat quīn*

¹ See footnote on preceding page.

fuissent fortēs? 6. Nēmō dubitāverat quīn adfuisset; adfuissent. 7. Nōn est dubium quīn possit; possint; poterit; potuerint. 8. Quis dubitābat quīn posset? possent? potuisset? potuissent? 9. Nōn est dubium quīn praesīs; praesītis; praefueris; praefueritis. 10. Quis dubitāverat quīn āfuisset? āfuissent?

II. 1. I do not doubt that he is present; has been present; is absent; has been absent. 2. Who doubted that he could? they could? we could? you could? 3. They do not doubt that he is at the head of (*praesum*); has been at the head of. 4. Who has doubted his surviving? their surviving? 5. Who doubted their injuring? having injured? 6. There is no doubt that he can; we can; you can; they can. 7. There was no doubt that he could; I could; they could.

351. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of **amō** (86) and **moneō** (112).

1. Observe that in the active voice the imperfect subjunctive can be formed readily from the present infinitive, and the pluperfect subjunctive from the perfect infinitive. Compare the perfect subjunctive with the future perfect indicative.

352. *Examine the following: —*

Sē armant ut pūgnent, *they arm themselves that they may fight, in order that they may fight, to fight, so as to fight, in order to fight, for the purpose of fighting.*

Observe that the various equivalents of **ut pūgnent** have a common notion or idea, that of *purpose*.

353. RULE OF SYNTAX. — *Ut* with the subjunctive may be used to denote a purpose, and may be variously translated.

354. Review the indicative and imperative of **eō**, *go* (327).

355.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *It ut mōnstret et moneat.* 2. *Ībat ut mōnstrāret et monēret.* 3. *Iit ut mōnstret et moneat.* 4. *Iit ut mōnstrāret et monēret.* 5. *Ībunt ut mōnstrent et moneant.* 6. *lērunt ut mōnstrārent et monērent.* 7. *Ierant ut mōnstrārent et monērent.* 8. *Nōn dubitāvī quīn mōnstrāvisset et monuisset.* 9. *Quis dubitāverat quīn mōnstrāvissent et monuissent?* 10. *Nēmō dubitāvit quīn mōnstrāvissēmus et monuissēmus.* 11. *Nōn est dubium quīn mōnstrēmus et moneāmus.*

II. 1. He goes to see and praise. 2. They go for the purpose of seeing and praising. 3. We will go in order to see and praise. 4. Who will not go that he may see and praise? 5. You will go to see and praise. 6. They have gone to see and praise. 7. He has gone for the purpose of seeing and praising. 8. He went in order to see and praise. 9. Go (*plur.*) to see and praise. 10. He was going that he might see and praise. 11. Who doubts his having seen and praised? 12. No one doubted that they had seen and praised.

356.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Eī (eīs, mihi, nōbīs) imperat ut¹ —*
cōnētur, cōnentur, cōner, cōnēmur.
 2. *Eī (eīs, mihi, nōbīs) imperābat ut —*
cōnārētur, cōnārentur, cōnārer, cōnārēmur.
 3. *Quis dubitat quīn —*
cōnātus sit, cōnātī sint, cōnātus sim, cōnātī sīmus?
 4. *Nēmō dubitābat quīn —*
cōnātus esset, cōnātī essent, cōnātus essem, cōnātī
essēmus.

¹ Translate thus : *He orders him to try (that he try) ; them to try (that they try).*

5. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monet ut —
tueātur, tueantur, tuear, tueāmur.
6. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monēbat ut —
tuērētur, tuērentur, tuērer, tuērēmur.
7. Quis dubitat quīn —
tuitus sit, tuitī sint, tuitus sim, tuitī sīmus?
8. Nēmō dubitābat quīn —
tuitus esset, tuitī essent, tuitus essem, tuitī essēmus.

II.¹ 1. They will order him² (them, me, us) to imitate.
 2. They have ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate.
 3. Who doubts his³ (their, my, our) having imitated?
 4. They ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate. 5. Nobody doubted his (their, my, our) having imitated. 6. They advise him (them, me, us) to promise. 7. They advised him (them, me, us) to promise. 8. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had promised.

357. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of *regō* (180), *audiō* (223), *capiō* (235).

358. The conjunction *nē*, in order that not, that not, in order not to, so as not to, lest, is used to denote a negative purpose, just as *ut* denotes a positive purpose. See 352, 353.

359.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Eum (eōs) monet ut —
 regat, regātur, audiat, audiātur,
 regant, regantur, audiant, audiantur.
2. Eum (eōs) monuit ut —
 regat, regātur, audiat, audiātur,
 regant, regantur, audiant, audiantur.
3. Eum (eōs) monēbat ut —
 regeret, regerētur, audīret, audīrētur,
 regerent, regerentur, audīrent, audīrentur.

¹ Imitate the arrangement in I.

² Dative.

³ That is, *that he, they, I, we, have imitated.*

4. Eum (eōs) monuit ut —

regeret,	regerētur,	audīret,	audīrētur,
regerent,	regerentur,	audīrent,	audīrentur.

5. Tē (vōs) monet nē —

capiās,	capiātis,	capiāris,	capiāminī.
---------	-----------	-----------	------------

6. Mē (nōs) monuit nē —

capiam,	capiāmus,	capiar,	capiāmur.
---------	-----------	---------	-----------

7. Mē (nōs) monēbat nē —

caperem,	caperēmus,	caperer,	caperēmur.
----------	------------	----------	------------

8. Mē (nōs) monuit nē —

caperem,	caperēmus,	caperer,	caperēmur.
----------	------------	----------	------------

II. 1. They advise him (them) —

to lead,	to be led,	to find,	to be found.
----------	------------	----------	--------------

2. They warn him (them) —

not to receive,	not to be received.
-----------------	---------------------

3. They will advise him (them) —

to lead,	to be led,	to find,	to be found.
----------	------------	----------	--------------

4. They were warning him (them) —

not to lead,	find,	receive,
not to be led,	be found,	be received.

5. Who doubted that he (they) —

had led,	had found,	had received,
had been led,	been found,	been received ?

360. Learn the subjunctive of eō (327), and ferō (321).

361.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mē hortātur ut eam, feram. 2. Eōs hortāmur ut eant, ferantur. 3. Vōs hortantur ut eātis, ferātis. 4. Eum hortātī sunt ut īret, ferret. 5. Mē hortātī sunt nē eam, feram. 6. Tē hortābantur nē īrēs, ferrēs. 7. Eōs hortātī erant ut īrent, ferrent. 8. Nōn dubium erat quīn iis-
sent, tulissent. 9. Nōn est dubium quīn ierit, tulerit.
10. Nēmō dubitābat quīn īret, ferrētur.

II. 1. He commands that he (they, I, we) go, bear, be borne. 2. He was commanding that he (they, I, we) should go, bear, be borne. 3. There is no doubt of his (their, my, our) having gone, borne, been borne. 4. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had gone, borne, been borne.

362.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Imperātor exercitum in collem subdūxit, ut fortūnam bellī experīrētur. 2. Pater Horātī populum ōrābat nē sē orbū faceret. 3. Illud facit ut hostēs circumveniantur. 4. Cōsul cūrāvit ut plēbs agrōs coleret. 5. Nōn dubium erat quīn Rōmānī auxilium ferrent. 6. Manlius ēdicit nē quis¹ extrā ordinem pūgnet. 7. Omnēs occīdentur ut vīrēs hostiū frangantur, aut omnēs dīmīttentur ut beneficiō obligentur. 8. Nōn est dubium quīn terror animōs omnium cīvium occupāverit. 9. Incidit² ut eō tempore Hasdrubal ad eundem portum venīret. 10. Scīpiō uxōrem ōrāvit nē corpus suum Rōmam referrētur.

II. 1. The ambassadors beg the senate to render aid to their³ kingdom. 2. The ambassador begged the senate to render aid to his⁴ king. 3. Nobody doubts that Hannibal is brave. 4. Nobody doubted that Hannibal had fought bravely. 5. They did this that they might surround the enemy. 6. This they do in order to surround the enemy. 7. Scipio begs his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 8. Scipio begged his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 9. It turned out that the soldier received a wound on the head. 10. We will draw up the soldiers on a hill to try the fortune of war.

¹ Nē quis, lest any one = that no one.

² After verbs meaning to happen, to turn out, and the like, ut means that, but not in order that.

³ Suus, because their means their own, and not of them.

⁴ Suus.

363.

VOCABULARY

circum-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, surround.

collis, -is, M., hill. Cf. mōns.

cōnor, 1, attempt.

cūrō, 1 [cūra], care for, take care.

dī-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, send away, send off.

ē-dīcō, 3, -dīxī, -dictum, speak out, declare, proclaim.

ē-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come forth, turn out, happen. Cf. accidō.

extrā, prep. w. acc., without, outside of. Cf. intrā.

frangō, 3, frēgī, frāctum, break.

Hasdrubal, -alis, M., Hasdrubal, brother of Hannibal.

hortor, 1, urge, encourage.

in-cidō, 3, -cidī, -cāsum [cadō], fall into, happen, befall.

Manlius, -ī, M., Manlius, a Roman general.

mōnstrō, 1, show, point out.

ob-ligō, 1, bind, put under obligation, oblige.

oc-cidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsum [ob, caedō, cut], cut down, kill.

occupō, 1 [ob, capiō], take possession of, seize.

orbus, -a, -um, adj., bereaved, childless.

orō, 1 [ōs, mouth], pray, beg.

plēbs, -bis, F., the common people.

senātus, -ūs, M. [senex], council of elders, senate (345. 14).

sub-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, draw from under, draw up.

uxor, -ōris, F., wife. Cf. conjunx.

vīs, vīs, F., strength, power (262).

CHAPTER LV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: RELATIVE OF PURPOSE

[It is suggested that the turning of English into Latin be now deferred till after the Reading Lessons, pages 211-222, have been finished.]

364. In all the Latin sentences in the preceding lesson in which *ut* and *nē* are used with the subjunctive, except 362. I. 9, the dependent clause expresses a purpose. And, on the other hand, in the English sentences all the dependent clauses expressing purpose ("to render aid," "not to carry," etc.) had to be turned into Latin by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive. But the Latin often expresses a purpose by means of a relative pronoun followed by the subjunctive. See the first six sentences below.

365.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ancus lēgātum mittit ut rēs repetat. 2. Ancus lēgātum mittit quī rēs repetat. 3. Lēgātī vēnērunt ut pācem

peterent. 4. Lēgātī vērunt quī pācem peterent. 5. Pater filiō equum dedit ut equitāret. 6. Pater filiō equum dabat quī eum veheret. 7. Ad singulās urbēs scribēmus nē mūrōs dīruant. 8. Nōn dubium est quīn Catō ad urbēs scripserit. 9. Quis dubitāvit quīn Catō imperāvisset ut urbēs mūrōs dīruerent? 10. Rōmulus urbem fēcit quae asyllum esset; Rōmulus urbem facit quae sit asyllum.

II. 1. A horse was given to the boy by his father, for¹ him to ride. 2. A father sent a messenger to Rome to speak² to his son. 3. A father sends a messenger to Rome to speak² to his son. 4. Romulus makes proclamation that no one³ shall leap⁴ over his wall. 5. Romulus proclaimed that no one should leap over his wall. 6. We will warn them not to leap⁵ over our walls. 7. Romulus sent messengers to invite² neighboring people to his games. 8. The father will give his son a horse for him to ride. 9. Who doubts that a kind father gives his son books? 10. Nobody doubted that the father had given his son many things.⁶

366.

VOCABULARY

al-loquor, 3, -locūtus [ad], *speak to, address.*

Ancus, -ī, m., *Ancus, a Roman king.*

asyllum, -ī, n., *a place of refuge, asylum.*

Catō, -ōnis, m., *Cato, a famous Roman censor.*

dī-ruō, 3, -ruī, -rutum, *tear asunder, destroy.*

equitō, 1 [eques], *act the equestrian, ride.*

finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [finis], *bordering on, neighboring.*

imperō, 1, *order, command, with dative. Cf. jubeō with acc.*

lūdus, -ī, m. [lūdō], *game, play.*

nūntius, -ī, m., *bearer of news, messenger.*

re-petō, 3, -īvi (-īi), -ītum, *seek again, demand back; rēs repetere, demand restitution.*

trān-siliō, 4, -īi (-uī), — [saliō], *leap, leap over or across.*

¹ That he might ride.

² Translate in two ways.

³ See 362. I. 6, and note.

⁴ Present subjunctive.

⁵ See 362. I. 10.

⁶ Many things, multa.

CHAPTER LVI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: *ut* and *Nē*

367. The subjunctive with *ut* to denote *purpose* has been illustrated (352). But the subjunctive with *ut* has other uses.

368. *Examine the following:—*

1. *Tantus est militum ardor ut ad bellum dūcantur, so great is the ardor of the soldiers that they are led to war.*
2. *Accidit ut nōn domi essem, it happened that I was not at home.*
3. *Fabricius adeo inops decēssit ut nihil reliquerit,¹ Fabricius died so poor as to leave nothing.*

In these examples the dependent clause denotes a *result*. Compare the translation of *ut* and the subjunctive in *purpose* clauses and in *result* clauses. *That not* in *result* clauses = *ut nōn*. Cf. 358.

369. Still another use of the subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* is illustrated in the following sentences:—

1. *Timeo ut veniat, I fear that he is not coming, or will not come.*
2. *Timeo ut venerit, I fear that he has not come.*
3. *Timēbam ut vēnisset, I feared that he had not come.*
4. *Timeo nē veniat, I fear that he is coming, or will come.*
5. *Timeo nē venerit, I fear that he has come.*
6. *Timēbam nē vēnisset, I feared that he had come.*

An inspection of the foregoing examples shows that *ut* and *nē* seem sometimes to exchange meanings.

After verbs of *fearing*, *ut* is translated *that not*, and *nē*, *that*.

Observe that in 1 and 4 the present subjunctive may be translated as a future.

370.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Pompējus ita ēgit ut ā Sullā diligeretur.* 2. *Is, ut Sullae² subveniret, milites collēgit.* 3. *Posteā in³ Siciliam profectus est, ut eam prōvinciam ā Carbōne reciperet.*

¹ An exception to 348.

² See 343.

³ See 333. 1.

4. Catilīnae exercitus adeō ācritēr dīmīcāvit ut nēmō superesset. 5. Accidit ut esset plēna lūna. 6. Atticus sic Graecē loquēbātur ut Athēnīs nātus vidērētur. 7. Atticus Athēnīs ita vīxit ut omnibus cīvibus esset cārissimus. 8. Nōn dubitō quīn nostrī mīlitēs hostēs superāverint. 9. Nōn est dubium quīn semper fidem servāveritis. 10. Timeō ut sustineās labōrēs. 11. Metuō nē malum cōnsilium capiās. 12. Metuō ut sustinueris labōrēs. 13. Quis metuit nē malum cōnsilium capiam?

Point out the *purpose* clauses in the above.

II. 1. The boy so acts that he is loved by all. 2. They so acted that they were loved by all. 3. He will so act as to be¹ loved by all. 4. He has so acted as to be loved by all. 5. They will not doubt our having come.² 6. They had not doubted our having come.³ 7. I fear that you are not well. 8. I feared that you were not well. 9. I fear that you are sick. 10. I was afraid that you had been sick. 11. The enemy are fighting so spiritedly that no one will survive.⁴ 12. They have fought so sharply that no one has survived. 13. We will set out for⁵ Sicily in order to receive⁶ that province.

371.

VOCABULARY

ac-cidō, 3, -cidī, — [ad, cadō],
fall upon, fall out, happen. Cf.
ēveniō and incidō.

ad-eō, adv., (to this), thus far, so,
so very.

Atticus, -ī, m., Atticus, a friend of
Cicero.

Carbō, -ōnis, m., Carbo, a Roman.

Catilīna, -ae, m., Catiline, a famous Roman conspirator.

col-ligō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctum [com,
legō], collect. Also conligō.

dī-micō, 1, fight, contend.

Graecē, adv. [Graecus], in Greek.
loquor, 3, locūtus, speak, talk.

sub-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come
to the aid of, aid, assist; w.
dat. Cf. succurrō.

sustineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentum [sub,
teneō], hold up, bear, endure.

¹ As to be, ut, etc. ³ That we had come. ⁵ See I. 3 and note.

² That we have come. ⁴ Present subjunctive. ⁶ Not infinitive.

CHAPTER LVII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: *Cum*

372. The subjunctive occurs very frequently in dependent clauses beginning with *cum*, meaning (1) *when, while, as*, of time; (2) *since, because, as*, of cause or reason; (3) *although*, of concession:

1. *Cum Servius in domō Tarquinī esset, mīrābile accidit*, *while Servius was in the house of Tarquin, a wonderful thing happened.*
2. *Cum Tarquinius occīsus esset, ējus uxor populum allocūta est*, *when Tarquin had been killed, his wife addressed the people.*
3. *Tullia, cum domum redīret, super corpus patris carpentum ēgit*, *Tullia, as she was returning home, drove her wagon over the body of her father.*

An inspection of the above examples shows that —

- (1) The tenses of the subjunctive are the imperfect and pluperfect.
- (2) The *cum* clause marks the time of the act of the principal clause, the verb of which is in the perfect.
- (3) The sentences may be called *narrative sentences*.

373. RULE OF SYNTAX. — *Cum* temporal, that is, *cum* in narrative clauses, is followed by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to mark the time of the action in the principal clause.

374. Examine the following: —

1. *Cum huīc lēgī senātus repūgnāret, Caesar rem ad populum dētulit*, *since the senate opposed this law, Cæsar referred the matter to the people.*
2. *Cum dē imprōvisō vēnisset, Rēmī lēgātōs mīsērunt*, *since he had come unexpectedly, the Remi sent ambassadors.*
3. *Cum vīta metūs plēna sit, amīcitiās parāte*, *since life is full of fear, form friendships.*
4. *Cum mē interrogāveris, respondēbō*, *as you have asked me, I will answer.*

5. *Nihil mē adjūvit cum posset, he gave me no aid (aided me in nothing), although it was in his power.*

Notice that —

(1) All the four tenses of the subjunctive are used.

(2) The *cum* clause states the cause or reason of the act of the principal clause; or denotes a concession, indicated in English by *though, admitting that, etc.*

375. RULE OF SYNTAX. — *Cum* causal or concessive is followed by the subjunctive in all its tenses.

1. *Cum* followed by the present or perfect subjunctive is almost always causal, and may be translated *since* or *as*; followed by the imperfect or pluperfect it is very often temporal.

2. *Cum* temporal and the subjunctive can often be translated in some other way better than by *when* or *as* with the indicative. Thus, in **372. 2**, we might translate, *After the killing of Tarquin, etc.*; and in **3**, *Tullia, returning home, or Tullia, on her way home.*

376.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Cum jūssī essent invicem dīcere, ūnus ōrsus est.*
 2. *Pyrrhus, cum tot Rōmānōs mortuōs vidēret, manūs ad caelum sustulit.* 3. *Cum explōrātōrēs cēpisset, eōs per castra circumdūxit.* 4. *Quae cum ita sint,¹ perge.* 5. *Cum sit in nōbīs cōsilium, cūr dubitāmus?* 6. *Cum dē imprōvisō vēnerit Caesar, ad eum lēgātōs mittēmus.* 7. *Cum amīcī adsint, gaudēmus.* 8. *Cum² nox appropinquāret, abiērunt.* 9. *Cum nox appropinquāvisset, abiērunt.* 10. *Caesar, cum frūstrā mīsisset, sōlus nāviculam cōnscendit nē āgnōscerētur.*

II. 1. *When one had begun,³ the rest became (were) silent.*
 2. *Pyrrhus, having seen⁴ the bravery of the Romans, spoke these words.* 3. *Since he has seen the bravery of the Romans, he raises his hands to heaven.* 4. *Since night is*

¹ *Since these things are so = such being the case.*

² *Cum* may be translated as temporal or causal: *on the approach*

of night, or since night was approaching.

³ See **373.**

⁴ *Pyrrhus, when he had seen.*

approaching, we will go off. 5. When our friends had arrived, we went to Boston. 6. On the arrival of our friends we went to Boston. 7. While Cæsar was embarking in a boat, no one recognized him. 8. As¹ Cæsar was alone, he was not recognized. 9. As¹ I was telling him a story, he suddenly laughed. 10. As¹ they had prudence, we did not hesitate.

377.

VOCABULARY

ā-gnōscō, 3, -gnōvī, -gnitum [ad, (g)nōscō, *know*], *recognize*.

ap-propinquō, 1 [ad], *approach*.

Bostonia, -ae, F., *Boston*.

cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., *the rest*.

circum-dūcō, 3, -xī, -ductum, *lead around*.

cōn-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēsum [scan-dō, *climb*], *ascend, embark, go on board*.

dubitō, 1 [dubius], *doubt, hesitate*.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful*.

gaudeō,² 2, gāvīsus sum, *be glad, rejoice*.

im-prō-vīsō, adv. [videō], *unexpectedly*.

in-vicem, adv., *by turns, in turn*.

jubeō, 2, jussī, jūssum, *bid, order*.

Cf. imperō.

mortuus, -a, -um [P. of morior], *dead*.

nāvicula, -ae, F. [nāvis], *little vessel, boat*.

ōrdior, 4, ōrsus, *begin, undertake*.

pergō, 3, perrēxī, perrēctum [per, regō], *go on, continue*.

taceō, 2, tacuī, tacitum, *be silent, say nothing about*.

tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātum, *raise, lift up*.

tot, adj., indecl., *so many*. Cf. quot.

378.

FOR TRANSLATION

THE BATTLE OF CANNÆ — Continued

Aemilius Paullus tēlīs obrutus cecidit. Quem³ cum mediā in pūgnā sedentem in saxō opplētum cruōre cōspexisset

¹ The *as* of *reason*, or of *time*?

² Four common verbs, *audeō, dare, gaudeō, rejoice, soleō, be accustomed, fidō, trust*, have the passive form in the perfect, and hence are called *semi-deponents*.

³ Translate first mentally, taking the words as they stand, ren-

dering *cum, when*; then recast this preliminary translation, beginning with *cum quīdam tribūnus*, and rendering *quem, him*.

Follow this method, when a Latin sentence appears difficult; but keep a sharp eye on the terminations of the words.

quīdam tribūnus militum: "Cape," inquit, "hunc equum et fuge, Aemilī. Etiam sine tuā morte lacrimārum¹ satis lūctūsque est." Ad ea cōsul:² "Tū quidem macte virtūte estō.³ Sed cavē,⁴ exiguum tempus ē manibus hostium evādendī perdās.⁴ Abī, nūntiā patribus, ut urbem mūniant ac,⁵ prius quam hostis victor adveniat, praesidiīs firment. Mē in hāc strāge meōrum militum patere⁶ expirāre." Alter cōsul cum paucīs equitibus Venusiam⁷ perfūgit. Cōsulārēs aut praetoriū occidērunt⁸ vīginti, senātōrēs captī aut occīsī sunt trīgintā, nōbilēs virī trecentī, militum quadrāgintā mīlia, equitum tria mīlia et quīngentī. Hannibal in⁹ testimōnium victōriae suae trēs modiōs aureōrum ānulōrum Carthāginem mīsīt, quōs dē manibus equitum Rōmānōrum et senātōrum detrāxerat.

CHAPTER LVIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: INDIRECT QUESTIONS

379. *Examine the following:—*

DIRECT	INDIRECT
1. Quis est? <i>who is he?</i>	Sciō quis sit, <i>I know who he is.</i>
2. Ubi sumus? <i>where are we?</i>	Sciō ubi sīmus, <i>I know where we are.</i>
3. Cūr ridēs? <i>why do you laugh?</i>	Sciō cūr rīdeās, <i>I know why you laugh.</i>
4. Quem vīdistī? <i>whom have you seen?</i>	Sciō quem vīderis, <i>I know whom you have seen.</i>

¹ See 340. 5.

² Supply *dixit* or *respondit*. But it is livelier without a verb.

³ Perhaps the literal translation of this phrase is, *be thou blessed in (or for) thy courage; macte for mactus*, because *tū* is here almost more of a vocative than a nominative.

⁴ Supply *nē* after *cavē*, *beware lest you lose = beware of losing.*

⁵ Connects *mūniant* and *firment*.

⁶ Imperative from *patior*.

⁷ Account for the case.

⁸ From *occidō*. But *occīsī* in the next clause, from *occidō*.

⁹ *For; in* expresses purpose.

Compare each of the foregoing examples in the left-hand column with the corresponding one on the right. Observe that each dependent clause in the right-hand column begins with an interrogative word, and contains the substance of a question, though not a question in form. Such dependent clauses are called **INDIRECT QUESTIONS**. Observe the mood, and how it is translated. •

380. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Indirect questions take the subjunctive.

1. The commonest interrogative words introducing indirect questions are *quis*, *who?* *cūr*, *why?* *num*, *whether?* *ubi*, *where?* *quō*, *whither?* *unde*, *whence?* *quot*, *how many?*

381.

EXERCISES

Read again the remarks and rule, page 165.

I. 1. *Scit quid agās.* 2. *Scit quid ēgeris.* 3. *Sciēbat quid agerēs.* 4. *Sciēbat quid ēgissēs.* 5. *Audīvī quid agat.* 6. *Audīvī quid ēgerit.* 7. *Audīvī quid ageret.* 8. *Audīvī quid ēgisset.* 9. *Audīveram quid ageret.* 10. *Audīveram quid ēgisset.*

II. 1. *Volō scīre unde vēneris.* 2. *Dīc¹ mihi num meam sorōrem vīderis.* 3. *Nesciō unde veniant tot milītēs.* 4. *Quaeram num omnia fēlīciter ēvēnerint.* 5. *Speculābimur quot hominēs in urbem ineant et quot exeant.* 6. *Nāsīca hominem interrogāvit num manibus ambulāre solitus esset.* 7. *Quaerēbat quae² cīvitatēs in armīs essent.* 8. *Quīdam homō interrogātus est quae nāvēs essent tūtissimae.* 9. *Dīc mihi quid in manū habeās.* 10. *Caesar omnem equitātum mittit, quī videat³ quās in partēs⁴ hostēs iter faciant.*

III. 1. He sees who is walking, has walked. 2. They see who are walking, have walked. 3. We shall see who walk, have walked. 4. We knew why he was laughing, had laughed. 5. You knew why I was laughing, had laughed.

¹ See page 150, note. ³ Compare 365. I. 2 and 4.

² See 279. 3.

⁴ *Into what parts = in what direction.*

6. They wondered why he was praised, had been praised.
 7. They will wonder why I am praised, have been praised.
 8. Do you not wonder why we are praised, have been praised?
 9. I wonder whether he has been admonished, is being admonished.
 10. They wondered whether we were admonished, had been admonished.

382.

VOCABULARY

interrogō, 1, *ask, inquire.*

Nāsica, -ae, m., *Nasica*, surname of one of the Scipios.

num,¹ interrog. adv., *whether*, introducing indirect questions.

rogō, 1, *ask, question.*

sciō, 4, scīvī, scitum, *know.*

soleō,² 2, solitus, *be accustomed.*

speculor, 1, *spy out, watch.*

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe.*

interrogō, *ask a question, inquire*, and nearly limited to that sense.
 rogō, *ask a question*, but much more commonly *ask a favor, make a request.*

quaerō, *ask a question*, but much used in the sense of *seeking to gain or to know, searching into.*

CHAPTER LIX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: WISHES AND CONDITIONS

383. *Examine the following:—*

1. Utinam pater veniat! *would that father would come! I wish father would come! O that father would come!*
2. Sī pater veniat, laetus sim, *if father should come, I should be glad.*
3. Utinam pater adesset! *would that father were here!*
4. Sī pater adesset, laetus essem, *if father were here, I should be glad.*
5. Utinam pater adfuisset! *would that father had been here!*
6. Sī pater adfuisset, laetus fuisset, *if father had been here, I should have been glad.*

¹ Introducing direct questions, it does not usually admit of translation, but indicates that the answer *no* is expected. ² See p. 177, n. 2.

(1) In 1 and 2 what time do the words *would come*, *should come*, *should be*, point to? Plainly not to the past, nor to the instant present, but vaguely to the future; and this vague future is expressed in Latin by the present subjunctive. The wish and the condition referring to the future *may be* fulfilled; the father *may* come.

(2) In 3 and 4 the wish and condition refer to the present; and this present is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive. The wish and condition are plainly *contrary to what is the fact*; the father *is*, in fact, *not present*.

(3) In 5 and 6 the tense of the subjunctive offers no difficulty. The wish and condition are plainly *contrary to what was the fact*; the father *was*, in fact, *not present*.

384. RULE OF SYNTAX. — In wishes and conditions the present subjunctive is used of what *may come* true, the imperfect subjunctive of what *is not* true, the pluperfect subjunctive of what *was not* true. The same mood is regularly employed in the conclusion of such conditional sentences.

The indicative is not used in wishes. The use of the indicative in conditional sentences is easily understood.

385. Examine the following:—

1. *Sī pater adest, bene est, if father is present, it is well.*
2. *Sī pater aderat, bene erat, if father was present, it was well.*
3. *Sī pater aderit, bene erit, if father shall be present,¹ it will be well.*

Observe that in examples 1 and 2 a condition is stated without implying anything. In example 3, as the time is future, that which is supposed *may be* fulfilled. This form, then, of stating a supposition is almost exactly equivalent to that of the present subjunctive in **383**; it is only a livelier way of putting it.

¹ In English we commonly use a present form in such conditions that refer to the future. Thus we say, *If he is (to-morrow, next week, etc.) present,* *it will be well.* Do not be deceived, when translating into Latin, by this apparent present. See if the conclusion contains a future.

386.

EXERCISES¹

I. 1. Sī victōriam certam videam, nunquam pūgnem.
 2. Sī mē virum bonum jūdicārēs,² nōn mē corrumpere vellēs.² 3. Dictātor,³ sī adfuisset, rem nōn melius gessisset.
 4. Varrō, sī Carthāginiēnsium dux fuisset, temeritātis poenās dedisset.⁴ 5. Sī patrem tuum crās videam, quid dīcat?
 6. Nōn profectus essem, nisi Caesar jussisset. 7. Sī rēctē faciās, laudēris. 8. Sī maneat Mārcus, gaudeāmus; sīn autem eat, tamen eum laudēmus. 9. Sī leō accēderet,⁵ omnēs fugerent. 10. Utinam frāter meus vīveret clāssemque iterum dūceret! 11. Utinam māter nōbīs fābulam nārret! 12. Utinam tēcum⁶ in agrīs ambulāvissem!

II.⁷ 1. Would that I were walking in the fields with you to-day! 2. I wish you had been walking⁸ with me⁶ yesterday. 3. O take⁹ a walk with us in the fields to-morrow! 4. If you should see victory certain, my friend, would you not fight? 5. I should not now be setting out if Cæsar did not order it. 6. If you were acting rightly, you would be praised. 7. If you had acted rightly, you would have been praised. 8. I wish⁹ you would act rightly, so as to¹⁰ be praised. 9. If we should see a lion, we should flee.

¹ In translating these sentences, render the present subjunctive in such a way as to indicate vaguely future time; thus, *videam... pūgnem*, *should see... should fight*.

² Compare 383. 4, and read again 383 (2).

³ Notice the position of this word, which is the subject of *gessisset*. It may be translated as it stands, first.

⁴ *Given punishments of = paid the penalty for.*

⁵ If a lion were coming, not were

to come, which would be expressed by the present subjunctive.

⁶ See 265. 3.

⁷ In turning these sentences into Latin, do not be misled as to the real time of the verbs; *were walking*, in the first sentence, denotes present time. Read again the examples, 383, and the remarks. See also the varied translation of the first example.

⁸ Compare I. 12.

⁹ Compare 383. 1.

¹⁰ Ut. See 352.

10. I wish I had seen a huge lion. 11. If my brother¹ were living, he would now be commanding the fleet. 12. Would that your brother were alive!

387.

VOCABULARY

ac-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum [ad],
go or come near, approach.

cor-rumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptum
[com], break in pieces, destroy;
corrupt, bribe.

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dīcō],
chief magistrate, dictator.

immānis, -e, adj., huge, immense.

jūdicō, 1 [jūdex], judge, deem.

rēctē, adv. [rēctus], rightly.

sīn, conj. [sī, nē], but if, if how-
ever, if.

temeritās, -ātis, f. [temerē],
chance; rashness.

utī-nam, adv., would that, O that,
I wish that.

388.

COLLOQUIUM

JŌHANNĒS ET JACŌBUS

Jo. Dīc mihi, Jacōbe, unde veniās, quid ēgeris.

Ja. Rūre veniō, ubi fēriārum partem ēgī. Et tū?
vacation spent

Jo. Ego iter cum parentibus fēcī, neque sciō quandō
domum revertar.
return when

Ja. Utinam ego quoque iter faciam! Sī parentēs ades-
sent, iter mēcum facerent.

Jo. Ego itineris diūturnitāte sum dēfessus, et gaudērem
sī in scholā essem.
length

Ja. Venī mēcum in scholam et unā ēdiscāmus.
together let us learn

Jo. Tēcum libenter in scholam ibō, sed cōgnōscere velim
quī sit praeceptor.
know should like

Ja. Praeceptor est vir doctissimus. Vim Latīnī scit,
atque semper est benīgnus, mōrōsus nunquam.
ever so much pleasant

Jo. Quid tē docet?

¹ Imitate the order in I. 3 and 4; the subject might, however, be placed after sī.

Ja. Docet nōs modum subjūctīvum. Herī, ^{for example} exemplī causā, nōbīs dē subjūctīvō in interrogātiōnibus indirēctīs expli-
cāvit. ^{questions}

Jo. Multa dē interrogātiōnibus indirēctīs audīvī, neque unquam intellegere potuī. Fēcitne praeceptor ut tū ista intellegerēs?

Ja. Sānē, mī amīce, et ego, ut opīnor, faciam ut tū quoque ^{yes indeed} eadem intellegās. Sī dīcam, *Ubi est frāter tuus?* ^{question} interrogā-
tum sit dīrēctum; sīn autem, *Nesciō ubi sit frāter,* interrogā-
tum sit indirēctum. Intellegisne?

Jo. Satis intellegō. Sed in hunc diem hāctenus.
_{so-so} _{for} _{enough}

CHAPTER LX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE

389. Learn the future imperative, active and passive, of the regular and irregular verbs, and review the present imperative.

390. In the last lesson occurred the first illustrations of the subjunctive not in dependent clauses, that is, in wishes and in the principal clauses of conditional sentences. The subjunctive is similarly used in commands and appeals, and when so used is called the **HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE**.

391. *Examine the following paradigms:—*

COMMANDS AND APPEALS

POSITIVE	NEGATIVE
moneam, <i>let me advise.</i>	nē moneam, <i>let me not advise.</i>
monē, or moneās, <i>advise.</i>	nē monueris, <i>do not advise.</i>
{ moneat, { <i>let him advise, or</i>	nē moneat, { <i>let him not, or he</i>
{ monuerit, { <i>he shall advise.</i>	{ nē monuerit, { <i>shall not, advise.</i>
moneāmus, <i>let us advise.</i>	nē moneāmus, <i>let us not advise.</i>
monēte, <i>advise.</i>	ne monueritis, <i>do not advise.</i>
{ moneant, { <i>let them advise,</i>	nē moneant, { <i>let them not, or</i>
{ monuerint, { <i>or they shall</i>	{ nē monuerint, { <i>they shall not,</i>
advise.	advise.

(1) Observe that positive commands and appeals are expressed by the subjunctive only, except in the second person; and negative commands and appeals, by the subjunctive with *nē*.¹

(2) Observe also that the present and perfect subjunctive, in the third person, are used without essential difference of meaning; and that in *negative commands and appeals in the second person* the perfect² only³ is given.

(3) The future imperative is mostly confined to laws and maxims: *Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelitō*, *thou shalt not bury a dead man within the city.* *Percontatōrem fugitō*, *nam garrulus idem est*, *avoid a questioner, for he is a babbler too.*

(4) The preceding paradigms, with the meanings, should be thoroughly committed to memory.

392.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Cotīdiē scrībe ad mē, mī fili, quid fēceris. 2. Puer ad patrem scrībit quid fēcerit. 3. Mittāmus nūntium ad Caesarem quī⁴ eum moneat. 4. Nē mēcum in litore hodiē ambulāveris. 5. Nē puerī incautī cultrōs habeant. 6. Imperātor cōsiliū cōficiat. 7. Nōlīte, mīlitēs, hostiū exercitū timēre. 8. Nē, mīlitēs, hostiū exercitū timueritis. 9. Omnia sua⁵ sēcum⁶ incolae portāverint. 10. Mihi aurēs praebēte, discipulī, et dīligenter audīte quae dīcam. 11. Nē id quod est falsum dīxeris. 12. Leō dīxit: Restat pars quarta, at nē quisquam⁷ audeat eam tangere.

II. 1. They shall not send⁸ a messenger. 2. Let no one touch⁹ the fourth part. 3. Touch not¹⁰ the fourth part of the

¹ Prohibitions are more commonly expressed by *nōlī* (*nōlīte*) with the infinitive. See 318. I. 5 and 6.

² This form of the subjunctive in this use is here called the *perfect*, in deference to custom; it is really the *subjunctive of the future perfect*.

³ The imperative so used is not common, and not to be imitated.

⁴ Compare 365. I. 2 and 4.

⁵ *Omnia sua*, *their all*.

⁶ See 265. 3.

⁷ *Let no one*. See 279. 6.

⁸ *Nē* with perfect subjunctive.

⁹ See I. 12.

¹⁰ Express in two ways.

booty. 4. Let the pupils listen attentively to the words of the master. 5. Do not listen,¹ boys, to the counsels of the bad. 6. Write daily to your parents what² you are doing. 7. Carry your books home³ with you and study diligently. 8. Do not forget¹ what⁴ has been said to you to-day. 9. Touch not¹ wine; let us not touch wine; they shall not touch wine. 10. Let us go out and carry our all with us.

393.

VOCABULARY

at, conj., *but*. Cf. *autem* (214).
audeō,⁵ 2, *ausus sum*, *dare*, *be bold*.
cōn-ficiō, 3, *-fēcī*, *-fectum* [*com*,
faciō], *make*, *accomplish*, *carry out*.

cotīdiē, adv. [*quot, diēs*], *daily*.

at, *but on the contrary*, *but for all that*.

sed, *but*, without special emphasis.

autem, *but*, often to be rendered *however*; weaker than *at* or *sed*.

falsus, -a, -um, adj. [*fallō*, *deceive*], *deceptive*, *false*.

in-cautus, -a, -um, adj. [*caveō*], *incautious*, *heedless*.

re-stō, 1, *restiti*, —, *stay behind*, *remain*.

tangō, 3, *tetigī*, *tāctum*, *touch*.

394.

FOR TRANSLATION

MĀRCUS PORCIUS CATŌ, PUER

M. Porcius Catō jam puer⁶ invictum animī rōbur ostendit. Cum in domō Drūsī avunculī suī educārētur, Latīnī dē cīvītātē impetrandā⁷ Rōmam vērunt. Popēdius, Latīnōrum princeps, quī Drūsī hospes erat, Catōnem puerum rogāvit ut Latīnōs apud avunculum adjuvāret. Catō vultū cōstantī

¹ Express in two ways.

² Compare L. 10.

³ See 336.

⁴ Id quod.

⁵ See page 177, note 2.

⁶ Jam puer, *already a boy* = *even in boyhood*.

⁷ Dē cīvītātē impetrandā, *respecting the citizenship to be obtained* = *to obtain citizenship*.

negāvit id sē factūrum.¹ Iterum deinde ac saepius interpellātus² in prōpositō perstitit. Tunc Popēdius puerum in excelsam aedium partem levātum tenuit,³ et sē abjectūrum⁴ inde minātus est, nisi precibus obtemperāret; neque hōc metū⁵ ā sententiā eum potuit dīmovere. Tunc Popēdius exclāmāsse⁶ fertur:⁷ “Grātulēmur⁸ nōbīs,⁹ Latīnī, hunc esse tam parvum; sī enim senātor esset,¹⁰ nē spērāre quidem¹¹ jūs¹² cīvitātis licēret.¹⁰

CHAPTER LXI

THE INFINITIVE

395. Learn the infinitives of the regular and irregular verbs (73, 86, 112, 180, 223, 235, etc.).

396. *Examine the following:—*

1. Errāre est hūmānum, *to err is human.*
2. Possum vidēre, *I am able to see.*
3. Volō legere, *I wish to read.*
4. Eam sequī sē jubet, *he orders her to follow him(self).*
5. Sātūrnus in Ītaliā vēnisse dīcitur, *Saturn is said to have come into Italy.*

Observe that in each sentence the infinitive is used in Latin precisely as in English. This use of the infinitive, as offering no difficulty, has been tacitly illustrated in some of the foregoing exercises.

¹ Negāvit . . . factūrum, *denied himself to be going to do it=refused to do it.*

² Perfect participle. See amātus, page 34.

³ Puerum . . . levātum tenuit, *held the raised-up boy = raised up and held the boy.*

⁴ Sē abjectūrum, *himself to be going to throw (him) down—that he would throw (him) down.*

⁵ Hōc metū, *by this fear = by fear of this.*

⁶ Exclāmāsse = exclāmāvisse.

⁷ Fertur = dīcitur.

⁸ Grātulēmur, *let us congratulate.* See 391.

⁹ Nōbīs. See 343.

¹⁰ Esset . . . licēret. See 383.

¹¹ Nē . . . quidem, *not even.*

¹² Jūs cīvitātis. Cf. cīvitāte, line 2.

397.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Cūr mē vīs corrumpere? 2. Timēre incipiēbat. 3. Soror flēre incipiēbat. 4. Vincere scīs,¹ victōriā² ūti nescīs. 5. Tarquinius Cūmās sē contulisse dīcitur. 6. Pontem jubet rescindī. 7. Dulce est prō patriā mori. 8. Catō esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat. 9. Puerōs decet tacēre. 10. Tūne Mariū audēbis occīdere? 11. Nōbīs est in animō³ per prōvinciam iter facere. 12. Caesar ab urbe proficīscī matūrat.

II. 1. Pyrrhus wanted to bribe Fabricius. 2. Fabricius could not⁴ be turned from (the path of) honor. 3. Why did you begin to weep? 4. Did Hannibal know how⁵ to conquer? 5. Tarquin was said to have besieged Rome. 6. Rome is said to have been besieged. 7. Seeing is believing.⁶ 8. The consul was ordered⁷ to tear down the bridge. 9. The bridge is said to have been torn down. 10. It is pleasant⁸ to live for (one's) friends. 11. We intend to tear down the bridge. 12. He is said to have departed from Italy.

398.

VOCABULARY

ā-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum, *turn away from, avert.*

crēdō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *trust, believe; w. dat. (343).*

decet, 2, decuit, —, *impers. (page 200), it is becoming, fitting, proper.*

honestās, -ātis, F. [honestus], *honor, integrity, honesty.*

in-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], *(take in hand), begin.*

matūrō, 1 [matūrus, ripe], *hasten.*

moriōr,⁹ 3, mortuus, *die.*

pōns, pontis, M., *bridge.*

re-scindō, 3, -scidī, -scissum, *tear away, tear down, break down.*

soror, -ōris, F., *sister.*

¹ You know how.

² See 304.

³ It is in mind to us = we intend.

⁴ Could not = was not able.

⁵ See I. 4.

⁶ To see is to believe. Cf. I. 7.

⁷ Use jubeō.

⁸ Neuter. Cf. I. 7.

⁹ Morior has future participle moritūrus.

CHAPTER LXII

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

399. *Examine the following: —*

DIRECT

1. *Homō est, he is a man.*
2. *Ignis calet, fire is hot.*
3. *Amīcus adest, (his) friend is present.*
4. *Mundus ā Deō regitur, the world is ruled by God.*

INDIRECT

1. *Dīcit sē hominem esse, he says that he is a man.*
2. *Sentīmus ignem calēre, we perceive that fire is hot.*
3. *Putat amīcum adesse, he thinks that his friend is present.*
4. *Scīmus mundum ā Deō regī, we know that the world is ruled by God.*

Notice the difference between the direct and indirect forms of statement.

In the second group, compare the English with the Latin. Observe (1) that after the leading verb there is nothing in the Latin corresponding to the conjunction *that*; (2) that, while the English retains the nominative and indicative of the direct form, the Latin has instead the accusative and infinitive.

The second group illustrates the *indirect discourse*, so called because what some one says, thinks, or knows, is stated in the dependent clause *indirectly*.

400. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The accusative and infinitive are regularly used after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving*, and the like.

401. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.

402. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

PRESENT

dīcit	} tē scribere,	{	he says that you are writing.
dīcet			he will say that you are writing.
dīxit			he said that you were writing.
dīcit	} epistolam scribī,	{	he says that the letter is being written.
dīcet			he will say that the letter is being written.
dīxit			he said that the letter was being written.

FUTURE

dīcit	} tē scriptūrum esse,	{	he says that you will write.
dīcet			he will say that you will write.
dīxit			he said that you would write.
dīcit	} epistolam scrip- tum irī, ¹	{	he says that the letter will be written.
dīcet			he will say that the letter will be written.
dīxit			he said that the letter would be written.

PERFECT

dīcit	} tē scripsisse,	{	he says that you wrote (have written).
dīcet			he will say that you wrote (have written).
dīxit			he said that you wrote (had written).
dīcit	} epistolam scriptam esse,	{	he says that the letter was (has been) written.
dīcet			he will say that the letter was (has been) written.
dīxit			he said that the letter was (had been) written.

A study of the above table will show that the present infinitive denotes the *same* time as that indicated by the tense of the leading verb; that the future infinitive denotes time *after* that indicated by the leading verb; and that the perfect infinitive denotes time *before* that indicated by the leading verb.

403. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The tenses of the infinitive refer to present, future, or past time, *relatively* to the time of the leading verb.

¹ More commonly, *fore ut epistula* with subjunctive. Also see page 192, note 1.

404.

EXERCISES

It will be best to translate each of the following sentences twice; first, literally, just as they stand, then into good English: thus, *History relates two sons to have been to Cornelia* = *history relates that Cornelia had two sons*. The eighth thus: *The ambassador said himself a public messenger to be of the Roman people* = *the ambassador said that he was, etc.*

I. 1. *Historia nārrat duōs filiōs fuisse Cornēliae.* 2. *Cornēlia dixit filiōs suōs esse ōrnāmenta sua.* 3. *Scīmus matrēs filiōs amāre.* 4. *Trāditum¹ est Caesarem ā Brūtō et Cassiō occīsum esse.* 5. *Certum est cāsū bonum fierī nēminem.²* 6. *Sciō haec vēra esse.* 7. *Mārcellus Hannibalem vinci posse docuit.* 8. *Lēgātus dīxit sē pūblicum nūntium esse populi Rōmānī.* 9. *Thalēs aquam dīxit esse initium rērum.* 10. *Trāditum est Homērum fuisse caecum.* 11. *Lēgātus dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī.*

Before translating into Latin, cast each sentence mentally into the Latin form; thus the first sentence will be, *It is said two sons to have been to Cornelia*, or *Cornelia two sons to have had*; and the seventh, *We know you the truth to be about to tell*. This practice is of capital importance.

II. 1. *It is said that Cornelia had two sons.* 2. *Have we not heard that Cornelia had jewels?* 3. *I think that you will have jewels.* 4. *We know that Cornelia loved her boys.* 5. *Do not³ all mothers think that their sons are their jewels?* 6. *I think that the moon will be full to-morrow.* 7. *We know that you will tell the truth.* 8. *History relates that Hannibal was defeated by Marcellus.* 9. *It is related that Homer wrote poems.* 10. *I know that this has been done.* 11. *He said that the enemy held the mountain.*

¹ In the compound tenses of the passive voice the perfect participle occasionally loses its idea of time and becomes virtually an

adjective. Here *trāditum est* = *it is (a thing) related*.

² Subject of *fieri*.

³ *Nōne*.

405.

EXERCISES

Read the first paragraph, page 191.

I. 1. Jūrāte vōs rem publicam nōn dēsertūrōs esse. 2. Vōx quondam audīta est Rōmam ā Gallīs captum¹ irī. 3. Certum est Hannibalem ā Scīpiōne victum esse. 4. Ferunt² eō diē lūnam fuisse plēnām. 5. Cum Nāsīca ad Ennium vēnisset, servus dīxit Ennium domī nōn esse. 6. Nāsīca sēnsit illum³ intus esse. 7. Postea cum ad Nāsīcam vēnisset Ennius, exclāmāvit ipse Nāsīca sē⁴ domī nōn esse. 8. Catō dīcere solēbat acerbōs inimīcōs saepe vērūm dīcere. 9. Abī, nūntiā tē vīdisse Gājūm Mariūm in Carthāginis ruīnīs sedentem (*sitting*). 10. Mātrōna quaedam dietitābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre.⁴

See second paragraph, page 191. The first sentence, expressed in the Latin idiom, will be, *Ennius says himself at home not to be*; the third, *He thinks himself at home to be about to be*; the fourth, *Cato thought his friends the truth not always to speak* (compare I. 8).

II. 1. Ennius says that he is not at home. 2. He said that he had not been at home. 3. He thinks that he shall be at home to-morrow. 4. Cato thought that his friends did not always tell him⁵ the truth. 5. It is evident that the world was not made by chance. 6. We have sworn that we will not desert our leader. 7. The soldiers swore that they had not deserted the republic. 8. It was evident that the enemy was being defeated.⁶ 9. Do you not know that the enemy are near? 10. It is certain that they are advancing towards the town.

¹ Captum, being a supine (433), does not change its form to agree with Rōmam.

² Ferunt = dīcunt.

³ Observe the difference between illum in 6 and sē in 7.

⁴ To have thirty years = to be thirty years old.

⁵ Him = himself; not accusative.

⁶ Notice that the time of the dependent verb is present, with reference to that of the leading verb.

406.

VOCABULARY

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. [ācer],
harsh, bitter.

arbitror, 1, think, suppose, believe.

cōn-stat, 1, -stitit, —, impers.

(415), it is evident, clear.

dē-serō, 3, -uī, -tum, desert, abandon.

Ennius, -ī, m., Ennius, a Roman poet.

ex-clāmō, 1, cry out, exclaim.

Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul.

historia, -ae, f., history.

in-imīcus, -a, -um, adj. [amīcus],
unfriendly, hostile; noun, an enemy (172).

intus, adv. [in], inside, within.

jūrō, 1 [jūs], swear, take an oath.

Mārcellus, -ī, m., Marcellus, a Roman general.

mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter], wife,
lady, matron.

nūntiō, 1 [nūntius], announce,
report.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. [ōrnō], orna-
ment, jewel (345. 9).

populus, -ī, m., people.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus],
(pertaining to the people), pub-
lic (345. 19).

quondam, adv., once, formerly.

sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsū, feel,
know (by the senses), see, perceive.

tantum, adv. [tantus], only.

Thalēs, -īs, m., Thales, a Greek
philosopher.

trā-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum [trāns],
give over, deliver; relate, recount.

vērūm, -ī, n. [vērus], the truth.

407.

FOR TRANSLATION

NĀSĪCA ET ENNIUS

Nāsica,¹ cum ad poētā Ennium vēnisset,² eīque³ ab ōstiō quaerentī⁴ Ennium ancilla dīxisset eum domī⁵ nōn esse, sēn-
sit illam⁶ dominī jūssū dīxisse, et illum⁷ intus esse. Paucīs
post diēbus, cum ad Nāsicā vēnisset Ennius et eum ā⁸
jānuā quaereret, exclāmat Nāsica sē domī nōn esse. Tum
Ennius, "Quid ? ego nōn cōgnōscō vōcem," inquit,⁹ "tuam ?"

¹ Subject of sēnsit.

⁵ See 336.

² Ad . . . vēnisset, had come to,
that is, to call on.

⁶ Refers to ancilla, and is the
subject accusative of dīxisse.

³ To him, dat. of is. See 270. 2.

⁷ That is, Ennius.

⁴ Pres. part. of quaerō, in the
dative with eī, to him asking for.

⁸ Ā jānuā, at the door.

⁹ Observe the position of inquit.

Hic¹ Nāsica: "Homō es impudēns. Ego, cum tē quaerem, ancillae² tuae crēdidī tē³ domī nōn esse; tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsī?"⁴

CHAPTER LXIII

PARTICIPLES

408. Learn the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.

1. For declension of a present active participle, see **165**. The ablative singular generally ends in *e*, but in *i* when the participle is used as an adjective.

2. The other participles, ending in *us*, *a*, *um*, are declined like *bonus* (**71**).

409. *Examine the following:—*

- | | | |
|------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| 1. Fortissimē dīmicāns | $\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{cadit,} & \text{he falls} \\ \text{cadet,} & \text{he will fall} \\ \text{cecidit,} & \text{he fell} \end{array} \right\}$ | fighting most
bravely. |
|------------------------|---|---------------------------|
2. Hostēs adortus prōfligāvit, *he attacked and routed (having attacked, he routed) the enemy.*
 3. Eī advenientī aquila pilleum sustulit, *an eagle took off his cap as he was approaching (to him approaching).*
 4. Leōnidās superātus cēdere nōluit, *Leonidas, (though) overpowered, would not yield.*
 5. Rōmā expulsus Athēnās ibit, *(if) expelled from Rome, he will go to Athens.*
 6. Epistulam sibi commissam dētulit, *he delivered the letter (which had been) intrusted to him.*
 7. Eā rē commōtus in Ītaliā rediit, *he returned into Italy (because he was) alarmed at this event.*
 8. Nōs moritūrī tē salūtāmus, *we, (who are) about to die, salute you.*
 9. Ob virginēs raptās, *on account of the seizure of the maidens (maidens seized).*

¹ An adverb, *hereupon*.

² Dative after *crēdidī*. See

³ Subject accusative of *esse*

See **401**.

⁴ Emphasizes *mihi* (**270. 4.**)

Study the above examples with reference first to the tenses of the participles, and observe that the time of the participles is present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the leading verb.

Notice how the participle is translated in each example ; only in the first is it best translated literally. What the Latin expresses by a participle we very often express by a clause beginning *as, though, if, because*, etc., by a relative clause, or by a verb coördinate with one following.

410.

EXERCISES

It will be best to translate every sentence literally, then into good English.

I. 1. Remus irrīdēns mūrum trānsiliit. 2. Abī hinc, oblīta¹ frātrum, oblīta¹ patriae. 3. Lēgātō rēs repetentī² superbē respōnsum est³ ā Latīnīs. 4. Faliscī statim beneficiō victī portās Rōmānīs aperuērunt. 5. Filius Manlī Latīnum ex equō excussum trānsfixit.⁴ 6. Rōmānī necessitatē victī lēgātōs mittunt. 7. Hunc Fabricius vinctum reducī iussit. 8. Hannibal causam bellī quaerēns Saguntum ēvertit. 9. Eā rē commōtus in Italiam rediit armīs injūriam acceptam vindicātūrus.⁵ 10. Missōs⁶ ā senātū lēgātōs honōrificē excēpit.

Cast each of the following sentences into the Latin idiom before attempting to translate. Thus, *Romulus killed Remus laughing at* (accusative in agreement with *Remus*); *Horatius stabbed his sister forgetful* (oblītam); *to the ambassadors demanding*, etc.

II. 1. Romulus killed Remus because he laughed at his wall. 2. Horatius stabbed his sister with his sword because

¹ Feminine of the perfect participle oblītus, from oblīvīscor. Translate, *Thou who hast forgotten* (lit., *having forgotten*).

² *To the ambassador demanding* = *to the ambassador who demanded*, or *when the ambassador demanded*.

³ Respōnsum est, *it was replied* = *answer was made*.

⁴ Excussum trānsfixit, *struck off and stabbed*. See 409. 2.

⁵ *About to avenge*, i.e., *in order to avenge*.

⁶ Compare 409. 6.

she was forgetful of her country. 3. The Latins answered the ambassadors¹ haughtily, when they demanded restitution. 4. The Gauls entered the open houses. 5. To the Romans, as they came out of the pass, the light was sadder than death² itself. 6. The old men went forth to meet³ Manlius¹ as he was returning to Rome. 7.⁴ They bound the prisoner and brought him back to the city. 8. The letter which had been written by the boy was delivered. 9. The Romans never despaired, though they were often defeated.⁵ 10. Cæsar received the senate sitting,⁶ when they came⁷ to him.

411.

VOCABULARY

com-moveō, 2, **-mōvī**, **-mōtum**,
shake, disturb, excite, alarm.

dē-ferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, (*bring down*), *deliver.*

dē-spērō, 1, *be hopeless, despair.*

ē-vertō, 3, **-tī**, **-sum**, *overturn, overthrow, destroy.*

ex-cutiō, 3, **-cussī**, **-cussum** [**quatiō**], *shake out, strike off, drive away, cast out.*

Faliscī, **-ōrum**, **M.**, *the Faliscans, a people of Etruria.*

hinc, **adv.** [**hīc**], *from this place, hence.*

ir-rīdeō, 2, **-rīsī**, **-rīsum** [**in**], *laugh at, ridicule, jest, mock.*

Latīnus, **-a**, **-um** [**Latium**], *Latin; noun, a Latin.*

necessitās, **-ātis**, **F.** [**necesse**],
necessity, constraint!

ob-viam, **adv.**, *in the way; with verb of motion, meet; w. dat.*

pateō, 2, **-uī**, —, *lie open, be open; part. patēns, open.*

porta, **-ae**, **F.**, *gate, door. Cf. jānuā.*

re-dūcō, 3, **-xī**, **-ductum**, *lead back, bring back.*

senior, **-ōris**, **M. & F.** (**comp. of senex, old**), *elder, old person.*

statim, **adv.** [**stō**], (**standing there**), *on the spot, immediately, at once.*

superbē, **adv.** [**superbus**], *proudly, haughtily.*

trāns-figō, 3, **-fixī**, **-fixum**, *pierce through, pierce, stab.*

vindicō, 1, *claim, avenge, punish.*

¹ Dative.

² See 211, 212.

³ To meet, obviam.

⁴ Compare I. 7.

⁵ Not the last word: *the Romans, often defeated, etc.*

⁶ In agreement with *Cæsar*.

⁷ *Had come.* See 373.

CHAPTER LXIV

PARTICIPLES: ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

412. *Examine the following:—*

Sōle oriente, fugiunt tenebrae,	{ the sun rising, when the sun rises, at the rising of the sun,	{ the shadows flee away.
Datō signō, virginēs raptae sunt,	{ the signal having been given, when the signal was given, at the given signal,	{ the maidens were seized.
Eō rēgnante, bellum exortum est,	{ he reigning, in his reign, while he was reigning,	{ a war arose.
Cōnsul, bellō cōnfec- tō, Rōmam rediit,	{ the war having been finished, when the war was finished, having finished the war,	{ the consul re- turned to Rome.
Tē duce, hostēs vin- cēmus,	{ you (being) leader, if you are our leader, with you for a leader,	{ we shall conquer the enemy.
Messālā et Pisōne cōnsulibus,	{ M. and P. (being) consuls. when M. and P. were consuls. in the consulship of M. and P.	
Serēnō caelō,	{ the sky (being) clear. when the sky is clear. in a clear sky.	

1. The foregoing examples illustrate the very common construction called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

2. In the first four examples there is a noun (or pronoun) in the ablative, and a participle agreeing with it. In the last three there is no participle expressed, but instead, another noun or an adjective.

3. Carefully compare the Latin with the English translation, and observe that each ablative absolute may be rendered by a clause beginning with *when*, *while*, or *if* (in other instances *because*, *although*, etc.), the Latin noun in the ablative becoming the subject of the clause in English, and that this noun refers to a *different person or thing* from the subject of the leading verb.

4. We may also sometimes translate the participle in the ablative absolute by a verb coördinate with a following verb. Thus the fourth might be translated, *The consul finished the war and returned.*

5. If I wish to express in the Latin, *While he was reigning, he carried on war*, he being the subject of both the principal and subordinate clauses, I say, *Is rēgnāns bellum gessit*; but if I wish to express, *While he was reigning, war arose*, he being subject of the subordinate clause, and *war* of the principal, I use the ablative absolute, thus, *Eō rēgnante, bellum exortum est.*

6. In the fourth example notice the change of idiom. We might say, *The consul, having finished the war, returned to Rome*; but the Latin has no perfect active participle corresponding to *having finished*: therefore, in Latin the perfect passive participle must be used in the ablative with the noun *bellum*. The same idea may, of course, be expressed by a *cum* clause. See 372.

7. From the nature of deponent verbs (passive form with active meaning), it will be seen that the English participle with *having* may be directly expressed in Latin, if there is a deponent verb of the right meaning; thus, *Cæsar, having encouraged his men, Caesar milites hortatus.*

8. Most instances of the so-called ablative absolute may be resolved as the ablative of *time, means, cause*, etc.

413.

EXERCISES

Translate each ablative absolute in as many ways as possible.

I. 1. Strictō gladiō, trānsfixit puellam. 2. Expulsīs rēgibus, duo cōsulēs creātī sunt. 3. Quō factō,¹ mūtata est proelī fortūna. 4. Occupātā Siciliā, quid postea āctūrus es? 5. Hannibal, vīsō frātris occīsī capite, dīxit: "Āgnōscō fortūnam Carthāginis." 6. Hīs parātīs rēbus, Caesar milites nāvēs cōnscendere jubet. 7. Hōc factō, tūtus eris. 8. Alpibus superātīs, Hannibal in Italiā vēnit. 9. Cæsar, mortuō Sūllā, Rhodum sēcēdere statuit. 10. Dēlētīs Teutonibus, C. Marius in Cimbrōs sē convertit.

¹ When this had been done. What is it literally?

Before trying to translate the following sentences, consider well in each case what the probable Latin form of expression, or idiom, would be for the subordinate clause, adverbial phrase, etc.; thus, *When he had stabbed the girl* = *the girl (having been) stabbed*; *When Numa was king* = *Numa (being) king*; *By hurling their javelins* = *by the javelins hurled*.

II. 1. When he had stabbed the girl, he put by his sword. 2. On the expulsion of King Tarquin, Brutus and Collatinus were made consuls. 3. When Numa was king, the temple of Janus was built. 4. Cæsar, after he had overcome the Gauls, waged war with Pompey. 5. On the death of Cato, there was no longer¹ a republic. 6. Having learned these facts (things), he hastened against the enemy. 7. The soldiers, by hurling their javelins, broke the enemy's line. 8. Having held a levy, the consul sets out immediately for (*ad*) the army. 9. O my country, thou hast overcome my anger by employing a mother's entreaties. 10. If we do² this, we shall all be safe.

414.

VOCABULARY

ad-moveō, 2, -*mōvī*, -*mōtum*, (*move up, towards*), *apply, employ*.

cōgnōscō, 3, -*gnōvī*, -*gnitum* [*com*, (*g*)*nōscō*], *learn, recognize, know*.

Collātīnus, -*ī*, *m.*, *Collatinus*, surname of L. Tarquinius.

con-iciō, 3, -*jēcī*, -*jectum* [*jaciō*], (*throw together*), *throw, hurl*.

con-tendō, 3, -*dī*, -*tum*, (*draw tight*), *exert one's self, strive, hasten; contend*.

con-vertō, 3, -*tī*, -*sum*, *turn round, turn, change; sē convertere, turn one's self, turn*.

dēlēctus, -*ūs*, *m.* [*dēligō*, *choose out*], *selection, levy*.

dē-pōnō, 3, -*posuī*, -*positum*, *put down, put by, lay down*.

ex-pellō, 3, -*pulī*, -*pulsum*, *drive out or away, expel*.

Jānus, -*ī*, *m.*, *Janus*, the two-faced god.

per-fringō, 3, -*frēgī*, -*frāctum* [*frangō, break*], *break through, break*.

Rhodus, -*ī*, *f.*, *Rhodes*, an island in the Ægean.

sē-cēdō, 3, -*cessī*, -*cessum*, *go apart, withdraw, retire*.

statuō, 3, -*uī*, -*ūtum*, *put, place; think, believe, determine*.

stringō, 3, -*inxī*, *strictum*, (*draw tight*), *graze; draw, unsheathe*.

¹ No longer = *nūlla jam*.

² If we do this = *this done*.

CHAPTER LXV

IMPERSONAL VERBS

415. *Examine the following: —*

1. *Pluit, it rains.*
2. *Tonat, it thunders.*
3. *Mē pudet stultitiae meae, I am ashamed (it shames me) of my folly.*
4. *Eum paenitet sceleris, he repents (it repents him) of his crime.*
5. *Pūgnābātur, fighting was going on (it was being fought).*
6. *Caesari¹ pārendum² est, Caesar must be obeyed (it must be obeyed to Caesar).*
7. *Tibi licet exīre, you may go out (it is permitted to you to go out).*
8. *Hōc nōs facere oportet, we ought to do this (it behooves us to do this).*
9. *Caesari placuit ut lēgātōs mitteret, Caesar determined (it pleased Caesar) to send ambassadors.*

(1) Observe in each of the foregoing examples that the leading verb has no personal subject either expressed or implied. In 7, the subject of *licet* is the infinitive *exīre*; in 8, the phrase *hōc nōs facere* is the subject of *oportet*; in 9, the clause *ut lēgātōs mitteret* is the subject of *placuit*. In each of the first six the subject is contained in the verb itself.

(2) Some verbs, like *pluit, tonat, pudet, paenitet, licet*, the use of which is mostly confined to the third person singular, are called IMPERSONAL VERBS; many others, as in the examples *pūgnābātur, oportet, placuit*, are sometimes used impersonally.

(3) Examples 6 and 7 show one way of rendering *must* and *may* into Latin.

(4) In 3 and 4 notice the use of the accusative and genitive after the verbs.

416. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The impersonal verbs *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet* take the accusative

¹ See 417. 2.

² See 425 (4).

of the person and the genitive of the object or cause of the feeling.

Some examples of verbs used impersonally have already been given. See 362. I. 9; 370. I. 5; 410. I. 3.

417. *Examine the following:—*

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Frātrī persuādet, <i>he persuades his brother.</i> | Frātrī persuādētur, <i>his brother is persuaded.</i> |
| 2. Lēgibus pārēbant, <i>they obeyed the laws.</i> | Lēgibus pārēbātur, <i>the laws were obeyed.</i> |
| 3. Crēdit mihi, <i>he believes me.</i> | Mihi crēditur, <i>I am believed.</i> |
| 4. Amīcīs nocent, <i>they injure their friends.</i> | Amīcīs nocētur, <i>their friends are injured.</i> |

Observe that the verbs are intransitive. Compare the active and passive in the examples one by one. Observe that in each case the passive is expressed by putting the verb in the third person singular, leaving the indirect object of the active unchanged.

418. RULE OF SYNTAX. — Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the passive, the person or thing affected (the subject in English) being expressed by the dative.

419.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Omnēs decet rēctē agere. 2. Diū et ācritēr pūgnātum est. 3. Sequitur ut falsum sit. 4. Eōrum nōs miseret.¹ 5. Taedet mē vitāe. 6. Statuendum² vōbīs ante noctem est. 7. Licet mihi ex urbe ēgredī. 8. Nōs oportuit³ hōc facere. 9. Trāditum est Scīpiōnem doctum fuisse. 10. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. 11. Obsistitur illīs. 12. Cuī⁴ parcī potuit? 13. Persuādētur cōsuli.

¹ Compare 415. 3 and 4.

³ *It behooved us to do = we ought*

² *The duty of deciding is to you = to have done.*

⁴ See 343.

¹ *you must decide.* Compare 425. 7.

Observe that the following sentences are modelled closely on the foregoing, and on the illustrative examples. Cast each one into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words; thus the fifth sentence will be changed to *It disgusts me of the folly*, etc.

II. 1. It becomes us all to live well. 2. The battle will be fought bravely. 3. It followed that¹ the enemy were defeated. 4.² He was ashamed of his cowardice. 5. I am disgusted with the folly of the men. 6. What must we do? 7. What ought we to have done?³ 8.⁴ May I take the book? 9. It was reported to Cæsar that the enemy were approaching. 10. It resulted⁵ from these circumstances⁶ that¹ all were silent. 11. The winds are opposed with difficulty. 12. Can the soldier be spared? 13. Are not the laws of the republic obeyed?

420.

VOCABULARY

decet, 2, decuit, impers., it is
seemly, becoming, fitting.

ē-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior],
go out, go forth, march out. Cf.
exeō.

fortiter, adv. [fortis], bravely,
courageously.

licet, 2, -uit (-itum est), impers.,
it is permitted, it is lawful,
(one) may.

miseret, 2, -itum est, impers.
[miser], it makes miserable, it
excites pity, (one) pities.

ob-sistō, 3, -stitī, -stitum, oppose,
withstand, resist; w. dat.

oportet, 2, -uit, impers., it is

necessary, it behooves, (one)
must or ought.

parcō, 3, pepercī (parsī), par-
sum, spare; w. dat.

piget, 2, -uit (-itum est), im-
pers., it disgusts, (one) is dis-
gusted.

pudet, 2, -uit (-itum est), impers.,
it shames, (one) is ashamed.

pūgnō, 1 [pūgna], fight.

stultitia, -ae, f. [stultus, foolish],
folly (345. 11).

taedet, 2, -uit (taesum est),
impers., it disgusts, wearies,
(one) is disgusted.

vix, adv., hardly, with difficulty.

¹ A result clause, ut, etc.

² Compare 415. 3.

³ Compare I. 8.

⁴ Compare 415. 7.

⁵ Fiēbat.

⁶ Rēs.

421.

FOR TRANSLATION

THE DEATH OF THE PET SPARROW

Lugete, o Veneres Cupidinesque,
 Et quantumst¹ hominum² venustiorum.
 Passer mortuus est meae puellae,
 Passer, deliciae meae puellae,
 Quem plus illa oculis³ suis amabat:
 Nam mellitus erat suamque⁴ norat⁵
 Ipsa⁶ tam bene quam puella matrem
 Nec sese a gremio illius⁷ movebat,
 Sed circumsiliens modo huc modo illuc
 Ad solam dominam usque pipiabat.
 Qui⁸ nunc it per iter tenebricosum
 Illuc unde negant redire quemquam.⁹
 At vobis male sit,¹⁰ malae tenebrae
 Orci, quae omnia bella¹¹ devoratis:
 Tam bellum mihi¹² passerem abstulistis.
 O factum male!¹³ io miselle passer!
 Tua nunc opera¹⁴ meae puellae¹⁵
 Flendo turgiduli rubent¹⁶ ocelli. — *Catullus*.

¹ For *quantum est*. Translate, *all ye lovely ones, whoever ye are*.
 What is it literally?

² Depends on *quantum*. See 340.

³ Ablative after the comparative *plūs*. See 212.

⁴ Supply *dominam*.

⁵ For *nōverat*, but with the meaning of the imperfect.

⁶ With *puella*.

⁷ That is, *puellae*.

⁸ Refers to *passer*.

⁹ Subject accusative of *redire*. See 401 and 279. 6.

¹⁰ *Woe betide you!*

¹¹ From *bellus*.

¹² Translate *my*.

¹³ *Factum male*, *woful deed*.
 What is it literally?

¹⁴ *On your account*.

¹⁵ Genitive after *ocelli*.

¹⁶ *Turgiduli rubent*, *are all swollen and red*.

CHAPTER LXVI

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE — GERUNDIVE

Review the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.

422. The future active participle with the verb **sum** forms the **FIRST, or ACTIVE, PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION**: **amātūrus sum, eram, etc.,** *I am, was, etc., about to (going to, intending to) love.*

423. The gerundive with the verb **sum** forms the **SECOND, or PASSIVE, PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION**: **amandus sum, eram, etc.,** *I am, was, etc., to be loved; I deserve, ought, etc., to be loved.*

424.

PARADIGMS

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	INDICATIVE	
PRES.	amātūrus sum	amandus sum
IMPF.	amātūrus eram	amandus eram
FUT.	amātūrus erō	amandus erō
PERF.	amātūrus fui	amandus fui
PLUP.	amātūrus fueram	amandus fueram
F. P.	amātūrus fuerō	amandus fuerō
	etc.	etc.

425. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Nōn dubitō quīn monitūrus sit,** *I do not doubt that he will advise.*
2. **Nōn dubitō quīn futurum sit ut id fiat,** *I do not doubt that (it will happen that it be done) it will be done.*
3. **Sciēbam quid āctūrus essēs,** *I knew what you were going to do.*
4. **Pontem faciendum cūrat,** *he (cares for a bridge to be built) has a bridge built.*
5. **Dēlenda est Carthāgō,** *Carthage must be destroyed.*
6. **Caesarī omnia erant agenda,** *everything had to be done by Caesar.*
7. **Mihi scribendum est,** *(the duty of writing is to me) I must write.*

8. *Omnibus moriendum est*, (*the necessity of dying is to all*) *all must die*.
 9. *Vōbīs jūdiciō ūtendum est*, (*the duty of using judgment is to you*) *you ought to use judgment*.

(1) The first three examples show how a future tense may be supplied for the subjunctive mood.

(2) Observe in the fourth example the use of the gerundive agreeing with a noun which is the object of *cūrō*, the whole expression denoting *to have a thing done*.

(3) The last five examples show some uses of the passive periphrastic conjugation. Notice that the idea of *necessity*, or *duty*, is prominent in these forms.

(4) In 7, 8, and 9 the verbs are used impersonally, that is, without any personal subject, the gerundive being in the nominative singular neuter. This impersonal use belongs to transitive verbs without an object expressed, and to intransitive verbs. For the case of *jūdiciō*, see 304.

(5) In the last four examples, *Caesarī*, *mihi*, *omnibus*, and *vōbīs* denote in each case the person *to whom* there is a duty or necessity of doing something. This dative is most conveniently rendered with *by*, and is called the DATIVE OF AGENT.

426. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The dative is used with the gerundive to denote the person by whom the act must be done.¹

427.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Quis dubitat quān futūrī sītis doctī?* 2. *Quis dubitat quān lūdōs vīsūrī sīmus?* 3. *Nōn erat dubium quān lūdōs vīsūrus esset.* 4. *Nōlī dubitāre quān crās ventūrus sīs.* 5. *Cōgnōvī quid āctūrus sit.* 6. *Audiam quid āctūrus sīs.* 7. *Cōgnōveram quid āctūrī essent.* 8. *Dux castra mōtūrus est.* 9. *Scrībenda est mihi epistula.* 10. *Scrībenda erat*

¹ How is the agent with a verb in the passive otherwise and commonly expressed?

tibi epistula. 11. Oppidum militibus oppugnandum erit. 12. Hic liber mihi legendus est.

II. 1. There is no doubt that you are going to be a hero. 2. I doubt not that you will see the games. 3. Do not doubt¹ that he will be present. 4. Do you know what he is going to do? 5.² We ought to cultivate virtue. 6.² I must give the signal. 7.² We ought to read the poets. 8. The commander must be obeyed.³ 9. The boy is not to be believed. 10. The town had to be fortified.

428.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Quaesivit ex oraculo Croesus utrum ipse superatus esset. 2. Non erat dubium quin Falisci sese Romanis dedituri essent. 3. Nisi vinum defecisset, plura et graviora dicturi fuimus. 4. Magnam in spem veniebat fore⁴ ut pertinacia desisteret hostis. 5. Cum Scipio, graviter vulneratus, in hostium manus jamjam venturus esset, filius eum periculo liberavit. 6. Hoc censeo et Carthaginem esse delendam. 7. Aemilius liberos Graecis litteris erudiendos⁵ curaverat. 8. Caesar dandum erat tuba signum. 9. Mihi utendum est iudicio meo.⁶ 10. Ita nobis vivendum est ut ad mortem parati simus.

II. 1. I will ask of the general whether he is going to advance. 2. Who doubts that the Romans will surrender themselves to the Faliscans? 3.⁷ If words had not failed, I was going to write a longer letter. 4. I think the enemy will be defeated. 5. When Caesar was on the point of

¹ Noli dubitare. How else may this be expressed?

² Express in two ways—by using oportet, and then by the gerundive.

³ Lit., it must be obeyed to the commander. Cf. 415. 6.

⁴ Fore = futurum esse, to be about to be, may be omitted in translation.

⁵ Compare 425. 4, and (2).

⁶ See 425. 9.

⁷ Compare I. 3.

starting¹ for Rome, he received a letter from Pompey. 6. My opinion is² that the town ought to be besieged. 7. These things must not be despised by³ us. 8. A wise man will have his boys trained⁴ in Latin literature.⁵ 9. The citizens⁶ must obey the laws. 10. The soldiers must use their own judgment.

429.

VOCABULARY

Aemilius, -ī, M., *Æmilius*, a Roman consul.

cēseō, 2, -uī, -um, *estimate; think, deem, be of opinion.*

Croesus, -ī, M., *Cræsus*, king of Lydia.

dē-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, (*put away from one's self*), *surrender, deliver up.*

dē-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [*faciō*], (*make away from*), *revolt; fail, be wanting.*

dē-sistō, 3, -stitī, -stitum, (*stand off or apart*), *leave off, cease, desist.*

doctus, -a, -um, adj. [*part. of dōceō*], *learned.*

gravis, -ē, adj., *heavy, serious.*

graviter, adv., *heavily, seriously.*
ita, adv., *thus, so.*

jamjam, adv., *already; jamjam ventūrus*, *on the point of coming.*

jūdicium, -ī, N. [*jūdicō*], *judgment, opinion.*

op-pūgnō, 1 [*ob*], *attack, assault, besiege.*

ōrāculum, -ī, N. [*ōrō*], *oracle.*

parātus, -a, -um, adj. [*part. of parō*], *ready, prepared.*

pertinācia, -ae, F. [*pertināx*, *persistens*], *perseverance, obstinacy* (345. 11).

sīgnum, -ī, N., *mark, sign, signal.*

ūtor, 3, *ūsus*, *use, employ; w. abl.*

utrum, adv., *whether.* Cf. **num** (382).

jūdicō, **cēseō**, **exīstimō**, **arbitror**, **putō**, and **opīnor**, all mean *think*; but the first four imply more deliberation and reflection — primarily *think* as a judge, a magistrate, an appraiser, an arbiter — hence, in general, of official, authoritative opinion. **Putō** and **opīnor** imply rather private, personal judgment or opinion.

¹ On the point of starting = already about to start.

² This I think. Cf. I. 6.

³ See 425 (5).

⁴ Cf. I. 7, and 425 (2).

⁵ Compare 232. I. 4.

⁶ *Ā civibus*, to distinguish the agent from the indirect object.

CHAPTER LXVII

GERUND — GERUNDIVE — SUPINE

430. Learn the gerunds and supines of the regular and irregular verbs.

GERUND

431. *Examine the following:—*

- G. Caesar loquendī finem facit, *Cæsar makes an end of speaking.*
 Cupidus est tē audiendī, *he is desirous of hearing you.*
 D. Aqua ūtilis est bibendō, *water is useful for drinking.*
 Ac. Inter pūgnandum trīgintā nāvēs captæ sunt, *during the fight*
(amid the fighting) thirty ships were taken.
 Ab. Mēns discendō alitur, *the mind is strengthened by learning.*

1. The above examples illustrate the use of the gerund in its several cases. It will be seen that the gerund is used like the English verbal noun in *ing*. The nominative is supplied in Latin by the infinitive; e.g., *vidēre est crēdere*, *seeing is believing*.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

432. *Examine the following:—*

- G. Cōnsilia { urbem dēlendī, } *plans for (of) destroying the*
 { urbis dēlendæ, } *city.*
 D. Operam dat { agrōs colendō (rare), } *he devotes himself to*
 { agrīs colendīs, } *tilling the fields.*
 Ac. Vēnērunt ad { pācem petendum (rare), } *they came to sue for*
 { pācem petendam, } *peace.*
 Ab. Occupātus { litterās scribendō (rare), } *I was engaged in*
 sum in { litterīs scribendīs, } *writing letters.*

1. What is to be particularly studied in the above examples is the difference between the gerund and the gerundive construction, as shown within the braces. Observe (1) that the *gerund* is put in the required case, and has its object in the accusative; (2) that the *noun* is put in the required case, and the *gerundive* agrees with it.

2. Except in the genitive, where the two constructions are about equally common, the gerundive construction is almost always preferred.

3. Notice that the accusative of the gerund or gerundive with *ad* denotes a purpose. This construction is much used. In what other ways may a purpose be expressed?

SUPINE

433. *Examine the following :—*

1. *Lēgātī Rōmam veniunt pācem petītum, ambassadors come to Rome to sue for peace.*

2. *Id perfacile est factū, that is very easy to do, or to be done.*

Observe in the first example that the supine *petītum* has the same meaning as *ut petant*, *quī petant*, or *ad petendam*; that is, it expresses purpose. This use is common after verbs of motion.

434. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.

In the second example the supine in *ū* answers the question *in what respect?* *Perfacile factū*, *easy in respect to the doing*. This use is common after adjectives.

The supine in *ū* is really an *ablative of specification*. See 260.

435. EXERCISES

I. 1. *Multi convēnere studiō¹ videndae novae urbis.*
 2. *Ars puerōs educandī difficilis est.* 3. *Ea² aquae causā³ hauriendae dēscenderat.* 4. *Brūtus ad explōrandum cum equitibus antecessit.* 5. *Militēs ad domum custōdiendam ā rēge missī sunt.* 6. *Nēminī dubium est quā Fabius rem Rōmānam cunctandō restituerit.* 7. *Is opportunus vīsus est locus commūniendō praesidiō.* 8. *Omnis spēs evādendī adempta est.* 9. *Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt auxilium rogātum.* 10. *Quod optimum est factū, faciam.*

¹ *From a desire; abl. of cause.*

² *She.* See 270. 2.

³ The ablative *causā*, *for the sake of*, follows its genitive.

II. 1. You will have time to lead (of leading) out the army from that place. 2. He undertook the war for the sake¹ of destroying the republic. 3. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 4. While drinking² we conversed about many things. 5. Many leaders had assembled to see³ Scipio. 6. Night put⁴ an end to the fighting. 7. This seems (to be) a suitable place for building a house. 8. The enemy had entertained⁵ the hope of getting possession of the camp.⁶ 9. A multitude of men came together to witness⁸ the games. 10. It is difficult to say what he will do.⁷

436.

VOCABULARY

ad-imō, 3, -ēmī, -ēptum [emō],
take away, remove.

alō, 3, -uī, -tum, nourish, strength-
en, support.

ante-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, go
before.

auxilium, -ī, N. [augeō], help,
aid, support; plur., auxiliaries.

col-loquor, 3, -locūtus [com],
speak together, converse.

com-mūniō, 4, (fortify strongly),
secure, intrench.

con-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum
[com], come together, assemble.

cunctor, 1, linger, hesitate.

edō, edere or ēsse, ēdī, ēsum or
ēssum, eat.

ex-plōrō, 1, search out, examine,
explore; reconnoitre.

Fabius, -ī, M., Fabius, a Roman
general.

hauriō, 4, hausī, haustum, draw
(water), drain, drink up.

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, con-
venient, suitable; opportune.

re-stituō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [statuō],
(replace), give back, return,
restore.

sus-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [sub,
capiō], undertake.

¹ Causā. See page 209, note 3.

² Inter bibendum.

³ Express in three ways.

⁴ Put an end to = make an end of.

⁵ Entertain the hope = come into
the hope.

⁶ What case with potior?

⁷ Why must the subjunctive
be used? What tense of the sub-
junctive to express future time?
What form expresses the imme-
diate future?

READING LESSONS

LETTERS: CICERO TO HIS WIFE TERENTIA

437.

B.C. 49

Sī valēs, bene est, valeō.¹ Dā operam² ut convalēscās. Quod opus³ erit, ut⁴ rēs tempusque postulat, prōvideās⁵ atque administrēs; et ad mē dē omnibus rēbus quam⁶ saepissimē litterās mittās. Valē.

438.

B.C. 49

S. V. B. E. E.⁷ V. Valētūdinem tuam velim⁸ cūrēs⁹ diligētissimē.¹⁰ Nam mihi et¹¹ scīptum et nūntiātum est tē¹² in febrim subitō incidisse. Quod¹³ celeriter mē fēcistī dē Caesaris litterīs certiōrem,¹⁴ fēcistī mihi grātum. Item pōsthāc, sī quid¹⁵ opus erit,¹⁶ sī quid acciderit novī,¹⁷ faciēs¹⁸ ut sciam. Cūrā ut valeās. Valē.

¹ The Romans often began their letters with these five words, or rather with the abbreviations S. V. B. E. V.

² Give labor = try.

³ An indeclinable noun, need; opus est, is necessary.

⁴ What indicates that ut does not mean in order that?

⁵ The hortatory subjunctive. See 390.

⁶ Quam strengthens the superlative; quam saepissimē, as often as possible.

⁷ For ego.

⁸ I could wish; volō, I wish.

⁹ Equivalent to ut cūrēs.

¹⁰ Notice the emphatic position of the adverb, after the verb.

¹¹ Et . . . et, both . . . and.

¹² Subject of incidisse. See 401.

¹³ In that.

¹⁴ Fēcistī . . . certiōrem, made more certain = informed.

¹⁵ Anything; quid is regularly used instead of aliquid after sī, nisi, nē, and num.

¹⁶ See note 3, above.

¹⁷ Of new; partitive genitive.

¹⁸ A future equivalent to the imperative. Faciēs ut sciam, let me know. What is it literally?

439.

. B.C. 46

SI valēs, bene est.¹ Cōstituerāmus, ut² ad tē antea scripseram, obviam Cicerōnem³ Caesarī mittere; sed mūtāvimus cōsilium, quia dē illius⁴ adventū nihil audiēbāmus. Dē cēteris rēbus, etsi nihil erat novī,⁵ tamen quid velīmus⁶ et quid hōc tempore putēmus⁶ opus⁷ esse ex Siccā⁸ poteris cōgnōscere. Tulliam adhūc mēcum teneō. Valētūdinem tuam cūrā⁹ diligenter. Valē.

440.

. B.C. 46

¹⁰S. V. B. E. V. Nōs neque dē Caesaris adventū neque dē litteris quās Philotīmus habēre dīcitur, quidquam¹¹ adhūc certī¹² habēmus. Sī quid erit certī, faciam tē statim certiōrem.¹³ Valētūdinem tuam fac¹⁴ ut cūrēs. Valē.

¹ Compare this form of beginning a letter with those of the two preceding.

² Compare the use of *ut* in 437, line 2.

³ That is, his son Cicero.

⁴ That is, Cæsar's.

⁵ Genitive neuter of *novus* depending on *nihil*. Compare the same word in 438, and the note.

⁶ Translate the words *quid velīmus*, etc., just as they stand.

⁷ Compare *opus erit* in 437 and 438, and the note.

⁸ A friend of Cicero.

⁹ Compare with this the beginning and the ending of 438.

¹⁰ Observe how nearly this letter

can be translated in the order of the Latin words.

¹¹ *Anything at all*. To express *anything at all*, after a negative word, as here after *neque*, the Romans used *quidquam*, not *aliquid*. See 279. 6.

¹² Genitive neuter of *certus*, depending on *quidquam*. Compare *novī* in 438 after *quid*, and in 439 after *nihil*.

¹³ Compare *fēcistī certiōrem* in 438, and the note.

¹⁴ See page 150, note. *Fac ut cūrēs*, *do take care*. What is the literal meaning? Compare with this the endings of the two preceding letters.

FABLES

441. DĒ VITIIS HOMINUM

Juppiter nōbīs¹ duās pērās imposuit: alteram,² quae nostrīs vitiīs replēta est, post tergum nōbīs dedit; alteram³ autem, quā⁴ aliōrum vitia continentur, ante pectus nostrum⁵ suspendit. Quārē nōn vidēmus quae⁶ ipsī peccāmus; sī autem aliī peccant, statim eōs vituperāmus.

442. MULIER ET GALLĪNA

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae ei⁶ cotīdiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit illam⁷ aurī massam intus cēlāre, et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod⁸ in aliīs gallīnīs reperīrī solet.⁹ Itaque dum mājōribus dīvitiīs inhiat,¹⁰ etiam minōrēs¹¹ perdidit.

443. VULPĒS ET ŪVA

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōnspicāta¹² ad illam subsiliit omnium vīrium suārum contentiōne,¹³ sī eam forte attingere posset. Tandem dēfatigāta inānī labōre discēdēns, "At

¹ With imposuit; *has placed on us.*

² Alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other.*

³ Quā = in quā pērā.

⁴ Compare ante pectus nostrum with post tergum nōbīs.

⁵ What we sin = what sins we commit. On ipsī, see 270. 4.

⁶ For her.

⁷ Illam = illam gallīnam, subject of cēlāre.

⁸ Nisi quod = praeter id quod.

⁹ Is wont = is usually.

¹⁰ Gapes for = is greedy for. Notice here a peculiarity of the Latin: the present is used after dum, though the perfect perdidit follows. The English idiom requires us to translate such a present by the imperfect, was greedy for.

¹¹ Supply the Latin noun in the proper form.

¹² Perfect participle of cōnspicor, agreeing with vulpēs. Translate by the present participle.

¹³ With the exertion.

nunc etiam," inquit, "acerbae¹ sunt, nec eās¹ in viā repertās² tollerem."³

444.

RŪSTICUS ET CANIS FIDĒLIS

Rūsticus in agrōs exiit ad opus suum. Fīliolum, quī in cūnīs jacēbat, reliquit canī⁴ fidēlī atque validō custōdiendum.⁵ Adrēpsit anguis immānis, quī puerulum exstinctūrus erat. Sed custōs fidēlis corripit eum dentibus acūtīs, et, dum eum necāre studet,⁶ cūnās simul ēvertit super exstinctum anguem. Paulō post ex arvō rediit agricola; cum cūnās ēversās cruentumque canis rictum vidēret,⁷ irā accenditur.⁸ Temerē igitur custōdem fīliolī interfēcit ligōne, quem manibus tenēbat. Sed ubi cūnās restituit,⁹ super anguem occīsum repperit puerum vīvum et incolumem. Paenitentia facinoris¹⁰ sōra¹¹ fuit.

445.

PUER MENDĀX

Puer in prātō ovēs pāscēbat,¹² atque per jocum clāmitābat, ut sibi auxilium feirētur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricolae undique succurrēbant, neque¹³ lupum inveniēbant. Ita ter quaterque sē elūsōs ā puerō vidērunt. Deinde¹⁴ cum ipse¹⁵ lupus aggredērētur, et puer rē vērā¹⁶ implōrāret

¹ The plural, as if ūvae had been used.

² Eās repertās, *them found* = *If I had found them.*

³ Would I pick them up.

⁴ The so-called dative of the agent with custōdiendum. Translate, *left for his . . . dog to guard.*

⁵ Literally, *to be guarded.*

⁶ See page 213, note 10.

⁷ For the subjunctive, see 373.

⁸ Present for perfect, called *historical present.*

⁹ Translate as if it were restituerat; after ubi, ut, and postquam, meaning *when*, the perfect indicative is commonly used, but it is best rendered by the pluperfect.

¹⁰ Translate, *for the deed.*

¹¹ Too late.

¹² The imperfect, denoting customary action; render, *used to tend.*

¹³ But . . . not.

¹⁴ See page 106, note 1.

¹⁵ Really. See 270. 6.

¹⁶ Rē vērā, *in earnest.*

auxilium, nēmō gregī subvēnit,¹ et ovēs lupī praeda² sunt factae. Mendācī hominī³ nōn crēdimus, etiam cum vēra dīcit.

446.

SENEX ET MORS

Senex quīdam ligna in silvā ceciderat,⁴ et, fasce in umerōs sublātō,⁵ domum redīre coepit. Cum fatigātus esset⁶ et onere et itinere, dēposuit ligna, et, senectūtis⁷ et inopiae⁷ miseriās sēcum reputāns, clārā vōce invocāvit mortem, ut sē omnibus malīs⁸ liberāret. Mox adest⁹ mors et interrogat quid vellet. Tum senex perterritus: "Prō! hunc lignōrum fascem, quaesō, umerīs¹⁰ meis impōnās."¹¹

447.

VULPĒS ET LEŌ

Vulpēs nunquam leōnem vīderat. Cum huīc forte occurrisset, ita exterrita est, ut paene morerētur¹² formīdine.¹³ Eundem cōspicāta est iterum. Tum extimuit illa quidem, sed nēquāquam ut antea. Cum tertiō¹⁴ leōnī obviam facta esset, adeō nōn perterrita fuit,¹⁵ ut auderet¹² accēdere propius et colloquī cum eō.

¹ Cf. succurrō. See 343. How does the meaning *help* come from the primitive meaning?

² Predicate nominative.

³ Why dative? See 343.

⁴ From caedō, not cadō.

⁵ From tollō, not sufferō.

⁶ For the subjunctive, see 373.

⁷ Notice the order: the genitives coming first are made emphatic.

⁸ Ablative of separation. See 130.

⁹ See page 214, note 8.

¹⁰ Umerīs . . . impōnās, cf. nōbīs . . . imposuit in 441.

¹¹ Quaesō impōnās = quaesō ut impōnās.

¹² Is this clause a *purpose* or a *result* clause? See illustrative examples, 352 and 368.

Are the clauses beginning with *cum* *temporal* or *causal*? Read again the illustrative examples, 372 and 374.

¹³ *Of fright.*

¹⁴ *The third time.*

¹⁵ *To such a degree was not frightened = was so far from being frightened.*

448. CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR, I, 1-5. — B.C. 58

1. Gallia est omnis ¹ dīvisā in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam ² Aquitānī, tertiam quī ³ ipsōrum linguā ⁴ Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, ⁵ institūtis, lēgibus inter sē ⁶ differunt. Gallōs ⁷ ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae ⁸ longissimē absunt, minimēque ⁹ ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs ¹⁰ animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum ¹¹ continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs ¹² virtūte ¹³ praecedunt, quod fere cotidiānis proeliis ¹⁴ cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis ¹⁵ finibus eōs ¹⁶ prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus ¹⁷ bellum gerunt. Eōrum ¹⁸ ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā ¹⁹ flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab ²⁰ Sēquanīs et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae

¹ omnis: *as a whole.*

² aliam: *alteram* in the sense of *secundam* would be more common.

³ quī: supply mentally *ii*, as antecedent.

⁴ ipsōrum linguā: *in their own tongue.*

⁵ linguā: 260.

⁶ inter sē: *from each other.* What literally?

⁷ Gallōs: that is, the Celtic Gauls.

⁸ prōvinciae: not reckoned a part of Gallia.

⁹ minimē . . . saepe: *very seldom.*

¹⁰ effēminandōs: 432. 3.

¹¹ quibuscum: 265. 3.

¹² reliquōs Gallōs: *the rest of the Gauls.*

¹³ virtūte: see linguā and reference.

¹⁴ proeliis: 144, 145.

¹⁵ suis: refers to Helvētiī, the subject.

¹⁶ eōs . . . eōrum: refer to Germānis; ipsī, to Helvētiī.

¹⁷ finibus: *territories.*

¹⁸ Eōrum: *of their country*, though grammatically referring to Hī omnēs, or Hōrum, above.

¹⁹ initium capit ā: *begins at.*

²⁰ ab: *on the side of.*

ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam¹ pertinet, spectat² inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is M. Messālā³ et M. Pisōne cōsulibus rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī⁴ persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse,⁵ cum⁶ virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō⁷ potiri. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit,⁸ quod undique locī⁹ nātūrā Helvētiī continentur;¹⁰ ūnā ex parte¹¹ flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum¹² Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iurā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā¹³ lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram¹⁴ ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. His rēbus fiēbat¹⁵ ut¹⁶ et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs¹⁷ bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte¹⁸ hominēs¹⁹ bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et

¹ ad Hispāniam: *next to Spain.*

² spectat: *it lies or faces.*

³ M. Messālā . . . cōsulibus: 412, 6th example. The Romans indicated the year by naming the consuls. This was in B.C. 61.

⁴ cīvitātī: 342 and 343.

⁵ perfacile esse: (*saying that*) *it was very easy.* 403.

⁶ cum . . . praestārent: *since they surpassed.* 375.

⁷ imperiō: 304.

⁸ id . . . persuāsit: *he persuaded this (id) to them (eīs) = he persuaded them to this course the more easily on this account (hōc).*

⁹ locī: *of their country.*

¹⁰ continentur: *has not the same meaning in chap. 1.*

¹¹ ūnā ex parte: *on one side.*

¹² agrum: *country.*

¹³ tertiā: *i.e., tertiā ex parte.*

¹⁴ prōvinciam nostram: *see page 216, note 8.*

¹⁵ His rēbus fiēbat: *the consequence of this was. Lit., it was coming about from these things. fiēbat: 327.*

¹⁶ ut . . . vagārentur: *see 368.*

¹⁷ finitimīs: 117.

¹⁸ quā ex parte: *and for this reason, quā = et eā, parte = causā.*

¹⁹ hominēs: (*being*) *men.*

prō glōriā bellī¹ atque fortitudinis angustōs² sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem mīlia passuum³ cxxl, in lātitudinem clxxx patēbant.⁴

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, cōstituērunt ea quae⁵ ad proficiēscendum pertinērent comparāre, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum⁶ numerum coēmere, sēmentēs⁷ quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad⁸ eās rēs cōficiendās bien-nium sibi satis esse dūxērunt;⁹ in tertium annum¹⁰ profec-tiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi¹¹ lēgatiōnem ad cīvitatēs suscepit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō,¹² Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūjus pater rēgnum¹³ in¹⁴ Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut¹⁵ rēgnum in cīvitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitatē obtinēbat ac māximē plēbī accep-tus erat, ut idem cōnārētur¹⁶ persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātirimōnium dat. Perfacile¹⁷ factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitatīs imperium

¹ glōria bellī: *renown in war.*

² angustōs: *too narrow.*

³ mīlia passuum: *thousands of paces = miles.* 340. The Roman passus was five feet, and a thousand of them made a Roman mile. Was this longer or shorter than our mile?

⁴ patēbant: *extended.*

⁵ ea quae: *such things as.*

⁶ quam māximum numerum: *the greatest possible number.*

⁷ sēmentēs . . . facere: *to make the greatest possible sowings = to sow as much land as possible.*

⁸ Ad . . . cōficiendās: 432. 3.

⁹ dūxērunt: *they thought.*

¹⁰ in tertium annum: *for the third year.* Mark the force of in.

¹¹ sibi: *upon himself.*

¹² Casticō: see page 217, n. 4.

¹³ rēgnum: *sovereignty.*

¹⁴ in: *among.*

¹⁵ ut . . . occupāret: *to seize;* depends on persuādet.

¹⁶ ut idem cōnārētur: *to make the same attempt.*

¹⁷ Perfacile . . . perficere: *to accomplish their undertakings (cōnāta perficere) he proves to them to be very easy to do (factū).* On factū, see 433. 2.

obtentūrus esset:¹ nōn esse dubium² quān tōtius Galliae plūrimum³ Helvētiī possent; sē⁴ suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē⁵ fidem et jūsjūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō,⁶ per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae⁷ sēsē⁸ potiri posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs⁹ est Helvētiīs per indicium¹⁰ ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorīgē ex vinclīs¹¹ causam dicere¹² coēgērunt. Damnātum¹³ poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā¹⁴ causae dictiōnis¹⁵ Orgetorīx ad jūdicium¹⁶ omnem suam familiam ad hominū mīlia decem undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suos, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē¹⁷ causam diceret sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitas ob eam rem¹⁸ incitāta armīs iūs suū exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque

¹ obtentūrus esset: *was about to get*. Observe that obtineō has not the same meaning as before.

² nōn esse dubium: depends upon a verb of saying, understood. 400.

³ plūrimum . . . possent: *were the strongest*.

⁴ sē: *that he*, subject accusative of conciliātūrum (esse). 401.

⁵ inter sē . . . dant: *they give among themselves=they exchange*.

⁶ rēgnō occupātō: *if they should seize the supreme power*. 412.

⁷ tōtius Galliae: find potior with the ablative in chap. 2.

⁸ sēsē: subject accusative of posse.

⁹ Ea rēs: *this conspiracy*. When rēs occurs, consider what word other than "thing" will best express the meaning. Note where it has already occurred.

¹⁰ per indicium: *that is, per indicēs, through informers*.

¹¹ ex vinclīs: *we should say, in chains*.

¹² dicere: *plead*.

¹³ Damnātum . . . cremārētur: the clause ut . . . cremārētur explains poenam; *the punishment of being burned alive was bound (oportēbat) to follow, if he should be condemned*. With damnātum supply eum, which is the object of sequi, as poenam is the subject accusative.

¹⁴ Diē cōstitutā: *on the day appointed*. 136.

¹⁵ dictiōnis: *for pleading*.

¹⁶ jūdicium: *trial*.

¹⁷ nē . . . diceret: depends on sē ēripuit, *he escaped pleading his case*. He overawed the court.

¹⁸ rem: *act*. See note 9.

hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent,¹ Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut² Helvētiī arbitrantur, quī³ ipse sibi mortem cōscīverit.

5. Post ējus mortem nihilō minus⁴ Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut⁵ ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad⁶ duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant⁷ combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā⁸ parātiōrēs ad⁹ omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium¹⁰ molita cibāria sibi quemque¹¹ domō efferre jubent. Persuādent¹² Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs utī eōdem ūsī¹³ cōnsiliō, oppidīs suis vicīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs¹⁴ proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Norēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs¹⁵ ad sē sociōs¹⁶ sibi adscīscunt.

¹ cōgerent: after cum, like cōnārētur. 373.

² ut: as.

³ quī . . . cōscīverit: but that he himself decreed death to himself = that he died by his own hand.

The golden rule for discovering the meaning of a Latin sentence is, Take the words in the Latin order. Four-fifths of the following chapter may be read mentally this way. Try it. When once the meaning is clear, translate; that is, render into good English.

⁴ nihilō minus: none the less.

⁵ ut . . . exeant: that is, to go forth from their country.

⁶ ad: about.

⁷ portātūrī erant: 422.

⁸ sublātā: from tollō, remove.

⁹ ad . . . subeunda: see ad

eās rēs cōficiendās, chap. 3, and the note. subeunda, from subeō: 327.

¹⁰ trium mēnsium: for three months.

¹¹ quemque: 279. 4.

¹² Persuādent Rauracīs . . . utī . . . proficīscantur: find the same constructions with persuādeō in chap. 3.

¹³ ūsī: from ūtor. Translate, to adopt the same plan, burn their towns and villages, and set out with them. But how literally?

¹⁴ cum iīs: that is, with the Helvetii.

¹⁵ receptōs . . . adscīscunt: it is best to translate receptōs as if it were recipiunt et.

¹⁶ sociōs, as allies, predicate accusative to Bōiōs.

449.

VOCABULARY

For words not found here, see General Vocabulary.

acceptus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of accipiō], *acceptable, agreeable.*

ad-dūcō, 3, -xī, -ductum, *influence, induce.*

ad-ficiō (af-), 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *move, affect.*

ad-scīscō, 3, -scīvī, -scitum, *take to one's self, take.*

Aeduī, -ōrum, m. (pl.), *the Æduans.*

Aeduus, -a, -um, adj., *Ædian.*

angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow.*

ante, adv., *before.*

Aquītānī, -ōrum, m. (plur.), *the Aquitanians.*

Aquītānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania, a province of southern Gaul.*

biennium, -i, n. [bis, annus], *space of two years.*

Bōiī, -ōrum, m. (plur.), *the Boii.*

Casticus, -i, m., *Casticus.*

Catamantaloedēs, -is, m., *Catamantaloedes.*

Celtae, -ārum, m. (plur.), *the Celts.*

cibārius, -a, -um, adj. [cibus], *pertaining to food; as noun in plur., provisions, supplies.*

co-emō, 3, -ēmī, -ēptum [com], *buy up.*

com-būrō, 3, -bussī, -būstum [ūrō], *burn up, destroy.* [sort.

com-meō, 1, [eō], *come and go, re-*

com-parō, 1, *furnish, procure.*

con-ciliō, 1 [concilium, meeting], *bring together, gain over, win.*

con-dūcō, 3, -xī, -ductum [com], *lead together, collect.*

cōn-firmō, 1 [com], *establish, appoint, assure, assert.*

con-jūrātiō, -ōnis, f. [conjūrō, con-
spire], *conspiracy.*

cōn-scīscō, 3, -scīvī, -scitum [com], *adjudge.*

continenter, adv. [continēns], *continuously, incessantly.*

con-tineō, 2, -uī, -tentum [com, teneō], *bound, hem in.*

cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj. [quot, diēs], *daily.*

cremō, 1, *burn.*

cultus, -ūs, m. [colō, cultivate], *civilization, culture.*

cupidus, -a, -um, adj. [cupiō], *desirous.*

-dēligō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctum [legō], *choose out, select.*

dictiō, -ōnis, f. [dicō], *a saying, a pleading.*

dītissimus, -a, -um, same as dīvi-
tissimus, *richest.*

Diviciācus, -i, m., *Diviciacus.*

dīvidō, 3, -vīsī, -vīsum, *divide, separate.*

Dumnorīx, -igis, m., *Dumnorix.*

ef-fēminō, 1 [ex, fēmina, a fe-
male], *make effeminate, weaken.*

ex-sequor, 3, -secūtus, *follow out; assert, maintain.*

extrēmus, -a, -um [sup. of exter], *furthest, remotest, extreme.*

ex-ūrō, 3, -ussī, -ūstum, *burn up, consume.*

facile, adv. [facilis], *easily.*

familia, -ae, f. [famulus, slave], *household; dependents.*

Garumna, -ae, m., *the Garonne.*

Helvētīī, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetians.*

Helvētius, -a, -um, *Helvetian.*

hūmānitās, -ātis, f. [hūmānus], *refinement.*

im-portō, 1 [in], *bring in, import.*

in-cendō, 1, -dī, -cēnsus [candō, glow], *set fire to, burn.*

in-citō, 1, *incite, arouse.*

in-dūcō, 3, -xī, -ductum, *bring into; arouse, persuade, induce.*

inferior, -iōris, adj. [comp. of inferior, below], *lower.*

institutum, -ī, n. [instituo], *custom, habit.*

jumentum, -ī, n. [jungō], *beast of burden.*

Jūra, -ae, m., *Jura, a mountain.*

jūs-jurandum, juris-jurandī, n. [jūs, jūrō], *oath.*

lātē, adv. [lātus], *widely, extensively.*

lātitudō, -inis, f. [lātus], *breadth, width.*

Latobrigī, -ōrum, m. (plur.), *the Latobrigi.*

lēgatiō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, depute], *embassy.*

Lemannus, -ī, m., *Lake Geneva.*

longitudō, -inis, f. [longus], *length.*

mātrimōnium, -ī, n. [māter], *marriage.*

Mātrona, -ae, m., *the Marne.*

mercātor, -ōris, m. [mercor, trade], *trader, merchant.*

Messāla, -ae, m., *Messala, a Roman consul.*

molō, 3, -uī, -itum, *grind.*

nihilum, -ī, n., *nothing.*

nōbilitās, -ātis, f. [nōbilis], *the nobility, the nobles.*

Norēia, -ae, f., *Noreia.*

Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., *of Noricum.*

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

ob-aerātus, -ī, m. [aes], *debtor.*

Orgetorix, -īgis, m., *Orgetorix.*

per-facilis, -e, adj., *very easy.*

per-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *make thoroughly, perform, accomplish.*

per-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move thoroughly, excite, arouse.*

per-suādeō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade, induce.*

per-tineō, 2, -uī, -tentum [teneō], *reach, extend; tend, concern.*

Pisō, -ōnis, m., *Piso, a Roman consul.*

plūrimum, adv. [plūrimus], *most; very much.*

prae-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, *go before; surpass, excel.*

praeter-quam, adv., *beyond, except.*

prīncipātus, -ūs, m. [prīnceps], *preëminence, sovereignty.*

prīvātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of prīvō], *private, isolated.*

probō, 1, *show, prove.*

profectiō, -ōnis, f. [proficīscor], *setting out, departure.*

propterea quod, *because.*

Rauracī, -ōrum, m. (plur.), *the Rauraci.*

reditiō, -ōnis, f. [redeō], *return.*

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone.*

sēmentis, -is, f., *sowing.*

septemtriō, -ōnis, m., in plur., *the seven stars of the Great Dipper; north.*

Sēquana, -ae, f., *the Seine.*

Sēquanī, -ōrum, m. (plur.), *the Sequanians.* [nīan.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., *Sequanian.*
sup-petō, 3, -ivī (-īī), -itum [sub], *be at hand, in store.*

suspiciō, -ōnis, f. [suspīcor], *suspicion.* [līngi.

Tulingī, -ōrum, m. (plur.), *the Tulingi.*
ūnā, adv. [ūnus], *at the same time, together.*

vergō, 3, no perf. or sup., *turn, slope, lie.*

vinculum (vinculum), -ī, n. [vinciō], *bond, chain.*

VOCABULARIES

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

IN this vocabulary words enclosed in brackets are, in most cases, those which are given in Latin lexicons and special vocabularies as the primitives of those against which they are set. But, except in compounds, it would be more correct to regard the bracketed words as *connected with the others in formation from a common root or stem*. It is on this ground that such instances will be found as *metus* referred to *metuō*, and *metuō* to *metus*. Neither is, strictly speaking, derived from the other, but both are formed from the stem *metu*.

Words printed in *Gothic Italic* type are at once derivatives and definitions. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in SMALL CAPITALS.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupil should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

ā or ab

ā or ab, prep. w. abl., *away from*,
by.

ab-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *remove*,
conceal. Cf. cēlō.

ab-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead*
away, *take off*. ABDUCT.

ab-eō, īre, -īi, -itum, *go from*, *go*
off, *go away*. (327.)

ab-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō],
throw off, *throw down*. ABJECT.

abies, -etis, f., *fir-tree*. (11.4.)

ab-sum, -esse, āfui, *be away*, *ab-*
sent, *distant*; with ā or ab and
abl.

ac, conj., see atque.

ac-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum [ad], *go*
or come near, *approach*. ACCEDE.
Cf. appropinquō.

ac-cendō, 3, -dī, -cēnsu[m] [ad],
and supposed candō, *kindle*, *in-*
flame.

ad-eō

accidō, 3, -cidī, — [ad, cadō],
fall upon, *fall out*, *happen*. AC-

CIDENT. Cf. incidō and eveniō.

accipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [ad,
capiō], (*take to*), *receive*, *accept*;
suffer.

accūsō, 1 [ad, causa], *accuse*.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp*, *keen*;
active. (150.) ACRID. Cf. acūtus.

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. [ācer], *bitter*,
sour, *harsh*. ACERBITY.

aciēs, -ēi, f. [ācer], *edge*; *line of*
battle.

ācriter, adv. [ācer], *sharply*, *eagerly*.

acūtus, -a, -um, adj. [acuō, sharpen],
sharp. Cf. ācer. ACUTE.

ad, prep. w. acc., *to*, *towards*, *near*.

ad-eō, adv., *to this*, *thus far*; *so*,
so very.

ad-eō, -īre, -īi, -itum, *go to*, *ap-*
proach, *visit*. (327.)

ad-ferō, adferre, attuli, allātum (adl), bear to, bring. (321.)

ad-hūc, adv., hitherto, up to this time.

ad-flō, 1, blow upon. AFFLATUS.

ad-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], (throw to or against), add, join to. ADJECTIVE.

ad-imō, 3, -ēmī, -ēptum [emō], (take to one's self from another), take away, remove.

ad-ipīscor, 3, adeptus [apīscor], get, obtain. Cf. potior. ADEPT.

ad-jungō, 3, -jūnxī, jūctum, add, join. ADJUNCT.

ad-juvō, 1, -jūvī, -jūtum, aid, help.

ad-ministrō, 1, manage, do, perform, administer.

ad-mīror, 1, wonder at, admire.

ad-modum, adv., very.

ad-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum (move up or towards), apply, employ.

ad-orior, 4, -ortus (rise up against), attack. Cf. aggredior.

ad-rēpō, 3, -rēpsī, -rēptum, creep towards, steal slowly up.

ad-spiciō (asp), 3, -spēxī, -spectum [ad, speciō], look at; look.

adspectus, -ūs, m. [adspiciō], sight, appearance, aspect.

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī (afful), be present, stand by, side with, w. dat.

adulēscēns, -entīs, m. and f. [adolēscō, grow], youth, young person. ADOLESCENCE. Cf. juvenis.

ad-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come to, arrive. Cf. perveniō.

adventus, -ūs, m. [adveniō], approach, arrival. ADVENT.

ad-versus, prep. w. acc., against, towards.

ad-versus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of ad-vertō], opposite, opposed, adverse; res adversae, adversity.

aedificium, -ī, n. [aedificō], building. EDIFICE.

aedificō, 1 [aedis, faciō], build.

aedis (ēs), -is, f., building, temple; plur., house.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj., sick, weak, feeble. (71.)

Aemilius, -ī, m., *Aemilius*, a Roman consul. (79.)

aequālis, -e, adj. [aequus], equal; noun, equal in age, companion.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., level, equal; calm.

āēr, āeris, m., air.

aereus, -a, -um [aes], of copper, of bronze.

aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze; money.

aestās, -ātis, f., summer.

aestus, -ūs, m., tide. ESTUARY.

aetās, -ātis, f., age, time of life. (105.)

af-fligō, 3, -xī, -ctum [ad], cast down, prostrate, ruin. AFFLICT.

Āfrica, -ae, f., Africa.

Āfricānus, -ī, m. [Āfrica], *Africanus*, surname of Scipio.

Āfricus, -ī, m., southwest (wind).

ager, agrī, m., field, territory. Cf. campus. (85.) AGRARIAN.

agger, -eris, m. [ad, gerō], (what is carried to, i.e.) materials for a mound; mound, rampart.

aggredior, 3, -gressus [ad, gradior], go to; attack. AGGRES-SIVE. Cf. adior.

agitō, 1 [frequentative of agō], shake, disturb, vex, chase. AGITATE.

agnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nitum [ad, (g)nōscō, know], recognize. Cf. cōgnōscō.

agō, 3, ēgī, āctum, drive, lead; act, do.

agricola, -ae, m. [ager, colō], *farmer*.

agri cultūra, -ae, f. [ager, colō], *agriculture*. Cf. agricola.

āla, -ae, f., *wing*. AISLE.

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white*. Cf. candidus. ALBUMEN.

Alexander, -drī, m., *Alexander*, king of Macedon.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alius], *belonging to another; another's*.

ALIEN.

alimentum, -ī, n. [alō], *nourishment, food, provisions*.

aliquandō, adv. [alius], *at some time, ever; formerly, once*. Cf. olim.

aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron., *some one, some*. (279.)

alius, -a, -ud, adj., *another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another*. (201.)

al-loquor (adl), 3, -locūtus [ad], *speak to, address*.

alō, 3, -uī, -itum (-tum), *nourish, support, strengthen; keep*.

Alpēs, -ium, f., *the Alps*.

alter, -era, -erum, adj., *the other (of two); alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other; as num. adj., second*. (200.)

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep*.

ambō, -ae, -ō, num. adj., *both*.

ambulō, 1, *walk, take a walk*.

America, -ae, f., *America*.

amīcitiā, -ae, f. [amīcus], *friendship*. AMITY.

amīcus, -a, -um, adj. [amō], *friendly; noun, friend*. AMICABLE.

ā-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, *send away, let go, lose*. Cf. perdō.

amnis, -is, m., *river*. (154, 172.)

amō, 1, *love, like, be fond of*. (319.)

amplus, -a, -um, adj., *large, splendid, renowned*. AMPLE.

an, conj., *or*, used in the second member of a double question.

ancilla, -ae, f., *maid-servant*.

ancora, -ae, f., *anchor*.

Ancus, -ī, *Ancus*, fourth king of Rome.

Androclus, -ī, m., *Androclus*.

anguis, -is, m., *snake, serpent*. (154.)

angustiae, -ārum, f. [angustus, *narrow*], *narrow pass*. Cf. Eng. "narrows."

animal, -ālis, n. [anima, *breath*], *living being, animal*. (149.)

animus, 1, m., *mind, soul, spirit*. (273.)

annus, -ī, m., *year*. ANNUAL.

ānser, -eris, m., *goose*.

ante, prep. w. acc., *before*.

anteā, adv. [ante], *before*.

ante-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, *go before*. Cf. anteeō. ANTECEDENT.

ante-eō, -īre, -īī, —, *go before, surpass*. Cf. antecēdō.

antīquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante], *old, ancient*. ANTIQUITY. Cf. vetus.

ānulus, -ī, m., *ring, finger-ring*.

aper, apri, m., *wild boar*.

aperiō, 4, -uī, -tum, *open*.

apertus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of aperiō], *uncovered, open*.

ap-pellō, 1 [ad], *address, call, name*. APPEAL.

ap-petō, 3, -īvī (-īī), -itum [ad], *seek after, strive for*. APPETITE.

ap-propinquō, 1 [ad], *come near, approach*. Cf. accēdō.

aptō, 1, *fit, apply, adjust*. ADAPT.

apud, prep. w. acc., *with, by, near, among*.

Āpūlla, -ae, f., *Apulia*, a division of Italy.

aqua, -ae, f., *water*. AQUATIC.

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle*. AQUILINE.

āra, -ae, f., *altar*.

arātrum, -ī, n. [arō], *plough*.
arbitror, 1, *think, suppose, believe*. (429.)
arbor, -oris, f., *tree*.
arceō, 2, -uī, —, *keep off*.
arcus, -ūs, m., *bow*. ARC, ARCHER.
Arlovistus, -ī, m., *Ariovistus*, king of a German tribe.
arma, -ōrum, n. [armō], *arms, weapons, tools*.
armō, 1 [arma], *arm, equip*.
arō, 1, *plough*.
Arpinum, -ī, n., *Arpinum*, a town in Italy.
ars, artis, f., *art*.
arvum, -ī, n. [arō], *ploughed land, field*.
arx, arcis, f., *citadel*. (163.)
Ascalaphus, -ī, m., *Ascalaphus*.
Asia, -ae, f., *Asia*.
asper, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, harsh, severe*. ASPERITY.
asylum, -ī, n., *place of refuge, asylum*.
at, conj., *but*. (393.)
āter, -tra, -trum, adj., *black, sable*.
Athēnae, -ārum, f., *Athens*.
Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., [Athēnae], *of Athens, Athenian*.
at-que (before vowels and consonants, āc before consonants only) [ad, in addition], *and also, and especially, and*. Cf. et and -que.
atrōx, -ōcis, adj. [āter], *savage, fierce, harsh, cruel*. ATROCIOUS.
Atticus, -ī, m., *Atticus*, a friend of Cicero.
attingō, 3, -tigī, -tāctum [ad, tangō], *touch, approach, arrive at, reach*.
auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō, increase], *maker, author*.
auctōritās, -ātis, f. [auctor], *counsel, advice, authority*.

audācter, adv. [audāx], *boldly*.
audāx, -ācis, adj. [audeō], *daring, bold*. (164.) AUDACIOUS.
audeō, 2, ausus [audāx], *dare, be bold*. (page 177, note 2.)
audiō, 4, *hear, listen*. (223.) AUDIENCE.
au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum [ab(s)], *bear off, carry away*. (321.) ABLATIVE.
augeō, 2, auxī, auctum, *increase, enlarge*.
aureus, -a -um, adj. [aurum], *of gold, golden*.
auris, -is, f., *ear*.
aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.
aut, conj., *or*; aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*. Cf. vel.
autem, conj. (never the first word), *but, however, moreover*. (393.)
autumnus, -ī, m., *autumn*.
auxilium, -ī, n. [augeō], *help, aid, support*; plur., *auxiliaries*.
avārus, -a, -um, adj., *greedy, rapacious*. AVARICIOUS.
ā-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum, *turn away from, avert*.
avis, -is, f., *bird*. (154.)
avunculus, -ī, m. [diminutive of avus], (maternal) *uncle*.
avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*.
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, barbarous, barbarian*.
beātus, -a, -um, adj. [beō, bless], *blessed, happy*. BEATITUDE.
Belgae, -ārum, m., *the Belgæ*, a Gallic tribe.
bellō, 1 [bellum], *war, carry on war*. Cf. bellum gerō.
bellum, -ī, n. [bellō], *war*. (38.)
bellus, -a, -um, adj., *pretty, charming, lovely*. BEAU, BELLE.
bene, adv. [bonus], *well*.

beneficium, -ī, n. [bene, faciō], *benefit, favor*.

benignē, adv. [benignus], *kindly*.

benignus, -a, -um, adj. [bene, genus], (*of good birth*), *kind, good*. BENIGNANT.

bēstia, -ae, f., *beast*.

bibō, 3, bibi, pōtum, *drink*. IMBIBE.

bonum, -ī, n. [bonus], *good thing, blessing*; plur., *goods, possessions*.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., comp. melior, superl. optimus; *good*. (71, 208.)

bōs, bovis, m. and f., *ox, cow*. (262.) BOVINE.

Bostonia, -ae, f., *Boston*.

bracchium, -ī, n., *arm*.

brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief*.

Britannī, -ōrum, m., *the Britons*.

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus*, a Roman surname.

C., abbreviation for *Gājus*.

cachinnō, 1, *laugh aloud*. Cf. rideō.

cadō, 3, cecidī, cāsum, *fall*.

caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind*.

caedō, 3, cecidī, caesum, *cut, cut to pieces; kill*.

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven*.

caeruleus, -a, -um, adj. [for caeruleus, from caelum], *dark-blue*.

Caesar, (*Julius*), -aris, m., *Julius Caesar*, a famous Roman.

Cāius, -ī, m., see *Gājus*.

calathus, -ī, m., *basket*.

calcar, -āris, n. [calx, *heel*], *spur*. (149.)

callēns, -entis, adj. [P. of calleō, *be hard*], *hard, tough*.

calliditās, -ātis, f. [callidus, *cunning*], *shrewdness, cunning*.

calor, -ōris, m. [caleō, *be warm*], *heat, warmth*. CALORIC.

Campānia, -ae, f., *Campania*, a division of Italy.

campus, -ī, m., *field*. CAMP. Cf. ager.

candidus, -a, -um, adj. [candeō, *shine*], *bright, fair, white*. CANDID. Cf. albus.

canis, -is, m. and f., *dog*. (153.) CANINE.

Cannae, -ārum, f., *Cannæ*, a village in Apulia.

Cannēnsis, -e, adj. [Cannae], *of Cannæ*.

Cantium, -ī, n., *Kent*, in Britain.

cantō, 1 [canō], *sing*. CHANT.

cantus, -ūs, m. [canō], *singing, song*. (278.) CHANT.

capillus, -ī, m., *hair (of the head)*. CAPILLARY.

capiō, 3, cēpī, captum, *take, seize* (235); cōsilium capiō, *adopt a plan*. CAPTURE.

captīvus, -ī, m. [capiō], *captive, prisoner*.

caput, -itis, n., *head*. (105.) CAPITAL.

Carbō, -ōnis, m., *Carbo*, a Roman.

carcer, -eris, m., *prison*. INCARCERATE.

careō, 2, -uī, -itum, *be without, want*. CARET.

carmen, -inis, n., *song, poem*. (278.)

carō, carnis, f., *flesh*. CARNATION.

carpō, 3, -sī, -tum, *pluck*.

carrus, -ī, m., *wagon, cart*. CAR.

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj. [Carthāgō], *of Carthage, Carthaginian*.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage*, a town in Africa.

Carthāgō Nova, a town in Spain.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious*. CHARITY.

castra, -ōrum, n., *camp*. CASTLE.

cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō], *a falling; mischance, misfortune, chance*.

catellus, -i, m. [diminutive of catulus], *little dog, puppy*.

Catilina, -ae, m., *Catiline*, a famous Roman conspirator.

Catō, -ōnis, m., *Cato*, a celebrated Roman censor.

cauda, -ae, f., *tail*.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason; causā* (after a genitive), *for the sake*.

caveō, 2, cāvī, cautum, *beware, guard against*. CAUTION.

cēdō, 3, cessī, cessum, *go, depart, withdraw; grant*. CEDE.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift*. (179.) Celerity.

celeriter, adv. [celer], *swiftly*.

cēlō, 1, *conceal*. Cf. abdō.

cēnseo, 2, -uī, -um, *reckon; think, deem, be of opinion*. CENSURE. (429.)

centum, num. adj., indecl., *hundred*. CENT.

Cerēs, -eris, f., *Ceres*, goddess of agriculture. CEREAL.

certē, adv. [certus], *certainly, surely, of course*.

certō, 1, *contend, strive, vie with*.

certus, -a, -um, adj., *fixed, determined, certain, sure; certiore* faciō, *make (one) more certain, inform*.

[cēterus], -a, -um, adj. (usually in plur.), *the other, the rest*.

cibus, -i, m., *food*. Cf. pābulum.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero*, a famous Roman orator.

Cimbri, -ōrum, m., *the Cimbri*, a German tribe.

cingō, 3, cīnxi, cinctum, *bind, encircle, surround*.

circiter, adv. [circus, *circle*], *round about; about*.

circum-dūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead around*.

circum-siliō, 4, -ii, — [saliō], *jump or hop around*.

circum-veniō, 4, -vēni, -ventum, *surround; circumvent*.

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen*. (154.)

cīvitās, -ātis, f. [cīvis], (*body of citizens*), *state; citizenship*. CITY.

clādēs, -is, f., *destruction, defeat, disaster*.

clāmitō, 1 [frequentative of clāmō], *cry out, call out*. Cf. ex-clāmō.

clāmor, -ōris, m. [clāmō], *shout, cry*. CLAMOR.

clārus, -a, -um, adj., *clear, renowned, famous; loud*.

classis, -is, f., *class of citizens; fleet*. (154.)

cliēns, -entis, m., *client*. (163.)

coepī, coepisse (defective verb, tenses from pres. stem wanting), *began*.

coerceō, 2, -uī, -itum [co(m), arceō, *inclose*], *confine, check, restrain*.

cōgnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nitum [com, (g)nōscō], *learn, recognize, know*. Cf. āgnōscō.

cōgō, 3, -ēgi, -āctum [com, agō], *drive together, compel*. COGENT.

co-hortor, 1 [co(m), intensive], *exhort, urge, encourage*.

Collātīnus, -i, m., *Collatinus*, surname of Lucius Tarquinius.

collēga (conl), -ae, m. [lēgō], (*one who is chosen with another*), *colleague*.

colligō (conl), 3, -lēgi, -lectum [com, legō], *collect*.

collis, -is, *m.*, *hill*. (154.) Cf. *mōns*.

colloquium, -i, *n.* [colloquor], *conversation, colloquy*.

col-loquor, 3, -locūtus [com], *speak together, converse*.

colō, 3, coluī, cultum, *cultivate, till*. Cf. *incola, agricola*.

colōnia, -ae, *f.* [colōnus, *husbandman, colō*], *colony*.

color, -ōris, *m.*, *color*.

columba, -ae, *f.*, *dove*.

com (col, con, cor, co), primitive form of *cum*, a prefix denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive.

comes, -itis, *m.* and *f.* [comitor (com, eō)], *comrade, companion*.

comitor, 1 [comes], *accompany, attend*.

commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, *go to and fro*], *passage, trip, expedition*.

com-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, (*join together*), *commit*; *proelium committere, join battle, engage, begin fighting*.

com-modus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (*that has proper measure*), *convenient, suitable*. *COMMODIOUS*.

com-moror, 1, *stay, linger, delay, remain*.

com-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, (*put in violent motion*), *shake, disturb, agitate*. *COMMOTION*.

com-mūniō, 4, (*fortify strongly*), *secure, intrench*.

com-periō, 4, -peri, -pertum, *ascertain, learn, find out*.

com-pleō, 2, -plēvī, -plētum, *fill out, fill up*. Cf. *impleō*.

com-primō, 3, -pressī, -pressum [premō], *press together; check, suppress*.

con-cutiō, 3, -cussī, -cussum [com, quatiō], *shake violently*.

cōn-ferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (conl), [com], *bring together, collect*; sē cōnferre, *betake one's self*. *CONFER*.

cōn-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [com, faciō], *make, accomplish, carry out*.

cōn-fiteor, 2, -fessus [com, fateor], *confess*.

cōn-fligō, 3, -xī, -ctum [com], *contend, fight*. *CONFLICT*.

con-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [com, jaciō], (*throw together*), *throw, hurl*.

con-junx, -jugis, *m.* and *f.* [com, jungō, *join*], *spouse; wife, husband*. *CONJUGAL*.

cōnor, 1, *attempt, try*.

cōn-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsum [com, scandō, *climb*], *ascend, embark; go on board*.

cōn-sequor, 3, -cūtus [com], *follow close upon; follow*.

cōn-sīdō, 3, -sēdī, -sessum [com], (*sit together*), *encamp*.

cōnsilium, -i, *n.* [cōnsulō, cōnsul], *advice, counsel, prudence; plan, design*.

cōn-similis, -e, *adj.*, *very similar, quite like*.

cōn-spiciō, 3, -spēxī, -spectum [com, speciō, *look*], *look at attentively; observe, see, behold*.

cōn-spīcor 1 [cōnspiciō], *see at a glance, descry, catch sight of*.

cōnstāns, -antis, *adj.* [P. of cōnstō], *firm, steady*. *CONSTANCY*.

cōn-stat, 1, -stitit, *impers.*, *it is evident, clear*.

cōn-stituō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [com, statuō], (*place or put together*), *station, place; determine*.

cōn-suēscō, 3, -suēvī, -suētum [com], *become accustomed*; in perf., *be accustomed*.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. [cōnsuētus], *habit, custom*.

cōnsul, -ulis, m. [cōnsulō, *consult*], *consul*. (134.)

cōnsulāris, -e, adj. [cōnsul], *pertaining to a consul, consular*; noun, *ex-consul*.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. [cōnsul], *office of consul, consulship*.

cōn-sūmō, 3, -sūmpsi, -sūmptum [com], *take up completely, consume*.

con-temnō, 3, -psi, -ptum [com], *despise*. CONTEMN.

contemplor, 1, *look at, observe*. CONTEMPLATE.

con-tendō, 3, -di, -tum [com], (*draw tight*), *exert one's self, strive; hasten*. CONTEND.

contentiō, -ōnis, f. [contendō], *struggle, exertion, effort; contention*.

contentus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of contineō], *contented*; w. abl.

con-testor, 1 [com, testis, *witness*], *call to witness, invoke*.

con-tinēns, -entis, f. [P. of contineō, sc. terra], *continent*.

con-tineō, 2, -ui, -tentum [com, teneō], *hold together, hold, contain*.

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against*.

con-valēscō, 3, -valui, —, [com, valeō], *get well, grow strong*. CONVALESCENT. Cf. valeō.

con-veniō, 4, -vēni, -ventum [com], *come together, assemble*.

con-vertō, 3, -ti, -sum [com], *turn around, turn, change*. CONVERT.

cōpia, -ae, f. [com, ops], *abundance, wealth*; plur., *troops, forces*.

cor, cordis, n., *heart*. CORDIAL.

cōram, prep. w. abl., *in presence of*.

Corinthus, -i, f., *Corinth*. (11.4.)

Coriolānus, -i, m., *Coriolanus*, surname of C. Marcius, a Roman consul.

Cornēlia, -ae, f., *Cornelia*, mother of the Gracchi.

Cornēlius, -i, m., *Cornelius*, a Roman family name.

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn*.

corpus, -oris, n., *body*. (140.) CORPSE.

corrigō, 3, -rēxi, -rēctum [com, regō], *make straight, reform, correct*.

corripīō, 3, -ui, -reptum [com, rapiō], *seize, take hold of*.

cor-rumpō, 3, -rūpi, -ruptum [com], *break in pieces, destroy; corrupt, bribe*.

cortex, -icis, m. and f., *bark, shell, rind*. CORK.

cōrus, -i, m., *northwest (wind)*.

cotīdiē, adv. [quot, diēs], *daily*.

crās, adv., *to-morrow*.

Crassus, -i, m., *Crassus*, a rich Roman, contemporary of Cæsar.

creātor, -ōris, m. [creō], *creator*.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous*.

crēdō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *trust, believe*; w. dat. CREDIT.

creō, 1, *make, create; choose, elect*.

Croesus, -i, m., *Cræsus*, king of Lydia.

crūdēlis, -e, adj., *cruel, hard-hearted*.

crūdēliter, adv. [crūdēlis], *cruelly*.

cruentus, -a, -um, adj. [cruor], *stained with blood, bloody*.

cruor, -ōris, m., *blood, gore*. Cf. sanguis.

crūs, crūris, *n.*, *leg.*

culpā, -ae, *f.* [culpō], *blame, fault.*

CULPABLE. Cf. vitium.

culpō, 1 [culpa], *blame, find fault with.*

culter, -trī, *m.*, *knife.* COULTER.

cum, conj., *when; since, as; though, although.* (372 ff.)

cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*

Cumae, -ārum, *f.*, *Cumae*, a town in Campania.

cūnae, -ārum, *f.*, *cradle.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cunctor], *delaying, delay.*

cunctor, 1, *linger, hesitate.*

cupiditās, -ātis, *f.* [cupidus, cupiō], *desire, eagerness.* CUPIDITY.

Cupīdō, -inis, *m.* [cupidus], *Cupid*, god of love.

cupiō, 3, -ivī (-iī), -itum, *desire, be eager for.* Cf. dēsiderō.

cūr, adv. [quā, rē], *why, wherefore.*

cūra, -ae, *f.* [cūrō], *care, anxiety.*

cūrō, 1 [cūra], *care for, take care.*

currō, 3, cucurrī, cursum, *run.*

currus, -ūs, *m.* [currō], *chariot, car.*

cursus, -ūs, *m.* [currō], *a running, course.*

curvus, -a, -um, adj., *curved, bent; bending.*

custōdiō, 4 [custōs], *guard, protect, defend.*

custōs, -ōdis, *m.* and *f.* [custōdiō], *guardian, keeper.* CUSTODIAN.

cymba, -ae, *f.*, *boat.* Cf. nāvicula.

Cȳrus, -ī, *m.*, *Cyrus*, king of Persia.

Daedalus, -ī, *m.*, *Dædalus*, builder of the Labyrinth.

damnō, 1, *condemn.*

Dārēus, -ī, *m.*, *Darius*, king of Persia.

Dātis, -is, *m.*, *Datis*, a Persian general.

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning, of; (of time), in, during, about.*

dea, -ae, *f.*, *goddess.* (page 8, n. 1.)

dēbeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought.*

DEBIT, DEBT.

decem, num. adj., indecl., *ten.*

December, -bris, *m.* [decem], *December.* Often as adj.

decem-plex, -icis, adj. [plicō], *tenfold.*

dē-cernō, 3, -crēvī, -crētum, (*separate from*), *decide, determine; decree.*

dē-cerpō, 3, -sī, -tum [carpō], *pluck off.*

decet, 2, decuit, impers., *it is becoming, fitting, proper.* DECENT.

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [decem], *tenth.* DECIMAL.

dē-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, (*put from one's self*), *surrender, deliver up.*

dē-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, draw down, launch.* DEDUCT.

dē-fatigō, 1, *tire out, exhaust.*

dē-fendō, 3, -dī, -fēsum [dēfēnsor], (*strike off from*), *defend, protect.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.* [dēfendō], *defender, protector.*

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, (*bring from*), *deliver; report.*

dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj., *tired out, weary.*

dē-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], (*make away from*), *revolt; fail, be wanting.* DEFICIT, DEFECT.

dē-formis, -e, adj. [forma], *misshapen, ugly; base, disgraceful.*

de-inde, adv., (*from thence*), *then, afterwards.*

dēlectō, 1, *delight*.

dēlectus, -ūs, m. [dēligō], *selection; levy*.

dēleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum, *destroy*. DELETE.

dēliciae, -ārum, f., *delight, darling*.

dē-migrō, 1, *migrate from; emigrate, remove*.

Dēmōsthenēs, -is, m., *Demosthenes*, a famous Athenian orator.

dēnique, adv., *finally, at last*.

dēns, dentis, m., *tooth*. DENTIST.

dē-pereō, 4, -iī, —, *go to ruin, perish, be lost*.

dē-pōnō, 3, -posui, -positum, *put down, put by, lay down*. DEPOSIT.

dē-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsus [scandō, *climb*], *come down, descend*.

dē-serō, 3, -ui, -tum, *desert, abandon*.

dēsiderō, 1, *desire, long for, miss*. (319.) Cf. optō, volō, and cupiō.

dē-siliō, 4, -silui, -sultum [salio, *leap*], *leap down*. Cf. subsiliō and trānsiliō.

dē-sistō, 3, -stiti, -stitum [*stand off or apart*], *leave off, cease; desist*.

dē-spērō, 1 [spēs], *be hopeless, despair*.

dē-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be wanting, lack*; w. dat. Cf. dēficiō.

dē-trahō, 3, -trāxi, -trāctum, *draw off, take away*. DETRACT.

deus, -i, m., *god*. (262.) DEITY.

dēvorō, 1, *swallow up, devour*.

Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana*, goddess of the chase.

dīcō, 3, dixi, dictum, *say, tell*.

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dīcō], *chief magistrate, dictator*.

dictātūra, -ae, f. [dictātor], *office of dictator, dictatorship*.

dictitō [frequentative of dictō, dicō], *keep saying*.

diēs, -ēi, m. and f., *day*. (253.)

dif-ferō, differre, distuli, dilatum [dis], *scatter, separate, put off; differ*. (321.)

difficilis, -e, adj. [dis, facilis], (*far from easy*), *hard, difficult*. (207.)

digitus, -i, m., *finger*. DIGIT.

dignitās, -ātis, f. [dignus], *worth, dignity; office*.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., *worthy*.

diligēns, -entis, adj. [P. of diligō], *diligent, careful*.

diligenter, adv. [diligēns], *diligently*.

diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns], *diligence, carefulness*.

dī-ligō, 3, -lēxi, -lēctum [legō], *esteem, love*. (319.)

dīmīcō, 1, *fight, contend*. Cf. pugnō.

dī-midius, -a, -um, adj. [medius], *half*. DEMIGOD.

dī-mittō, 3, -misi, -missum, *send away, let go*. DISMISS.

dī-moveō, 2, -mōvi, -mōtum, (*move asunder*), *separate, drive away*.

dī-ruō, 3, dirui, dirutum, *tear asunder, destroy*. Cf. rescindō.

dis, dī (a prefix denoting separation), *asunder, apart, in different directions*. Cf. differō, discēdō, dissimilis, dimittō, and diruō.

Dīs, Ditis, m., *Dis*, another name of Pluto.

dis-cēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum, *depart, withdraw, go off*.

discipulus, -i, m. [discō], *learner, scholar, pupil*. DISCIPLE.

discō, 3, didici, —, *learn*.

dis-similis, -e, adj., (*far from like*), *unlike, dissimilar*. (207.)

diū, adv., *for a long time, long*.

dīves, -itis, adj. (comp. dītor, superl. divitissimus), *rich*. (167. 3.)

dīvitiae, -ārum, f. [dīves], *riches, wealth*.

dō, dare, dedi, datum, *give; put*.

doceō, 2, -uī, -tum, *teach, show*.

doctus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of doceō], *learned*. DOCTOR.

dolor, -ōris, m., *pain, grief*. DOLOROUS.

dolus, -ī, m., *trick, deceit*.

domicilium, -ī, n. [domus], *home, abode*. DOMICILE.

domina, -ae, f. [dominus], *mistress*. MADONNA.

dominor, 1 [dominus], *be a lord and master, rule*. DOMINEER.

dominus, -ī, m. [domina], *lord, master*. (66.)

domus, -ūs, f., *house, home; domī, at home*. (262, 336.)

dōnō, 1 [dōnum], *give, present*.

DONATE.

dōnum, -ī, n. [dō], *gift, present*.

dormiō, 4, *sleep*. DORMITORY.

Drusus, -ī, m., *Drusus*, a Roman.

dubitō, 1 [dubius], *hesitate, doubt*.

INDUBITABLE.

dubium, -ī, n. [dubius], *doubt*.

dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo], *doubtful*. DUBIOUS.

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo, centum], *two hundred*.

dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductum [dux], *lead*.

Duilius (C.), -ī, m., *Caius Duilius*, a Roman general.

dulcis, -e, adj., *sweet, pleasant*.

DULCET. Cf. suāvis.

dum, adv., *while, as long as; until*.

duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two*. (311. 4.) DUAL.

duo-decim, num. adj., indecl. [decem], *twelve*. DOZEN.

duo-dē-trīgintā, num. adj., indecl., *twenty-eight*.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., *hard*. ENDURE. Cf. difficilis.

dux, ducis, m. and f. [dūcō], *leader, general*. DUKE. Cf. imperātor.

ē, see ex.

ecce, interj., *lo! see! see there!*

ē-dīcō, 3, -dixī, -dictum, *speak out, declare, proclaim*. EDICT.

edō, edere or ēsse, ēdī, ēsum or ēssum, *eat*. EDIBLE.

ēducō, 1, *bring up, train, educate*.

ē-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out, bring away*. EDUCE.

ef-ferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum [ex], *bear out, bring forth*. (321.) ELATE.

efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [ex, faciō], *bring to pass, effect, complete; make, construct*.

egēns, -entis, adj. [P. of egeō], *in want, needy, destitute*.

ego, pers. pron., I. (264.) EGOTIST.

ē-gredior, 3, ēgressus [gradior, step], *go out, go forth; disembark, land*. EGRESS. Cf. exeō.

ēgregiē, adv. [ēgregius], *remarkably, excellently*.

ē-gregius, -a, -um, adj. [grex], *remarkable, excellent*. EGREGIOUS.

ēlegāns, -antis, adj., *choice, elegant*.

elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant*.

ē-lūdō, 3, -sī, -sum, *deceive, mock; elude*.

ē-mergō, 3, -sī, -sum, *arise, come forth; emerge*.

emō, 3, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy, purchase*. PREĒMPT.

enim, conj. (never the first word), *for*. Cf. nam.

Ennius, -ī, *m.*, *Ennius*, father of Roman poetry.

ē-nūntiō, 1, *say out, divulge, declare, report.* **ENUNCIATE.**

eō, adv. [*is*], *to that place, thither, there.*

eō, *ire, ii, itum, go.* (327.)

eōdem, adv. [*idem*], *to the same place.*

Ēpīrus, -ī, *f.*, *Epirus*, a division of Greece.

epistula, -ae, *f.*, *letter, epistle.*

eques, -itis, *m.* [*equus*], *horseman, knight.*

equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [*eques*], (*pertaining to a horseman*), *equestrian.*

equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [*equitō, eques*], (*body of equites*), *cavalry.*

equitō, 1 [*eques*], (*be a horseman*), *ride.*

equus, -ī, *m.*, *horse.* **EQUINE.**

ergō, adv., *therefore, accordingly.* Cf. *igitur* and *itaque.*

ē-ripiō, 3, -uī, -reptum [*rapīō*], *snatch out, seize and bear off.*

errō, 1, *wander; err, mistake.*

ē-rudiō, 4, [*rudis, rough*], *train, teach, instruct.* **ERUDITION.**

essedum, -ī, *n.*, *two-wheeled war-chariot.*

et, conj., *and; et . . . et, both . . . and.* Cf. *atque, ac, and -que.*

etiam, adv. and conj. [*et, jam*], (*and now*), *also, even.*

et-sī, conj., *though, although.*

Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*, *Europe.*

ē-vādō, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum, *go forth, escape.* **EVADE.**

ē-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, *come forth, turn out, happen.* **EVENT.** Cf. *accidō* and *incidō.*

ē-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum, *overturn, overthrow, destroy.*

ē-volō, 1, *fly away.*

ex or **ē**, prep. w. abl., *out of, from.*

exāminō, 1 [*exāmen, test*], *weigh out, weigh.*

excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [*P. of excellō*], *elevated, lofty, high.*

ex-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [*capīō*], *take out, except; receive, welcome.*

ex-clāmō, 1, *cry out, exclaim.* Cf. *clāmitō.*

ex-cūsō, 1 [*causa*], *excuse.*

ex-cutiō, 3, -cussī, -cussum [*quatiō*], *shake out, strike off, drive away, cast out.*

ex-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *go out, come out.* **EXIT.** Cf. *ēgredior.*

ex-erceō, 2 [*arceō*], *keep busy, employ; train.* **EXERCISE.**

exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [*exerceō*], (*the thing trained*), *army.*

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., *scanty, small, slight.* **EXIGUOUS.**

expeditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*expediō*], *excursion, expedition.*

ex-pellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive out or away, expel.*

ex-perior, 4, -pertus, *make trial of, test.* **EXPERT.**

ex-plicō, 1, -āvī, -ātum (-uī, -itum), *unfold, explain.*

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [*explōrō*], *a searcher out, explorer; spy, scout.*

ex-plōrō, 1, *search out, examine, explore; reconnoitre.*

ex-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, *put or set out, expose; draw up, marshal.*

ex-pūgnō, 1, *take by storm, assault.* Cf. *oppūgnō.*

ex-sistō, 3, -stiti, -stitutum, (*stand forth*), *exist, appear*.

ex-spectō, 1, *await, wait for, expect*.

ex-spīrō, 1, *breathe out, breathe one's last, expire*.

ex-stinguō, 3, -stinxi, -stinctum, (*quench completely*), *extinguish; kill, destroy*.

ex-terreō, 2, -uī, -itum, *frighten, affright*.

ex-timēscō, 3, -timui, —[timeō], *fear greatly*.

extrā, prep. w. acc., *without, outside of*. **EXTRA**. Cf. intrā.

ex-turbō, 1, *thrust out, drive away*.

faber, -bri, m., *worker, carpenter*. **FABRIC**.

Fabius, -ī, m., *Fabius*, a famous Roman general.

Fabricius, -ī, m., *Fabricius*, a famous Roman general.

fābula, -ae, f. [for, *speak*], *story, tale, fable*.

facilis, -e, adj. [faciō], (*that can be done*), *easy to do, easy*. **FACILITY**.

facinus, -oris, n. [faciō], (*the thing done*), *deed; crime*. Cf. scelus.

faciō, 3, fēcī, factum, *do, make*.

fāgus, -ī, f., *beech-tree*. (11. 4.)

Faliscī, -ōrum, m., *the Faliscans*, a people of Etruria.

falsō, adv. [falsus], *falsely*.

falsus, -a, -um, adj. [fallō, *deceive*], *deceptive, false*.

fāma, -ae, f. [for, *speak*], *rumor; fame, renown*.

famēs, -is, f., *hunger, famine*.

fās, n., indecl. [for, *speak*], *divine law; often translated as adj., right, lawful*.

fascis, -is, m., *bundle*. **FASCINE**.

fatīgō, 1, *tire out, weary*. **FATIGUE**.

fātum, -ī, n. [for, *speak*], (*that which is spoken*), *fate, destiny*.

faveō, 2, fāvi, fautum, *be favorable to, favor, befriend; w. dat.*

febris, -is, f. [ferveō, *be hot*], *fever*.

Februārius, -ī, m., *February*. Often as adj.

fēliciter, adv. [fēlix], *luckily, fortunately*.

fēlix, -icis, adj., *lucky, fortunate*.

fera, -ae, f. [ferus], *wild animal, wild beast*.

ferē, adv., *nearly, for the most part, almost, about*. Cf. paene.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, bring; ferunt, they say*. (321.) Cf. portō and vehō.

ferōx, -ōcis, adj. [ferus], *fierce, impetuous*. **FEROCIOUS**.

ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], *of iron, iron*.

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron*.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, savage, cruel*. **FIERCE**.

fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs], *trusty, faithful*. **FIDELITY**. Cf. fidus.

fidēliter, adv. [fidēlis], *faithfully*.

fidēs, -ēī, f. [fidō, *trust*], *trust, faith*.

fidus, -a, -um, adj. [fidō, *trust*], *trusty, faithful*.

filia, -ae, f., *daughter*. (page 8, note 1.) Cf. nāta.

fillolus, -ī, m. [diminutive of filius], *little son*.

fillus, -ī, m., *son*. (79.) **FILIAL**.

finiō, 4 [finis], *end, finish*. **FINITE**.

finis, -is, m., *end, boundary*. (154.)

finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [finis], *bordering on, neighboring*.

fiō, fieri, factus (supplies pass. to faciō), *be made, become*. (327.)

fīrmō, 1 [firmus], *make strong*.

firmus, -a, -um, adj. [firmō], *steadfast, strong*. FIRM.

flagrō, 1, burn.

flectō, 3, -xī, -xum, bend, turn.

fleō, 2, flēvi, flētum, weep, cry.

flō, 1, blow.

flōs, flōris, m., flower. FLORAL.

flūmen, -inis, n. [fluō], (*that which flows*), river, stream. (172.)

fluō, 3, flūxī, fluxum, flow. FLUID.

fluvius, -ī, m. [fluō], (*the flowing thing*), river, stream. (172.)

folium, -ī, n., leaf. FOLIAGE.

fōns, fontis, m., spring, fount, fountain.

fore, for **futurum esse**.

formīdō, -inis, f., fear, terror.

forte, adv. [fors, chance], *per-chance, perhaps, possibly*.

fortis, -e, adj., strong, brave, courageous.

fortiter, adv. [fortis], bravely, courageously.

fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis], strength, bravery, endurance, fortitude.

fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], fortune.

forum, -ī, n., market-place; forum.

frangō, 3, frēgī, frāctum, dash in pieces, break. FRACTION.

frāter, -tris, m., brother. FRATER-NAL.

frētus, -a, -um, adj., relying on, trusting to; w. abl.

frīgidus, -a, -um, adj. [frīgeō, freeze], cold, frigid.

frondōsus, -a, -um, adj. [frōns], covered with leaves, leafy.

frōns, frondis, f., leaf, foliage; garland of leaves. FROND.

frōns, -tis, f., brow, forehead. FRONT.

frūctus, -ūs, m. [fruor], fruit. Cf. frūmentum.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj. [frū-mentum], pertaining to grain; rēs frūmentāria, grain-supply.

frūmentum, -ī, n. [fruor], grain, corn. Cf. frūctus.

fruor, 3, frūctus, enjoy; w. abl. (304.)

frūstrā, adv., in vain. FRUSTRATE. (frūx), frūgis, f. (oftener plur.; gen. frūgum) [fruor], fruit of the earth, fruits. Cf. frūctus.

fuga, -ae, f. [fugiō, flee], flight.

fugiō, 3, fūgī, -itum [fugō, fuga], run away. FUGITIVE.

fugō, 1 [fugiō, fuga], put to flight, chase, drive.

fungor, 3, fūctus, perform, discharge; w. abl. (304.) FUNCTION.

Gājus, gen. Gāi (also written Cāitus), m., Caius, a Roman first name.

Galba, -ae, m., Galba.

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. [Gallus], belonging to the Gauls, Gallic.

gallīna, -ae, f. [gallus, cock], hen.

Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul.

gaudeō, 2, gāvīsus [gaudium], be glad, rejoice. (page 177, n. 2.)

gaudium, -ī, n. [gaudeō], joy, delight. JEWEL.

gener, -erī, m., son-in-law.

gēns, gentis, f., clan, family. GENTEEL.

genū, -ūs, n., knee. (245.)

genus, -eris, n., birth, race; kind, nature. GENDER.

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., German; noun, a German.

gerō, 3, gessī, gestum, bear, carry; wage, manage, do. GESTURE.

gladiātor, -ōris, M. [gladius],
(swordsmen), *gladiator*.

gladius, -ī, M., sword. GLADIOLUS.

glōria, -ae, F., *glory, fame, renown*.

gracilis, -e, adj., *slender*. (207.)

gradus, -ūs, M., *step*. (245.)

GRADE.

Graecē, adv. [Graecus], *in Greek*.

Graecia, -ae, F., *Greece*.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Grecian*,

Greek; noun, *a Greek*.

grāmen, -inis, N., *grass*.

grānum, -ī, N., *grain, seed*.

grātulor, 1 [grātus], *congratulate*;
w. dat.

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *acceptable*,
pleasing. GRATEFUL.

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, serious*.

GRAVE.

graviter, adv. [gravis], *heavily*,
seriously.

gremium, -ī, N., *lap, bosom*.

grex, gregis, M., *flock, herd*.

gustō, 1, *taste, eat*.

habeō, 2, *have, hold*. HABIT.

habitō, 1 [frequentative of habeō],
inhabit; dwell, live. (194.)

Hannibal, -alis, M., *Hannibal*, a
famous Carthaginian general.

Hasdrubal, -alis, M., *Hasdrubal*,
a Carthaginian general, brother
of Hannibal.

hasta, -ae, F. *spear*.

hauriō, 4, haurī, haustum, *draw*
(water), *drain*. EXHAUST.

Hector, -oris, M., *Hector*, chief of
the Trojan warriors.

Henna, -ae, F., *Henna*, a city of
Sicily.

herī, adv., *yesterday*.

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron., *this, this*
of mine; abl., hoc, *on this account*;
as pers. pron., *he, she, it*. (275.)

hiems (hiemps), hiemis, F., *win-*
ter; storm.

hinc, adv. [hic], *from this place*,
hence.

Hispānia, -ae, F., *Spain*.

Hispanus, -ī, M., *a Spaniard*.

historia, -ae, F., *history*.

hodiē, adv. [hōc, diē], *to-day*.

Homērus, -ī, M., *Homer*, the earli-
est and greatest Greek poet.

homō, -inis, M. and F., (*human be-*
ing), *man*. (138.)

honestās, -ātis, F. [honestus],
honor, integrity, honesty.

honōrificē, adv., *honorably*.

honor, -ōris, M., *honor*.

honōrō, 1 [honor], *honor, respect*.

hōra, -ae, F., *hour*.

Horātius, -ī, M., *Horatius, Horace*.

horridus, -a, -um, adj. [horreō,
shudder at], *frightful, rough*,
wild. HORRID.

hortor, 1, *urge, exhort, encour-*
age.

hortus, -ī, M., *garden*. (38.)

hospes, -itis, M. and F., *host, guest*,
guest-friend. HOSPITAL.

hostis, -is, M. and F., *enemy*. (149,
172.) HOSTILE.

hūc, adv. [for old form hōc], *to*
this place, hither.

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. [homō],
human; cultivated, refined.

humilis, -e, adj. [humus, *ground*],
(*pertaining to humus*), *low, low-*
ly, humble, poor. (207.)

ibi, adv. [is], *in that place, there*.

Īcarus, -ī, *Icarus*, son of Dæda-
lus.

īdem, eadem, idem, determ. pron.
[is], *same*. (270.) IDENTICAL.

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable*,
proper.

Idūs, -uum, f. plur., *the Ides* of the month. The thirteenth, except in March, May, July, and October; in those months the fifteenth. (244. 1.)

igitur, conj. (seldom the first word), *therefore, then*. Cf. *ergō* and *itaque*.

ignāvia, -ae, f. [ignāvus], *laziness, idleness, cowardice*.

ignāvus, -a, -um, adj. [in, not, gnāvus, *busy*], *lazy, idle, cowardly*.

ignis, -is, m., *fire*. (149.) **IGNITE**.

ignōrō, 1 [ignārus, *ignorant*], *not know, be ignorant of*. **IGNORE**.

ille, -a, -ud, dem. pron., *that (yonder)*; as pers. pron., *he, she, it*. (275.)

illūc, adv. [ille], *to that place, thither, there*.

imāgō, -inis, f., *image, likeness, picture*. (134.)

imitor, 1, *imitate*.

immānis, -e, adj., *huge, immense, monstrous*. Cf. *māgnus*.

impediō, 4 [in, pēs], (*entangle the feet*), *impede, hinder, prevent*.

im-pellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum [in], *urge on, impel, prompt*.

imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō], *commander, general*. **EMPEROR**.

imperium, -ī, n. [imperō], *command, authority, power*. **EMPIRE**.

imperō, 1 [imperium], *order, command*; w. dat. **IMPERATIVE**.

impetrō, 1, *accomplish; gain, procure, obtain*. Cf. *adipiscor*.

impetus, -ūs, m. [impetō, *rush upon*], *attack, onset*. **IMPETUOUS**.

im-pleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum [in], *fill up, fill full, fill*. Cf. *compleō*.

im-plōrō, 1 [in], *cry out to, beseech, implore*.

im-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum [in], *put or place upon*. **IMPOSE**.

improbus, -a, -um, adj. [in, not, probus, *good*], *bad, wicked*. Cf. *malus*.

im-prō-vīsō, adv. [videō], *unexpectedly*. **IMPROVISE**.

im-pudēns, -entis, adj. [in], *shameless, impudent*.

in, prep. w. acc., *into, to, against, for*; w. abl., *in, on*. (333. 1, 2.)

in, prefix, in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. "un-," "in-," *not*.

inānis, -e, adj., *empty, useless*.

in-cautus, -a, -um, adj., *incautious, heedless*.

in-certus, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain*.

in-cidō, 3, -cidi, -cāsum [cadō], *fall into; happen, befall*. Cf. *accidō* and *eveniō*. **INCIDENT**.

in-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], (*take in hand*), *begin*. Cf. *ōrdior*. **INCEPTION**.

in-cōgnitus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown*.

incola, -ae, m. and f. [incolō], *inhabitant*.

in-colō, 3, -uī, — [incola], *dwell in, inhabit, live, dwell*. Cf. *habitō* and *vivō*.

incolumis, -e, adj., *unharmed, safe*.

inde, adv. [is], *thence*.

indiciū, -ī, n., *discovery, disclosure*.

in-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go in, enter; begin*. (327.)

in-ferī, -ōrum, m. [inferus, *below*], *inhabitants of the lower world, the dead*. **INFERNAL**.

in-ferō, *inferre*, intuli, illātum (inl) (*bear in or against*), *cause*; bellum *inferre*, *make war upon*; w. dat. (321.)

infestus, -a, -um, adj., *hostile*, *troublesome*, *dangerous*. INFEST.

in-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *stain*, *color*. INFECT.

in-fīnītus, -a, -um, adj. [finis], *boundless*, *unlimited*, *infinite*, *vast*.

in-flectō, 3, -flēxī, -flexum, *bend*; *change*, *alter*. INFLECT.

in-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior, *step*], *enter*. INGRESS.

in-hiō, 1, *gape at*, *long for*.

in-imīcus, -a, -um, adj. [amicus], *unfriendly*, *hostile*; noun, *enemy*. (172.) INIMICAL.

inītiūm, -ī, n. [inēō], *beginning*. INITIAL.

in-jūria, -ae, f. [in, jūs], *injustice*, *injury*, *wrong*.

in-jūstē, adv. [injūstus], *unjustly*.

inopia, -ae, f. [inops, *without resources*], *want*, *poverty*.

inquā, defective verb, *say*; inquit (*placed after one or more quoted words*), *said he*.

in-stituō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [statuō, *place*], *fix*, *determine*, *undertake*. INSTITUTE.

in-strūctus, -a, -um [P. of instruō], *furnished*, *equipped*.

in-struō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctum [struō, *build*], *build up*, *form*, *instruct*, *teach*.

insula, -ae, f., *island*. PENINSULA.

in-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be in*, *among*; w. dat. and in w. abl.

intel-legō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctum [inter], *see into*; *understand*. INTELLECT.

inter, prep. w. acc., *between*, *among*, *amid*.

inter-dum, adv., *sometimes*.

inter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *perish*.

inter-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *kill*, *put to death*. Cf. necō and occidō.

interior, -us, adj. [no positive], *inner*, *interior*.

inter-pellō, 1, *interrupt*; *entreat*, *importune*.

inter-rogō, 1, *ask*, *inquire*, *question*. (382.) INTERROGATION.

inter-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be present at or among*; w. dat. (295.) Cf. adsum.

intrā, prep. w. acc., *within*. Cf. extrā.

in-tueor, 2, *look towards*, *at*, *or upon*. INTUITION.

intus, adv. [in], *within*, *inside*.

in-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, *come upon*, *find*, *meet with*, *discover*. INVENT. Cf. reperiō.

in-vicem, adv., *by turns*, *in turn*, *alternately*.

in-victus, -a, -um, adj., *unconquerable*, *invincible*.

invitō, 1, *invite*.

invitus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling*, *reluctant*.

in-vocō, 1, *call upon*, *invoke*.

iō, interj., *ah!* *oh!*

ipse, -a, -um, intens. pron., *self*, *very*. (270.)

ira, -ae, f., *anger*, *wrath*; *ire*.

ir-rīdeō, 2, -rīsī, -rīsum [in], *laugh at*, *ridicule*; *jest*, *mock*.

is, ea, id, determ. pron., *that*; as pers. pron., *he*, *she*, *it*. (270.)

iste, -a, -ud, dem. pron., *that* (*of yours*). (275.)

ita, adv., *so*, *thus*. Cf. sic.

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy*.

Italus, -a, -um, adj., *Italian*.
ita-que, conj., and so, therefore.

Cf. **ergō** and **igitur**.

item, adv. [ita], *likewise, also*.

ITEM.

iter, **itineris**, n. [eō], *way, road, march*. (262.) **ITINERANT**.

iterum, adv., *a second time, again*.

ITERATION.

Ithaca, -ae, f., *Ithaca*, an island in the Ionian Sea.

Itius, m., *Itius*, a port in Gaul.

jaceō, 2, -uī, — [jaciō], (*be thrown*), *lie*.

jaciō, 3, jēcī, jactum [jaceō], *throw, cast, hurl, fling*.

jam, adv., *already, now, at last*.
 Cf. **nunc**.

jamjam, adv., *already*; **jamjam ventūrus**, *on the point of coming*.

jānuā, -ae, f. [Jānus], *door*. Cf. **porta**. **JANITOR**.

Jānus, -ī, m. [jānuā], *Janus*, the two-faced god. **JANUARY**.

jējūnium, -ī, n. [jējūnus], *fast, hunger*.

jējūnus, -a, -um [jējūnium], *fasting, hungry, without food*.

jocus, -ī, m. (plur. jocī and joca), *joke, jest*; **per jocum**, *in jest, for a joke*.

Jōhanniculus, -ī, m., *little John, Johnny, Jack*.

jubeō, 2, jussī, jūssum, *bid, order, command*. Cf. **imperō**.

jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasant, agreeable*. **JOCUND**.

jūdex, -icis, m. [jūdicō], *judge*. (105.)

jūdicium, -ī, n. [jūdicō], *judgment, opinion; trial*.

jūdicō, 1 [jūdex], *judge*. (429.)

Jūlius, -ī, m., *Julius*, a Roman family name.

Juppiter, **Jovis**, m., *Jupiter*, the supreme deity of the Romans. (262.)

jūrō, 1 [jūs], *swear, take an oath*.

jūs, **jūris**, n., *right, justice*. (140.)

Cf. **fās**.

jūssus, -ūs, m. [jubeō], *command, order*.

jūstē, adv. [jūstus], *rightly, justly*.

juvenis, -is, m. and f., *youth, young person*. Cf. **adulēscēns**.

juventūs, -ūtis, f. [juvenis], *the season of youth, youth*.

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Labienus*, a lieutenant of Cæsar's.

labor, m., -ōris, *labor*.

labōrō, 1 [labor], *work, toil*.

labrum, -ī, n., *lip*.

lac, **lactis**, n., *milk*. **LACTEAL**.

Lacedaemonī, -ōrum, m., *the Lacedæmonians*.

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear*. **LACRYMOSE**.

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake, pond*.

Laevīnus, -ī, m., *Lævinus*, a Roman consul.

lapis, -idis, m., *stone*. **LAPIDARY**.

Latīnē, adv. [Latīnus], *in Latin*.

Latīnus, -a, -um, adj. [Latium], *Latin*; noun, *a Latin*.

lātrō, 1, *bark, bark at*.

latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber*. **LADRONE**.

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide*.

LATITUDE.

latus, -eris, n., *side*. **LATERAL**.

laudō, 1 [laus], *praise, laud*.

laus, **laudis**, f. [laudō], *praise, glory, fame*.

lēgātus, -ī, m. [lēgō, depute], *ambassador, lieutenant*. **LEGATE**.

legiō, -ōnis, f. [legō], (*a gathering*), *legion*.

legō, 3, lēgī, lēctum, *gather; select; read.*

lēnis, -e, adj., *soft, smooth, gentle.*

leō, -ōnis, m., *lion.* (134.)

lepus, -oris, m., *hare.*

levis, -e, adj. [levō], *light.* (150.)

levō, 1 [levis], *lift up, raise, lighten.* ELEVATE.

lēx, lēgis, f., *law.* LEGAL.

libenter, adv. [libet, *it pleases*], *willingly, gladly; libenter videō, I am glad to see.*

liber, -brī, m., *book.* LIBRARY.

liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free.* (71.) LIBERAL.

Liber, -erī, m., *Bacchus, god of wine.*

liberē, adv. [liber], *freely, fearlessly.*

liberī, -ōrum, m. [liber], *children.* (60.)

liberō, 1 [liber], *set free, free, liberate; w. abl.*

libertās, -ātis, f. [liber], *freedom, liberty.*

licet, 2, licuit or licitum est, *impers., it is permitted, (one) may.*

ligneus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum], *of wood, wooden.*

lignum, -ī, n., *wood; plur., sticks of wood.*

ligō, -ōnis, m., *mattock, hoe.*

lilium, -ī, n., *lily.*

lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language.*

littera, -ae, f., *letter of the alphabet; plur., letter, epistle; literature.*

litus, -oris, n., *shore, beach, bank.*

locus, -ī, m. (plur. locī and loca), *place, position, spot.* LOCAL.

longē, adv. [longus], *far off; widely, greatly, much, by much.*

longus, -a, -um, adj., *long.* LONGITUDE.

loquor, 3, locūtus, *speak, talk.*

lūctus, -ūs, m. [lūgeō], *mourning, lamentation.*

lūcus, -ī, m. [lūceō, *shine*], (*open place in a wood*), *wood, grove.*

lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum [lūdus], *play.* INTERLUDE.

lūdus, -ī, m. [lūdō], *game, play.*

lūgeō, 2, lūxī, —, *mourn, lament.*

lūmen, -inis, n. [lūceō, lūx], *light.* LUMINOUS.

lūna, -ae, f. [lūceō, lūx], *moon.* LUNA.

lupus, -ī, m., *wolf.*

luscinia, -ae, f., *nightingale.*

lūx, lūcis, f. [lūceō, *shine*], *light, daylight.* LUCID.

M., abbreviation of *Marcus*, a Roman first name.

macte, adj. [voc. of mactus], *be honored, be blessed; hail! well done!* (page 178, note 3.)

maculō, 1, *stain.*

magis, adv. [māg(nus)], *more.*

magister, -trī, m. [māg(nus)], *master, teacher.* Cf. praeceptor.

magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister], (*the office of a magister*), *magistracy, magistrate.*

māgnificus, -a, -um, adj. [māgnus, faciō], *splendid, magnificent.*

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. [māgnus], *greatness, size, magnitude.*

māgnus, -a, -um, adj., comp. mājor, superl. māximus, *great, large.* MAGNIFY.

mājor, -us, comp. of māgnus. MAJOR.

male, adv. [malus], *badly, ill.* (219.)

mālō, mälle, mālui, — [magis, volō], *be more willing, prefer, would rather.* (316.)

malum, -ī, n., *bad thing, evil.*

mālum, -ī, n., *apple.*

malus, -a, -um, adj., comp. *pējor*,
superl. *pessimus*, *bad, evil; bale-*
ful. (208.) Cf. *improbus*.

māne, adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, 2, *mānsi*, *mānsūm*, *stay,*
remain, await.

mānēs, -ium, m., *departed spirits,*
souls.

Manlius, -ī, m., *Manlius*, a Roman.

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; force, band.*
(244, 1.) **MANUAL.**

Mārcellus, -ī, m., *Marcellus*, a
Roman general.

mare, -is, n., *sea.* (149.) **MARINE.**

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [*mare*],
belonging to the sea, bordering
on the sea, maritime.

Marius (C.), -ī, m., *Gājus Marius*,
a famous Roman general.

Mārtius, -ī, m. [*Mars*], *March.*
Often as adj.

māssa, -ae, f., *mass.*

māter, -tris, f., *mother.* **MATER-**
NAL.

māteria, -ae, f. [*māter*], (*mother-*
stuff), *materials, timber.*

mātrōna, -ae, f. [*māter*], *matron,*
wife, lady.

mātūrō, 1 [*mātūrus*, *ripe*], *hasten.*

māximē, adv. [*māximus*], *most,*
especially, greatly. (219.)

māximus, -a, -um, superl. of *mā-*
gnus. (208.) **MAXIMUM.**

medicus, -ī, m. [*medeor*, *cure*],
physician. **MEDICINE.**

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, adj. [*me-*
dus, *terra*], *midland, inland.*
MEDITERRANEAN.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle;*
often to be translated *midst.*

Meldi, -ōrum, m., *the Meldi*, a
people of Gaul.

mellior, -us, comp. of *bonus.*
(208.) **AMELIORATE.**

mellitus, -a, -um, adj. [*mel,*
honey], *honey-sweet, darling.*

memor, -oris, adj., *mindful.* (150.)
MEMORABLE.

memoria, -ae, f. [*memor*], *mem-*
ory.

mendācium, -ī, n. [*mendāx*],
lying, falsehood.

mendāx, -ācis, adj. [*mentior*],
lying, deceitful. **MENDACIOUS.**

mēns, *mentis*, f., *mind, purpose.*
(273.) **MENTAL.**

mēnsa, -ae, f., *table.*

mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*

mentior, 4 [*mendāx*], *lie, deceive.*

Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury*, mes-
senger of the gods. (79.)

mereō, } 2, *be worthy of, deserve,*
mereor, } *merit.*

merīdiānus, -a, -um, adj. [*merī-*
diēs], *of or belonging to midday,*
noon; meridian.

Metellus, -ī, m., *Metellus*, a Ro-
man general.

metuō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [*metus*], *fear.*
Cf. *timeō*.

metus, -ūs, m. [*metuō*], *fear, dread.*
Cf. *timor*.

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron. (voc.
sing. masc. *mī*), *my, mine.*

migrō, 1, *migrate.*

mīles, -itis, m., *soldier.* (105.)
MILITARY.

mille, num. adj., indecl. in sing. ;
in plur. *milia*, -ium, *thousand.*
(311, 6.)

Miltiadēs, -is, m., *Miltiades*, a
Greek general.

Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva*, goddess
of wisdom.

minimē, adv. [*minus*], *least;*
no, by no means, far from it.

minister, -trī, m. [minus], (*an inferior*), *servant*. (66.) **MINISTER**. Cf. *magister*.

minor, 1 [minae, *threats*], *threaten*.

minor, -us, comp. of parvus.

minus, adv. [minor], *less*. **MINUS**.

mīrābilis, -e, adj. [mīror, *wonder at*], *to be wondered at; wonderful, extraordinary*. **MARVEL**.

misellus, -a, -um, adj. [diminutive of miser], *poor little*.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, unhappy, miserable*.

miseret, 2, -itum est, impers. [miser], *it makes miserable, it excites pity, (one) pities; nōs miseret, we pity*. (416.)

miseria, -ae, f. [miser], *wretchedness, misery*.

Mithridatēs, -is, m., *Mithridates*, king of Pontus.

mittō, 3, misī, missum, *send*. **MIS-SION**.

modestia, -ae, f. [modestus], *modesty*.

modius, -ī, m. [modus], *measure; peck*.

modo, adv. [modus], *only; modo . . . modo, now . . . now*.

molestus, -a, -um, adj. [mōlēs, *pile*], *troublesome*. **MOLEST**.

molliō, 4 [mollis], *soften*. **MOLLIFY**.

moneō, 2, -uī, -itum, *remind, advise, warn*. **MONITOR**. (112.)

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, hill*. Cf. *collis*.

mōnstrō, 1 [moneō], *show, point out*. **DEMONSTRATE**.

monumentum, -ī, n. [moneō], (*that which reminds*), *memorial, monument*.

mora, -ae, f., *delay*.

Morinī, -ōrum, m., *the Morini*, a people of Gaul.

morior, 3, mortuus (fut. part. moritūrus) [mors], *die*.

mōrōsus, -a, -um, adj. [mōs], *fretful, cross; morose*.

mors, mortis, f. [morior], *death*.

mortālis, -e, adj. [mors], (*liable to death*), *mortal*.

mortuus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of morior], *dead*.

mōs, mōris, m., *manner, habit, custom*. (140.) **MORAL**.

mōtus, -ūs, m. [moveō], *motion, movement; tumult, disturbance*.

moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtum, *move*.

mox, adv., *soon, presently*.

mulier, -eris, f., *woman*.

multitūdō, -inis, f. [multus], *multitude*.

multum, adv. [multus], *much*.

multus, -a, -um, adj., comp. plūs, superl. plūrimus, *much, many*. **MULTIPLY**.

mundus, -ī, m., *world, universe*.

MUNDANE. Cf. *orbis terrārum*.

mūniō, 4 [moenia, *fortifications*], *fortify, defend*.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. [mūniō], *fortification*. **MUNITION**.

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall*. **MURAL**.

mūtō, 1, *change, alter*. **MUTATION**.

nam, conj., *for*. Cf. *enim*.

nanciscor, 3, nactus (nactus), *get, obtain; find, meet with*.

nārrō, 1, *tell, relate, report, narrate*.

nāscor, 3, nātus, *be born; be found*.

Nāsica, -ae, m., *Nasica*, surname of one of the Scipios.

nāta, -ae, f. [P. of nāscor], *daughter*. Cf. *filia*.

nātūra, -ae, f. [nāscor], *nature*.

nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita, from nāvis], *sailor*. **NAUTICAL**.

nāvicula, -ae, f. [diminutive of *nāvis*], *little vessel, boat*. Cf. *cymba*.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāvigō], *a sailing; navigation*.

nāvigō, 1 [nāvis, agō], *sail, set sail*.

nāvis, -is, f., *ship*. (154.) NAVAL.

nē, conj., *that not, lest*; w. hortatory subjunctive, *not*.

ne, interrog. adv., enclitic. (page 10, note 2.) Cf. *nōnne* and *num*.

nec, see *neque*.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj. [necesse], *necessary*.

necessitās, -ātis, f. [necesse], *necessity, constraint*.

necō, 1, *kill, slay*. Cf. *interficiō* and *occidō*.

nectō, 3, *nexui* (*nexi*), *nexum*, *bind, weave*. CONNECT.

negō, 1 [nē, aiō, say], *say not, deny; refuse*. NEGATIVE.

nēmō, -inis, m. and f. [nē, homō], *no one*. For gen. and abl. use *nullius*, *nullō*.

Neptūnus, -i, m., *Neptune*, god of the sea.

nē-quāquam, adv., *by no means, not at all*.

ne-que (*nec*), *and not; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor*.

nē-sciō, 4, *know not, be ignorant of*.

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., *neither (of two)*. (200.) NEUTRAL.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black*. NEGRO. Cf. *āter*.

nihil, n., indecl., *nothing*.

nimum, adv., *too, too much*.

ni-si, conj., *if not, unless, except*.

nix, *nivis*, f., *snow*. (167, 2.)

nōbills, -e, adj. [nōscō], *well-known, famous; noble*.

noceō, 2, -ui, -itum, *do harm to, hurt, injure*; w. dat. Cf. *obsum*.

noctū, adv. [nox], *by night, in the night*.

nōlō, *nōlle*, *nōlui*, — [nē, volō], *be unwilling, will not, not wish*. (316.)

nōmen, -inis, n. [nōscō], (*that by which a thing is known*), *name*. NOMINAL. (134.)

nōminō, 1 [nōmen], *name, call*.

nōn, adv. [nē, ūnum], *not*.

nōn-ne, interrog. adv., *expecting an affirmative answer, not?* Cf. -ne and *num*.

nōn-nullus, -a, -um, adj., (*not none*), *some*.

nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj. [novem], *ninth*.

nōscō, 3, *nōvī*, *nōtum*, *learn, know*.

P. *nōtus*, -a, -um, as adj., *known*.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *our, ours*. *Nostrī*, *our men*.

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new*. NOVELTY.

nox, *noctis*, f., *night*. (167. 2.) NOCTURNAL.

nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud*. (149.)

nullus, -a, -um, adj. [nē, ūllus], *not any, no, none*. (200.) NULLITY.

num, interrog. adv., *expecting a negative answer, whether?* Cf. *nōnne* and -ne.

Numa, -ae, m., *Numa (Pompilius)*, second king of Rome.

numerus, -i, m., *number*.

nummus, -i, m., *piece of money, coin*.

nunc, adv., *now*. Cf. *jam*.

nunquam, adv. [nē, unquam], *never*.

nūntiō, 1 [nūntius], *announce, report*.

nūntius, -i, m. [nūntiō], *bearer of news, messenger*.

nūsqum, adv. [nē, usquam], *no-where*.

nūtriō, 4, *feed, nourish, support*.
NUTRITION. Cf. alō.

ō, interj., *O, oh!*

ob-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *go to, reach, meet*.

ob-ligō, 1 [ligō, bind], *bind, oblige, put under obligation*.

oblīvīscor, 3, oblitus, *forget*.

ob-ruō, 3, -uī, -utum, *overwhelm, cover, bury*.

obses, -sidis, M. and F. [ob, sedeō], *(one who sits or remains as a pledge), hostage*.

ob-sideō, 2, -sēdī, -sessum [sedeō], *(sit against), blockade, besiege*.

ob-sisto, 3, -stitī, -stitum, *oppose, withstand, obstruct*; w. dat.

ob-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be against, opposed to; injure*; w. dat.

ob-temperō, 1, *comply with, yield to*; w. dat.

ob-tineō, 2, -uī, -tentum [teneō], *hold fast, keep, occupy*. OBTAIN.

ob-viam, adv., *in the way, towards*; with verb of motion, *meet*; w. dat.

occāsus, -ūs, M. [occidō], *(a sinking), setting*.

occidō, 3, -cidī, -cāsum [ob, cadō], *fall down, fall*.

occidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsum [ob, caedō, cut], *cut down, kill*. Cf. necō and interficiō.

occupō, 1 [ob, capiō], *take possession of, seize; occupy*. Cf. potior.

oc-currō, 3, -currī, -cursum [ob], *run to meet; meet, fall in with*.
OCCUR.

ōceanus, -ī, M., *ocean*.

ocellus, -ī, M. [diminutive of oculus], *little eye*.

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj. [octō], *eighth*. OCTAVE, OCTAVO.

octō, num. adj., indecl., *eight*.

oculus, -ī, M., *eye*. OCULAR.

of-ferō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum [ob], *(bring before), present, offer*. (321.)

officium, -ī, N. [opus, faciō], *service, duty, office*.

olim, adv. [olle, old form of ille], *(at that time); formerly, once; at some time or other; hereafter*. Cf. aliquandō and quondam.

omnis, -e, adj., *whole, all, every*. Cf. tōtus. OMNIBUS.

onus, -eris, N., *load, burden*. ONEROUS.

opera, -ae, F. [opus], *labor, care, attention*; operam dare, *try*; operā, *on account of*. OPERATE.

oportet, 2, -uit, impers. [opus], *it is necessary, it behooves*; (one) *must or ought*.

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum], *of a town*; noun, *townsman*.

oppidum, -ī, N., *town*.

op-pleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum [ob], *fill up; cover*.

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, convenient, suitable; opportune*.

op-pūgnō, 1 [ob], *attack, assault, besiege*. Cf. expūgnō and obsideō.

[ops], opis, F., *aid, assistance*; plur., *power, strength, resources*.

optimē, adv. [optimus], *most excellently, best*. (219.)

optō, 1, *wish, desire, long for*. OPTION. Cf. cupiō and dēsiderō.

opus, -eris, N., *work, labor* (140); as indecl. noun, *need, necessity*; opus est, *it is necessary*.

ōrāculum, -ī, N. [ōrō], *oracle*.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F. [ōrō], *prayer, plea; speech, oration.*

ōrātor, -ōris, M. [ōrō], *orator, ambassador.*

orbis, -is, M., *circle, orb; orbis terrarum, earth, world.* (154.)

orbis, -a, -um, adj., *bereaved, childless.*

Orcus, -ī, M., *Orcus, the lower world; also Pluto, the god of the lower world.*

ōrdior, 4, ōrsus, *begin, undertake.* Cf. incipiō.

ōrdō, -inis, M., *row, rank; order, arrangement.*

oriēns, -entis, M. [P. of orior], *rising; east.* ORIENTAL.

orior, 4, ortus (pres. ind. of conj. 3, orēris, oritur; impf. subj. orirer or orīrer; fut. part. oritūrus), *rise, appear; begin.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, N. [ōrnō], (*that which adorns*), *ornament, jewel.*

ōrnō, 1, *adorn, ornament.*

ōrō, 1 [ōs], *pray, beg.* ADORE. Cf. petō and rogō.

ōs, ōris, N., *mouth, face.* ORAL.

os-tendō, 3, -di, -tum [ob(s)], (*stretch out before*), *show, display.*

ōstium, -ī, N. [ōs], *entrance, door.*

ovis, -is, F., *sheep.*

ōvum, -ī, N., *egg.* OVAL.

pābulum, -ī, N. [pāscō], *food, fodder.* Cf. cibus.

paene, adv., *nearly, almost.* Cf. ferē. PENINSULA.

paenitentia, -ae, F. [paeniteō], *repentance, penitence.* PENITENTIARY.

palūs, -ūdis, F., *swamp, marsh.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal.* PAIR.

parātus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of parō], *ready, prepared.*

parcō, 3, peperci (parsi), parsum, *spare; w. dat.*

parēns, -entis, M. and F., *parent.* (167. 1.)

pāreō, 2, -uī, —, (*come forth, appear*), *be obedient to, obey; w. dat.*

pariō, 3, peperī, paritum (partum), *bring forth, lay.*

pariter, adv. [pār], *equally.*

parō, 1, *make ready, prepare, get.*

pars, partis, F., *part, piece, portion, share.*

partior, 4 [pars], *divide; part, share.*

Parus, -ī, F., *Paros, an island in the Aegean Sea.* (11. 4.)

parvus, -a, -um, adj., comp. minor, superl. minimus, *small, little.*

pāscō, 3, pāvī, pāstum, *feed, tend; pasture.*

passer, -eris, M., *sparrow.*

passus, -ūs, M. [pateō], (*a stretching out of the feet in walking*), *step, pace.*

pāstor, -ōris, M. [pāscō], *feeder, keeper; shepherd.* (134.) PASTOR.

pateō, 2, -uī, —, *lie open, be open.* P. patēns, *open.* PATENT.

pater, -tris, M., *father.* (134.) PATERNAL.

patienter, adv. [patiēns], *patiently, with patience.*

patior, 3, passus, *bear, suffer, endure.* PASSION.

patria, -ae, F. [patrius, pater; sc. terra], *fatherland, native land, country.* EXPATRIATE.

paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *few, little.* PAUCITY.

paulō, adv. [paulus], *by a little, little.*

paulus, -a, -um, adj., *little.*

Paullus, -ī, m., surname of *Æmil-*
ius.

pauper, -eris, adj., *poor*. (167. 3.)

pāx, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.),
peace. PACIFY.

peccātum, -ī, n. [peccō], *mistake*,
fault, *sin*.

peccō, 1, *make a mistake*, *commit*
a fault, *sin*.

pectus, -oris, n., *breast*. PECTORAL.

pecus, -oris, n., *cattle*, *herd*.

pedes, -itis, m. [pēs], *foot-soldier*.

pējor, -us, comp. of *malus*. (208.)

pellis, -is, f., *skin*, *hide*. PELT.

pēnsum, -ī, n. [P. of pendō], (*what*
is weighed out, e.g. *wool*, *as a*
task for spinning), *task*; *lesson*,
exercise.

per, prep. w. acc., *through*, *by*, *by*
means of, *on account of*.

pēra, -ae, f., *bag*, *wallet*.

per-agrō, 1 [ager], *wander through*,
pass over, *traverse*.

per-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *destroy*;
lose. Cf. amittō. PERDITION.

per-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead*
or bring through.

per-eō, -īre, -iī, —, *perish*, *be*
ruined. (327.)

per-fodiō, 3, -fōdī, -fossum, *dig*
through, *pierce*, *stab*.

per-fringō, 3, -frēgī, -frāctum
[frangō], *break through*, *break*.

per-fugiō, 3, -fūgī, —, *flee* (*for*
refuge).

pergō, 3, perrēxī, perrēctum [per,
regō], *go on*, *continue*.

perīculum, -ī, n. [perior, try],
trial, *attempt*; *risk*, *danger*,
peril.

perītus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of perior,
try], (*having tried*), *skilful*.

per-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, *allow*,
grant, *suffer*, *permit*. Cf. sinō.

per-paucus, -a, -um, adj. (gener-
ally plur.), *very few*.

Persae, -ārum, m., *the Persians*.

per-sequor, 3, -cūtus, *follow per-*
sistently, *follow up*. PERSECUTE.

per-spiciō, 3, -spēxī, -spectum,
[speciō], *see through*, *see into*;
perceive, *observe*. PERSPEC-

TIVE.

per-stō, 1, -stitī, -stātum, *stand*
fast, *persevere*, *persist*.

per-terreō, 2, -uī, -itum, *thoroughly*
frighten.

pertinācia, -ae, f. [pertināx], *per-*
severance; *obstinacy*. PERTI-

NACITY.

per-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum (*come*
through to the end), *arrive*. Cf.
adveniō.

pēs, pedis, m., *foot*. (105.) PEDAL.

petō, 3, -īvī (iī), -itum, *seek*, *de-*
mand, *beg*. PETITION. Cf. orō
and rogō.

Philotīmus, -ī, m., *Philotimus*.

piger, -gra, -grum, adj., *slow*, *lazy*,
indolent.

piget, 2, -uit (-itum est), imper-
sonal, *it disgusts*, (*one*) *is dis-*
gusted. (416.)

pigritia, -ae, f. [piger], *laziness*,
sloth, *indolence*.

pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin*.

pīpiō, 1, *chirp*.

placeō, 2, -uī, -itum [placidus],
please; w. dat.

placidē, adv. [placidus], *softly*,
gently, *quietly*. PLACIDLY.

placidus, -a, -um, adj. [placeō],
gentle, *quiet*, *calm*. PLACID.

plānitēs, -ēī, f. [plānus, even,
level], (*a flatness*), *level ground*,
plain.

plānus, -a, -um, adj. [plānitēs],
even, *flat*, *level*, *plain*.

Plataeēnsēs, -ium, m., *the Plataeans, inhabitants of Plataea.*

plēbs, plēbis, f., *the common people, multitude.* PLEBEIAN.

plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [plēō, *fill*], *full.* PLENTY.

plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj. (generally plur.), *very many, most, the greater part.*

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead*; plumbum album, *tin.* PLUMB.

plūs, plūris, adj., comp. of multus. (208.) PLURAL.

Plūtō, -ōnis, m., *Pluto*, god of the lower world.

pōculum, ī, n., *cup, bowl.*

poēmā, -ātis, n., *poem.*

poena, -ae, f. [pūniō], *quit-money, fine, punishment.* PENAL.

Poenī, -ōrum, m., *the Carthaginians.*

Poeniceus, -a, -um, adj. [Poenī], *Carthaginian.* See Pūnicus.

poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*

polliceor, 2, *promise.* Cf. prōmittō.

Polyphēmus, -ī, m., *Polyphemus, a Cyclops.*

Pompējus, -ēī, m., *Pompey*, a famous Roman general.

pōmum, -ī, n., *fruit.*

pondus, -eris, n. [pendō, *weigh*], *weight.* PONDEROUS.

pōnō, 3, posui, positum, *put, place, set.* POSITION.

pōns, -ntis, m., *bridge.*

Popēdius, -ī, m., *Popedius*, a Latin.

populus, ī, m., *people.*

Porcius, -ī, m., *a Roman family name.*

Porsena, -ae, m., *Porsena*, an Etruscan king.

porta, -ae, f., *gate, door.* PORTAL. Cf. jānuā.

portō, 1, *carry, bring.* Cf. ferō and vehō. PORTABLE.

porticus, -ūs, f. [porta], *portico.*

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port.* (247.)

possum, posse, potui, — [potis, *able, sum*], *be able, can.* (292.)

post, prep. w. acc., *after, behind*; as adv., for posteā, *afterwards, after.*

post-eā, adv., *afterwards.*

posterus, -a, -um, adj., comp. posterior, superl. postrēmus (postumus) [post], *following, next.*

post-hac, adv., *after this time, hereafter, henceforth.*

postrīdiē, adv. [posterō diē], *on the day after, the following day.*

postulō, 1, *ask, demand.* Cf. quaerō and rogō. POSTULATE.

potēns, -entis, adj., [P. of possum], *able, powerful; potent.*

potior, 4 [potis, *able*], *become master of, get, get possession of*; w. gen. or abl. Cf. adipiscor.

praebeō, 2 [prae, habeo], *hold forth, offer, furnish.*

praeceps, -ipitis, adj. [prae, caput], *head foremost, headlong; rash, precipitate.*

praeceptor, -ōris, m. [praeceptum], *teacher, preceptor.* Cf. magister.

praeceptum, -ī, n. [praeceptor], *maxim, precept.*

praeda, -ae, f., *booty, spoil, prey.* PREDATORY.

praedicō, 1 [prae, dicō, -āre, *make known*], *proclaim, boast.*

prae-eō, -īre, -īī, -itum, *go before; be at the head.* (327. 2.)

praemium, -ī, n., *reward, prize.* PREMIUM.

praesidium, -ī, n. [prae, sedeo, *sit before*], *defence, help; troops, garrison.*

praestāns, -antis, adj. [P. of prae-stō], *preëminent, distinguished.*

prae-stō, 1, -stiti, -stitum (stātum), *stand before; surpass; fulfil, discharge, perform.*

prae-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be before, at the head of, command; w. dat.*

praeter, prep. w. acc., *beyond, besides, except.*

praeter-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *go by, pass by, omit.* (327.2.) **PRETERITE.**

praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor], *(pertaining to a praetor), praetorian; noun, ex-praetor.*

prātum, -ī, n., *meadow.*

premō, 3, pressī, pressum, *press; w. ore, bite, eat.*

[**prex**], *precis, F. (used mostly in plur.), prayer, entreaty.*

primus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. with comp. prior, no pos.], *first, foremost.* **PRIME.**

prīnceps, -ipis, adj. [prīmus, capiō], *(taking the first place), first, chief; noun, chief, leader.* (105.) **PRINCE.**

prius-quam, conj., *before that, before.*

prīvō, 1, *deprive; w. abl.*

prō, interj., *O!*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in behalf of, for; considering.*

prō-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, *go forward, advance, proceed.* Cf. **prōgredior.**

procul, adv., *far, far from.*

prō-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *give forth; hand down; give up, betray.*

prō-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead forth.* **PRODUCE.**

proelium, -ī, n., *battle, combat.* Cf. **pūgna.**

proficīscor, 3, -fectus, *set out, march, go.* Cf. **exeō** and **ēgredior.**

pro-fiteor, 2, -fessus [fateor], *acknowledge, confess, declare.* **PROFESS.**

prō-flīgō, 1, *overthrow, destroy, ruin.* **PROFLIGATE.**

profundus, -a, -um, adj., *deep, profound.*

prō-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior, step], *go forward, advance.* **PROGRESS.** Cf. **prōcēdō.**

pro-hibeō, 2 [habeō], *(hold in front of), hold back, check, hinder, prevent, prohibit.*

prō-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], *throw forward, cast away, cast.* **PROJECT.**

prō-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, *(let or send forth), promise; let grow.* Cf. **polliceor.**

prope, prep. w. acc., and adv. (comp. **propius**, superl. **proximē**), *near, near to; nearly, almost.*

prō-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, *put before, set forth; make known, declare.* **PROPOSE.**

prōpositum, -ī, n. [prōpōnō], *purpose, design, resolution.* **PROPOSITION.**

proprius, -a, -um, adj., *(one's) own.* **PROPER.**

prō-pūgnō, 1, *(fight in front), rush out to battle, make sorties.*

prō-sequor, 3, -cūtus, *follow, pursue.* **PROSECUTE.**

Prōserpina, -ae, f., *Proserpina, daughter of Ceres.*

prō-sternō, 3, -strāvī, -strātum, *overthrow, destroy; prostrate.*

prō-sum, **prōdesse**, **prōfui**, —, *be useful to, benefit; w. dat.* (293.)

prō-vehō, 3, -vēxi, -vectum, *carry forward, convey*; pass., *ride, sail*.

prō-videō, 2, -vidī, -vīsum, (*see forward*), *provide*.

prōvincia, -ae, F., *province*.

proximus, -a, -um (superl. with comp. propior, no pos.), *nearest, next*. PROXIMITY.

prūdēns, -entis, adj. [for prōvidēns], *wise, sagacious, knowing, prudently*. (164.)

prūdenter, adv. [prūdēns], *wisely, prudently*.

prūdētia, -ae, F. [prūdēns], *fore-sight, sagacity, wisdom, prudence*.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus], (*pertaining to the people*), *public*.

Pūblius, -ī, M., *Publius*, a Roman first name.

pudet, 2, puduit (puditum est), impers., *it shames, (one) is ashamed*.

puella, -ae, F. [diminutive of puer], *girl, maiden*.

puellāris, -e, adj. [puella], *girlish*.

puer, -eri, M., *boy, child*. PUERILE.

puerulus, -ī, M. [diminutive of puer], *little boy*.

pūgna, -ae, F. [pūgnō], *battle, contest*. PUGNACIOUS. Cf. proelium.

pūgnō, 1 [pūgna], *fight*. Cf. dīmicō.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful, fair, comely*.

pulchritūdō, -inis, F. [pulcher], *beauty*.

pulvis, -eris, M., *dust*. PULVERIZE.

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj. [Poenī], *Carthaginian, Punic*; mālum Pūnicum, *pomegranate*. See Poeniceus.

pūniō, 4 [poena], *punish*.

putō, 1, *think, believe, reckon*. (429.)

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., *Pyrenean, Pyrenees*.

Pyrrhus, -ī, M., *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus.

quadrāgintā, num. adj., indecl. [quattuor], *forty*.

quadringenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. [quattuor, centum], *four hundred*.

quaerō, 3, quaesivī (-ī), quaesitum, *seek, ask, inquire*. (382.)

quaesō, 3, -ivī (-ī), — [old form of quaerō], *beg, pray*.

quam, adv.; interrog., *how, how much?* rel., *as much, as, than*; quam saepissimē, *as often as possible*.

quantus, -a, -um, adj. [quam], *how great, how much; as great as, as much as*. QUANTITY.

quā-rē, adv., (*on account of which thing*), *wherefore*.

quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj. [quattuor], *fourth*. QUART.

qua-si, adv., *as if*.

quater, num. adv. [quattuor], *four times*.

quattuor, num. adj., indecl., *four*.

quattuor-decim, num. adj. [decem], *fourteen*.

-que, conj., enclitic, *and*. Cf. et, atque, and ac.

quercus, -ūs, F., *oak*. (11.4.)

quī, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron., *who, which, what, that*. (279.)

quia, conj., *because*. Cf. quod.

quīdam, quaedam, quid(quod)-dam, indef. pron., *certain, a certain one, a*. (279. 4.)

quidem, adv. (never the first word), *indeed, certainly, in truth; nē . . . quidem, not even*.

quīn, conj. [quī, nē], *but that, that*.

quīgentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., indecl. [quīque, centum], *five hundred*.

quīquāgintā, num. adj., indecl. [quīque], *fifty*.

quīque, num. adj., indecl., *five*.

quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj. [quīque], *fifth*. QUINTESSENCE.

quīntus decimus, num. adj., *fifteenth*.

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who? which? what?* (279.)

quisquam, quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron., *any, any one (at all)*. (279. 4.)

quisque, quaeque, quid(quod)que, indef. pron., *each one, each, every*. (279. 4.)

quō, adv., *where, whither*.

quod, conj., *because*. Cf. quia.

quondam, adv., *once, formerly*. Cf. aliquandō and olim.

quoniam, adv. [cum (quom), jam], *since, because*. Cf. cum.

quoque, conj. and adv. (following the emphatic word), *also, too*.

quot, interrog. and rel. adj., indecl., *how many; as many as*.

radius, -ī, m., *beam, ray*.

rādō, 3, rāsī, rāsum, *shave*. RAZOR.

rāna, -ae, f., *frog*.

rapāx, -ācis, adj. [rapiō], *snatching, greedy, ravenous*. RAPACIOUS.

rapiō, 3, -uī, -tum [rapāx], *seize, snatch, drag away*. RAPTURE.

rārus, -a, -um, adj., *far apart, dispersed, single*. RARE.

ratio, -ōnis, f., *plan, method; reason*.

re-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], *take back, get again, receive; se recipere, withdraw, retreat*.

recitō, 1, *read aloud, recite*.

re-creō, 1 [creō, make], *refresh, recreate*.

rēctē, adv. [rēctus], *rightly*.

red-eō, -īre, -īī, -itum [re(d)], *go back, return*. (327. 2.)

reditus, -ūs, m. [redeō], *return*.

re-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back, bring back*. REDUCE.

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātum, *carry back, bring back*. (321.) REFER. Cf. reportō.

re-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *make again; repair, restore, rebuild*. REFECTORY.

rēgīna, -ae, f. [regō], (*the ruling one*), *queen*.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region*.

rēgnō, 1 [rēgnum, rēx], *be king, rule, reign*.

rēgnum, -ī, n. [rēx], *kingdom*.

regō, 3, rēxī, rēctum [rēx], *rule*.

Rēgulus, -ī, m., *Regulus*, a Roman consul.

re-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], *throw back, drive back*. REJECT.

re-liquō, 3, -liquī, -lictum [reliquus], *leave behind, leave*. RELINQUISH.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [relinquō], *remaining, the rest*. RELIC.

re-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, *send back*. REMIT.

rēmus, ī, m., *oar*.

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus*, twin brother of Romulus.

re-pellō, 3, reppulī, repulsum, *drive back, repel, repulse*.

re-periō, 4, repperī, repertum [pariō, procure], *find, discover, ascertain*. REPERTORY. Cf. inveniō.

re-petō, 3, -petīvī (-īī), -petitum, *seek again, demand back; res repetō, demand restitution*.

re-pleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum, (*fill again*),
fill up, fill. REPLETE.

re-ports, 1, *bring back, carry back.*
REPORT. Cf. referō.

re-prehendō, 3, -dī, -hēnsūm, *hold back, restrain, reprove.* REPRESENTABLE.

re-putō, 1, (*count over*), *reckon; think over.* REPUTE.

rēs, rei, F., *thing, event, circumstance, affair* (254); *rēs pūblica*, *commonwealth, state, republic.*

re-scindō, 3, -scidī, -scissūm, *tear away, break down.* RESCIND.

re-spondeō, 2, -dī, -spōnsūm, (*promise in return*), *answer, reply, respond.*

re-stituō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [*statuō*], *replace; give back, return, restore.* RESTITUTION.

re-stō, 1, restitī, —, *stop behind, stand still, remain.* REST.

re-tineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentum [*teneō*], *hold back, restrain, retain.*

re-vertor, 3, -tī, -sum (*deponent in pres., impf., and fut.*), *turn back, return.* REVERT.

re-vocō, 1, *call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, M. [*regō*], (*ruler*), *king.* (105.) REGAL.

Rhēa Silvia, -ae, F., *Rhea Silvia*, mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -ī, M., *the Rhine.*

Rhodus, -ī, F., *Rhodes*, an island in the Aegean Sea.

rīctus, -ūs, M. [*ringor*, *open the mouth*], *jaws wide open; jaws.*

rīdeō, 2, rīsī, rīsum, *laugh.* DERIDE. Cf. cachinnō.

rīsus, -ūs, M. [*rīdeō*], *laughter.*

rīvus, -ī, M., *brook, stream.* RIVAL.

rōbur, -oris, N., *strength.* ROBUST.

rogō, 1, *ask, question.* (382.) Cf. interrogō.

Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [*Rōma*], *Roman; noun, a Roman.*

Rōmulus, -ī, M., *Romulus*, first king of Rome.

rosa, -ae, F., *rose.*

rōstrum, -ī, N. [*rōdō*, *gnaw*], *beak of a vessel.* ROSTRUM.

rubeō, 2 [*ruber*], *be red.*

ruber, -bra, -brum, adj. [*rubeō*], *red.* RUBY.

ruīna, -ae, F. [*ruō*, *fall*], (*a falling down*), *downfall, disaster, ruin.*

rūpēs, -is, F. [*ru(m)pō*, *break*], (*the broken thing*), *cliff, rock.*

rūrsus, adv. [*re-vorsus*, *revertō*], (*turned back*), *back, again.*

rūs, -rūris, N., *the country.* (336.)

rūsticus, -ī, M. [*rūs*], *countryman, peasant.* RUSTIC.

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., *sacred.*

saepe, adv., *often, frequently.*

sagitta, -ae, F., *arrow.*

Saguntum, -ī, N., *Saguntum*, a town in Spain.

Sallustius, -ī, M., *Sallust*, a Roman historian.

salūs, -ūtis, F., *safety, welfare.* SALUTARY.

Samnīs, -ītis, M., *a Samnite.*

sanguis, -inis, M., *blood.* SANGUINARY. Cf. cruor.

sapiēns, -entis, adj. [*sāpiō*, *be wise*], *wise, sensible.*

sapienter, adv. [*sapiēns*], *wisely.*

satis, adv., *enough.* SATISFY.

Sāturnus, -ī, M., *Saturn*, god of agriculture.

saxum, -ī, N., *rock.*

schola, -ae, F., *school.*

sciō, 4, sciōvī, scitum, *know, know how.* SCIENCE.

Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., *Scipio*, a famous Roman general.

scrība, -ae, m. [scrībō], (*one who writes*), *clerk*. SCRIBE.

scrībō, 3, scripsī, scriptum [scrība], *write*. SCRIBBLE.

scrīptor, -ōris, m. [scrībō], *writer*, *author*.

scrīptum, -ī, n. [scrībō], *writing*, *written work*. SCRIPT.

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.

scēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, *go apart*, *withdraw*, *retire*; *secede*.

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor], *following*, *next*; *second*; *favorable*.

sed, conj., *but*. (393.)

sedeō, 2, sēdī, sessum, *sit*. SESSION.

sēdēs, -is, f. [sedeō], *seat*, *abode*.

semper, adv., *always*, *ever*.

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj. [semper], *everlasting*.

senātor, -ōris, m. [senex], *senator*.

senātus, -ūs, m. [senex], *council of elders*, *senate*.

senectūs, -ūtis, f. [senex], *old age*.

senex, senis, adj., *old*; noun, *old man*. (262.) SENILE.

senior, -ōris, adj. [comp. of senex], *elder*, *old person*. SENIORITY.

sēnsus, -ūs, m. [sentiō], *feeling*, *sense*, *perception*.

sententia, -ae, f. [sentiō], *opinion*, *purpose*. SENTENCE.

sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsū [sēnsus], *feel*, *know (by the senses)*, *see*, *perceive*. SENSIBLE.

septem, num. adj., indecl., *seven*.

September, -bris, m. [septem], *September*. Often as adj.

septem-decim, num. adj. [decem], *seventeen*.

septilēs, num. adv. [septem], *seven times*.

septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [septem], *seventh*.

sequor, 3, secūtus, *follow*. SEQUENCE.

serō, 3, sēvi, satum, *sow*, *plant*.

serta, -ōrum, n. [serō, *plait*], *garlands*, *wreaths of flowers*.

sērus, -a, -um, adj., *late*.

serviō, 4 [servus], *be a slave to*, *serve*; w. dat.

servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus], *slavery*, *servitude*.

servō, 1, *save*, *keep*; *preserve*.

servus, -ī, m. [serviō], *slave*, *servant*. (66.)

sexāgintā, num. adj., indecl. [sex], *sixty*. SEXAGENARIAN.

sextus, -a, -um, num. adj. [sex], *sixth*. SEXTANT.

sī, conj., *if*, *whether*.

sīc, adv., *so*, *thus*, *in this manner*. Cf. ita.

Sicca, -ae, m., *Sicca*, a friend of Cicero.

Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*.

sīdus, -eris, n., *star*, *constellation*.

SIDEREAL. (301.)

sīgnum, -ī, n., *mark*, *sign*, *signal*.

silva, -ae, f., *wood*, *forest*. SILVAN.

similis, -e, adj. [simul], *like*, *resembling*, *similar*. (207.)

simplex, -icis, adj., *simple*, *plain*, *artless*.

simul, adv. [similis], *at the same time*. SIMULTANEOUS.

sīn, conj. [sī-nē], *but if*, *if however*.

sine, prep. w. abl., *without*.

singulī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *separate*, *single*, *one by one*. (311. 8.)

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left (hand)*. SINISTER.

sinō, 3, *sīvi*, *situm*, allow, permit.

Cf. *permittō*.

sinus, -ūs, *M.*, bosom, lap, folds of a garment.

sitis, -is, *F.* (acc. -im, abl. -ī), thirst.

socer, -erī, *M.*, father-in-law.

socius, -ī, *M.*, ally, companion.

ASSOCIATE.

Sōcratēs, -is, *M.*, *Socrates*, a famous Greek philosopher.

sōl, *sōlis*, *M.* (no gen. plur.), sun.

SOLAR.

soleō, 2, *solitus*, be accustomed, wont. (page 177, note 2.)

Solōn, -ōnis, *M.*, *Solon*, the great lawgiver of Athens.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, single; sole. (200.)

solvō, 3, *solvī*, *solūtum*, loose, loosen; break; weigh anchor, set sail. SOLVE.

somnus, -ī, *M.*, sleep.

soror, -ōris, *F.*, sister.

sors, -tis, *F.*, lot, condition. SORT.

sortior, 4 [sors], draw lots, obtain by lot.

spargō, 3, -sī, -sum, strew, scatter. SPARSE.

Spartacus, -ī, *M.*, *Spartacus*, a gladiator.

spatium, -ī, *N.*, room, space; period.

spectō, 1 [speciō, look], look at, behold, witness. SPECTACLE.

specular, 1, spy out, watch.

specus, -ūs, *M.*, cave, den.

spērō, 1 [spēs], hope, hope for.

spēs, *spei*, *F.* [spērō], hope, expectation.

spoliō, 1, rob, plunder, spoil, despoil.

statim, adv. [stō], (standing there), on the spot, immediately, at once.

statua, -ae, *F.* [statuō], (the thing set up), statue.

statuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum, put, place; determine, think, believe.

stella, -ae, *F.*, star. (301.) STELLAR.

stō, 1, *stetī*, *statum*, stand. STATE.

strāgēs, -is, *F.*, slaughter, carnage.

stringō, 3, -inxī, *strictum*, (draw tight), graze; draw, unsheathe.

studeō, 2, -ui, — [studium], be eager, strive earnestly for; study; w. dat.

studium, -ī, *N.* [studeō], zeal, eagerness; study.

stultitia, -ae, *F.* [stultus], folly.

stultus, -a, -um, adj., foolish, silly.

suāvis, -e, adj., sweet, delightful.

Cf. *dulcis*. SUAVITY.

suāviter, adv. [suāvis], sweetly, delightfully.

sub-dūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, draw from under, draw up.

sub-eō, -īre, -ii, -itum, go under or up to, enter; undergo. (327.)

subitō, adv. [subeō], suddenly, unexpectedly.

sub-moveō, 2, -mōvi, -mōtum, (move from beneath), remove, drive away.

subsidiūm, -ī, *N.* [subsideō], aid, support, relief, assistance.

sub-siliō, 4, -ui, — [saliō, leap], jump up. Cf. *dēsiliō* and *trānsiliō*.

sub-veniō, 4, -vēni, -ventum, (come to one's relief), help, aid, assist.

SUBVENTION. Cf. *succurrō*.

suc-currō, 3, -curri, -cursum [sub], (run up to), help, aid, succor.

suf-ferō, *sufferre*, *sustulī*, *sublātum* [sub], bear up under, undergo.

SUFFER.

suī, reflex. pron., of himself (herself, itself, themselves). (264.)

Sūlla, -ae, *M.*, *Sulla*, a famous Roman general and statesman.

sum, *esse*, *fuī*, —, be, exist. (72.)

summus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of superus, *highest*. SUMMIT.
sūmō, 3, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take, take up; assume*.
super, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, on top of*.
superbē, adv. [superbus], *proudly, haughtily*.
superbus, -a, -um, adj. [super], *proud*. SUPERB.
superior, -us, adj., comp. of superus, *higher, superior*.
superō, 1 [super], *pass over; surpass, overcome; conquer*. (186.)
super-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *remain over; survive, exist*.
suprēmus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of superus, *highest; last*. SUPREME.
susciplō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [sub, capiō], *undertake*.
sus-pendō, 3, -dī, -pēsum [sub], *hang up, suspend, hang*.
suspīcor, 1 [suspiciō, look askance at], *mistrust, suspect*.
sustineō, 2, -tinui, -tentum [sub, teneō], *hold up, bear, endure; sustain*.
suus, -a, -um, poss. pron. [suī], *his, hers, her, its, theirs, their (own)*.
taceō, 2, tacuī, tacitum, *be silent, be silent about*. TACIT.
taedet, 2, taedit (taesum est), *impers., it disgusts, wearies; (one) is disgusted, wearied*. (416.)
tālea, -ae, F., *thin bar*.
tam, adv., *so; tam . . . quam, as . . . as*. Cf. ita and sic.
tamen, adv., *yet, but, nevertheless*.
tandem, adv. [tam], *(just so far), at length, finally*. TANDEM.
tangō, 3, tetigī, tāctum, *touch*.
tantō, adv. [tantus], *by so much, so much the (with comparatives)*.

tantum, adv. [tantus], *only*.
tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great*.
Tarentīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of Tarentum, Tarentine*.
Tarquinius, -ī, M., *Tarquin the Proud*, seventh king of Rome.
tēctum, -ī, N. [tegō, cover], *covering, shelter, roof*.
tēlum, -ī, N., *weapon*.
temerārius, -a, -um [temerē], *rash, inconsiderate*.
temerē, adv., *rashly, inconsiderately*.
temeritās, -ātis, F. [temerē], *chance; rashness, temerity*.
tempestās, -ātis, F. [tempus], *(state or condition of time), weather; stormy weather, storm, tempest*.
templum, -ī, N., *temple*.
tempus, -oris, N., *time*. TEMPORAL.
tenebrae, -ārum, F., *darkness, shades*.
tenebricōsus, -a, -um, adj. [tenebrae], *(full of darkness), dark, gloomy*.
teneō, 2, -ui, -tum, *hold, keep, have; memoriā tenēre, remember*. TENACIOUS.
tener, -era, -erum, adj., *soft, delicate, tender*.
tenuis, -e, adj., *thin, light*.
ter, num. adv. [trēs], *thrice, three times*.
Terentius, -ī, M., *a Roman family name*.
tergum, -ī, N., *back*.
terra, -ae, F., *earth, land*. TERRACE.
terreō, 2 [terror], *frighten, alarm, terrify*.
terror, -ōris [terreō], *terror, alarm*.
tertiō, adv. [tertius], *the third time*.
tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. [trēs], *third*.

tertius decimus, num. adj., *thirteenth*.

testimōnium, -ī, n. [testor, bear witness], *witness, evidence, testimony*.

testūdō, -inis, f. [testa, shell], *tortoise; shed or covering to protect besiegers*.

Teutonēs, -um, m., *the Teutons*, a German tribe.

Thalēs, -is, m., *Thales*, a Greek philosopher.

Themistoclēs, -is, m., *Themistocles*, a famous Athenian.

Tīcinus, -ī, m., *the Ticinus*, a river of Italy.

tigris, -is (-idis), *tiger*.

timeō, 2, -uī, — [timor], *fear, be afraid of*. TIMID.

Tīmoleōn, -ontis, m., *Timoleon*, a Corinthian general.

timor, -ōris, m. [timeō], *fear, dread, alarm*. TIMOROUS.

tolerō, 1, *bear, endure*. TOLERATE.

tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātum, *lift, raise, pick up; weigh (anchor)*.

tot, adj., indecl., *so many*. Cf. quot.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, all, entire*. (200.) TOTAL.

tractō, 1 [trahō], *handle, manage, treat*.

trā-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum [trāns], *give over, deliver; relate, recount*. TRADITION.

trahō, 3, trāxī, trāctum, *draw, drag; derive*. TRACTION.

trā-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [trāns, jaciō], *throw across; pass over, cross*.

trājectus, -ūs, m. [trāiciō], *a crossing over, passage*.

tranquillitās, -ātis, f. [tranquillus], *calmness, tranquillity; a calm*.

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, beyond, over*.

trān-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēsum [scandō, climb], *step or pass over; cross*. TRANSCEND.

trāns-eō, -īre, -īī, -itum, *go over, cross*. (327.) TRANSIT.

trāns-fīgō, 3, -fixī, -fixum, *pierce through, pierce, stab; transfix*.

trān-siliō, 4, -īī (-uī), — [saliō, leap], *leap over or across*. Cf. dēsiliō and subsiliō.

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [trēs, centum], *three hundred*.

tredecim, num. adj., indecl. [trēs, decem], *thirteen*.

trēs, tria, num. adj., *three*. (311. 4.)

tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], *tribune*.

trīgintā, num. adj., indecl. [trēs], *thirty*.

tripartītō, adv. [trēs, partior], *in three divisions*.

trīstis, -e, adj., *sad, gloomy*.

triumphus, -ī, m., *triumph*.

tū, pers. pron., *thou*. (264.)

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*. (14.)

tueor, 2, tuitus (tūtus), *look at; watch, defend, guard*. TUTOR, TUITION. Cf. dēfendō.

Tullia, -ae, f., *Tullia*, Cicero's daughter.

tum, adv., *at that time, then*.

tunc, adv. [tum], *at that time, then*.

turgidulus, -a, -um, adj., *swollen*. TURGID.

turpis, -e, adj., *ugly, foul; base, disgraceful, shameful*.

turpiter, adv. [turpis], *foully, basely, shamefully*.

turpitūdō, -inis, f. [turpis], *ugliness, baseness*.

turris, -is, f., *tower*. (149.)

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of tueor], *safe*.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *thy, thine; your, yours* (of only one).

tyrannus, -ī, m., *tyrant*.

ubi, adv., *where, when*.

ūllus, -a, -um, adj. [for ūnulus, diminutive of ūnus], *any, any one*. (200.)

ulterior, -us, adj., comp. (no positive), *further*.

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of ūltior, *furthest, last*. ULTIMATE.

umerus, -ī, m., *shoulder*.

unde, adv., *whence*.

undi-que, adv., *from all parts, on all sides, everywhere*.

ūni-versus, -a, -um, adj., (*turned into one*), *all together*.

unquam, adv., *at any time, ever*.

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *one; alone*. (200, 311. 3.) UNIT.

urbs, -is, f., *city*. (163.) SUBURBS.

urgeō, 2, ursī, —, *press, drive, impel, urge*.

ūsque, adv., *all the time, continually*.

ut (utī), adv. and conj., *how, as; that, in order that, so that*.

uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron., *which of two*. (200.)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron., *each of two, both*. (200.)

uti, see ut.

ūtīlis, -e, adj. [ūtōr], *useful, advantageous*. UTILITY.

utī-nam, adv., *would that, O that, I wish that*.

ūtōr, 3, ūsus, *use, employ; w. abl.*

utrum, adv., *whether*; used chiefly in double questions.

ūva, -ae, f., *grape, bunch of grapes*.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*. Cf. conjunx.

vagor, 1, *go to and fro, wander*. VAGRANT.

valeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *be strong or well; valē, farewell, good by*. VALUE. Cf. convalēscō.

valētūdō, -inis, f. [valeō], *state of health, health*.

validus, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], *strong, stout, sturdy*. VALID.

vallis (vallēs), -is, f., *valley, vale*.

varius, -a, -um, adj., *different, changeable, various*.

Varrō, -ōnis, m., *Varro*, a Roman consul.

vāstō, 1 [vāstus, waste, desolate], *lay waste, ravage*.

vehō, 3, vēxī, vectum, *carry, draw, convey; pass., ride, sail*.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, fleet, quick*. (179.) VELOCITY.

vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnor, hunt], *hunter*.

venēnum, -ī, n., *poison*. VENOM.

venia, -ae, f., *indulgence, mercy, kindness*. VENIAL.

veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum, *come*.

ventus, -ī, m., *wind*. VENTILATE.

Venus, -eris, f., *Venus*, goddess of love.

Venusia, -ae, f., *Venusia*, a town in Apulia.

venustus, -a, -um, adj. [Venus], *lovely, charming*.

vēr, vēris, n., *spring*. VERNAL.

verbum, -ī, n., *word*. VERB.

vereor, 2, *reverence, respect, fear*.

vērō, adv. and conj. [vērus], *in truth, in fact, but in fact*.

vērum, -ī, N. [vērus], *the truth*.
vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true, real*.
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron.,
your, yours (of more than one).
veterrimus, -a, -um, adj., superl.
of vetus.
vestiō, 4 [vestis, *garment*], *clothe*.
vetō, 1, -uī, -itum, *forbid, prevent*.
VETO.
vetus, -eris, adj., comp. vetustior,
superl. veterrimus, *old*. (141,
208.) **VETERAN**.
vetustior, -us, adj., comp. of
vetus.
via, -ae, F., *way, road, street*.
vicīnus, -a, -um, adj. [vicus], *near,*
neighboring. **VICINITY**.
victor, -ōris, M. [vi(n)cō], *con-*
queror, victor.
victōria, -ae, F. [victor], *victory*.
vicus, -ī, M., *village*.
videō, 2, vīdī, vīsum, *see, perceive;*
pass., be seen, seem. **VISION**.
vigil, adj. [vigeō, *be lively*], *watch-*
ful, wakeful. (151. 4.)
vigilia, -ae, F. [vigilō, *vigil*], *a*
watching, watch, i.e., the fourth
part of the night.
vigilō, 1 [vigil], *watch*. **VIGILANT**.
vīgintī, num. adj., indecl., *twenty*.
vinciō, 4, vinxī, vinctum, *bind*.
vincō, 3, vici, victum, *conquer,*
defeat. (186.) **VANQUISH**.
vindicō, 1, *claim; avenge, punish*.
VINDICATE.
vinum, -ī, N., *wine*.

viola, -ae, F., *violet*.
vir, virī, M., *man, hero*. (138, 262.)
virgō, -inis, F., *maiden, virgin*.
virtūs, -ūtis, F. [vir], (*manliness*),
courage, bravery; virtue.
vīs, vīs, F. (gen. and dat. rare),
strength, power. (262.)
vīta, -ae [vīvō], *life*. **VITAL**.
vītis, -is, F. [vieō, *twist together*],
vine.
vitium, -ī, N. [vītis], (*a moral*
twist), *fault, blemish, vice*. Cf.
culpa.
vītō, 1, *avoid, shun*.
vitrum, -ī, N., *woad, a dye*.
vituperō, 1, *blame, censure*. **VITU-**
PERATION. Cf. culpa.
vīvō, 3, vixī, victum [vīvus], *live*.
(194.) **REVIVE**.
vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [vīvō], *alive,*
living. **VIVID**.
vix, adv., *hardly, with difficulty*.
volō, velle, voluī, —, *wish, be*
willing, desire, intend. (316, 319.)
voluptās, -ātis, F., *pleasure, en-*
joyment. **VOLUPTUOUS**.
vōx, vōcis, F. [vocō, *call*], *voice*.
vulnerō, 1 [vulnus], *wound, hurt,*
injure. **VULNERABLE**.
vulnus, -eris, N. [vulnerō], *wound*.
vulpēs, -is, F., *fox*.
vultus, -ūs, M., *countenance, looks,*
features.

Zama, -ae, F., *Zama, a town in*
Africa.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

a, commonly not translated; *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* (279.5).
able (be), *possum* (292).
about, *dē*, *w. abl.*
absent (be), *absum* (297).
accept, *accipiō*, 3.
accompany, *comitor*, 1.
accord (of one's own), *ipse*, -a, -um (270.6).
accuse, *accūsō*, 1.
across, *trāns*, *w. acc.*
act, *agō*, 3.
admire, *admīror*, 1.
admonish, *moneō*, 2 (112).
adorn, *ōrnō*, 1.
advance, *prōcēdō*, 3; *prōgredior*, 3.
advice, *cōnsilium*, -ī, n.
advise, *moneō*, 2 (112).
afar, *longē*.
affair, *rēs*, *reī*, f. (254).
afraid (be), *metuō*, 3; *timeō*, 2.
Africa, *Āfrica*, -ae, f.
after, *post*, *w. acc.*; *cum*, *w. subj.*; *postquam*, *w. ind.*
afterwards, *postea*, *deinde*.
again, *iterum*, *rūrsus*.
against, *adversus*, *contrā*, *in*, *w. acc.*
age (old), *senectūs*, -ūtis, f.
agriculture, *agrī cultūra*, -ae, f.
aid, *auxilium*, -ī, n.
air, *āēr*, *āeris*, m.
Alexander, *Alexander*, -drī, m.
alive, *vīvus*, -a, -um.

Arpinum

all, *omnis*, -e; *tōtus*, -a, -um (200).
Alps, *Alpēs*, -ium, f.
alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um (200).
aloud (read), *recitō*, 1.
altar, *āra*, -ae, f.
always, *semper*.
ambassador, *lĕgātus*, -ī, m.; *ōrātor*, -ōris, m.
among, *in*, *w. abl.*; *inter*, *w. acc.*
ancient, *antiquus*, -a, -um; *vetus*, -eris (141).
and, *et*; *atque* or *ac*; -que.
Androclus, *Androclus*, -ī, m.
anger, *ira*, -ae, f.
angrily, *cum irā* (144).
animal, *animal*, -ālīs, n. (149).
another, *alius*, -a, -ud (201); **one** . . . **another**, *alius* . . . *alius*.
another's, *aliēnus*, -a, -um.
answer, *respondeō*, 2, *w. dat.*
any, *ūllus*, -a, -um (200); *aliquis*, -qua, -quid or -quod (279); *quis* (page 211, note 15); *quisquam*, —, *quidquam* (279.6).
approach, *appropinquō*, 1, *w. dat.*, and *w. ad* and *acc.*
arm, n., *bracchium*, -ī, n.
arm, v., *armō*, 1.
arms, *arma*, -ōrum, n.
army, *exercitus*, -ūs, m., *the general word*; *on the march*, *agmen*, -inis, n.; *in order of battle*, *aciēs*, -ēī, f.
Arpinum, *Arpinum*, -ī, n.

arrangement, ōrdō, -inis, m.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.
arrive, adveniō, 4; perveniō, 4.
arrow, sagitta, -ae, f.
art, ars, artis, f.
as, ut; **as . . . as**, tam . . . quam;
 same . . . as, idem . . . quī; (= *since*), cum; (= *when*), cum.
ashamed (be), pudet, 2 (415).
Asia, Asia, -ae, f.
ask of, quaerō, 3.
assemble, conveniō, 4.
at, in, *w. acc. or abl.*; *ad, w. acc.*;
 apud, w. acc.; *in combination*
 w. verbs (wonder at, etc.), see
 the verbs; w. names of towns,
 locative case (334).
Athenian, Athēniēnsis, -e.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, f.
attentively, diligenter.
author, auctor, -ōris, m.
away (go), abeō (327); discēdō, 3.
away from, ā or ab, *w. abl.*; ē or
 ex, *w. abl.*
back (bring or carry), referō
 (321); reportō, 1.
bad, malus, -a, -um; improbus,
 -a, -um.
basely, turpiter.
battle, pūgna, -ae, f.; proelium,
 -i, n.
be, sum (73).
bear, ferō (321); vehō, 3; tolerō,
 1; (off), auferō.
beast, bēstia, -ae, f.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
beauty, pulchritūdō, -inis, f.
because, quod, quia.
become, fiō (327); **it becomes**,
 deceat, 2 (415).
beg, petō, 3; ōrō, 1.
begin, incipiō, 3; ōrdior, 4.
believe, crēdō, 3, *w. dat.*

benefit, n., beneficium, -i, n.
benefit, v., prōsum (293), *w. dat.*
besiege, obsideō, 2; oppugnō, 1.
best, optimus, -a, -um.
better, melior, -us, *comp. of bonus*
 (208).
between, inter, *w. acc.*
big, māgnus, -a, -um.
bind, vinciō, 4.
bird, avis, -is, f. (154).
black, niger, -gra, -grum; āter,
 ātra, ātrum.
blame, vituperō, 1; culpō, 1.
blind, caecus, -a, -um.
blood, sanguis, -inis, m.; cruor,
 -ōris, m.
boar, aper, apri, m.
boat, nāvicula, -ae, f.; cymba,
 -ae, f.
body, corpus, -oris, n.
bold, audāx, -ācis.
boldly, audācter.
book, liber, -brī, m.
booty, praeda, -ae, f.
born (be), nāscor, 3.
Boston, Bostonia, -ae, f.
both (= each of two), uterque,
 utraque, utrumque (200); **both**
 . . . **and**, et . . . et.
bow, arcus, -ūs, m. (247).
boy, puer, -erī, m.
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, f.
break, frangō, 3; (**through**) per-
 fringō, 3.
breeze, ventus, -i, m.; aura, -ae, f.
bribe, corrumpō, 3.
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bring, portō, 1; ferō (321); (**up**),
 educō, 1.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brook, rīvus, -i, m.

brother, frāter, -tris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, m.
build, aedificō, 1.
burden, onus, -eris, n.
but, at, autem, sed; (393); (**that**), quā.
buy, emō, 3.
by, ā, ab, w. *abl.*; (*denoting means or instrument*), *abl.* alone.
Caesar, Caesar, -aris, m.
call, nōminō, 1; appellō, 1; vocō, 1.
calm, aequus, -a, -um; placidus, -a, -um.
camp, castra, -ōrum, n.
Campania, Campānia, -ae, f.
can, possum (292).
care, cūra, -ae, f.
carefully, diligenter; cum cūrā (144).
carry, portō, 1; ferō (321); (**back**), referō; **carry on war**, bellum gerere.
cart, carrus, -ī, m.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, f.
Cato, Catō, -ōnis, m.
certain (a), quīdam, quaedam, quid(quod)dam (279.5); (= *sure*), certus, -a, -um.
chance, fors, -tis, f.; cāsus, -ūs, m.
change, mūtō, 1.
cherish, colō, 3.
chief, princeps, -cipis, m.
children, puerī, -ōrum, m. (60); liberī, -ōrum, m. (60).
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, m.
Cimbri, Cimbri, -ōrum, m.
circumstance, rēs, rei, f.
citadel, arx, arcis, f.
citizen, civis, -is, m. and f. (154).
city, urbs, -is, f.
clerk, scrība, -ae, m.
cliff, rūpēs, -is, f.
clothe, vestiō, 4.

cold, *adj.*, frigidus, -a, -um.
cold, *n.*, frīgus, -oris, n.
Collatinus, Collatīnus, -ī, m.
come, veniō, 4; (**down**), dēscendō, 3; (**out**), ēgredior, 3; (**together**), conveniō, 4; (**off**), abeō (327).
coming, *n.*, adventus, -ūs, m.
command, imperō, 1, w. *dat.*; jubēō, 2, w. *acc.*; praesum, w. *dat.*
commander, imperātor, -ōris, m.; dux, ducis, m.
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, f.
companion, comes, -itis, m. and f.
compel, cōgō, 3.
comrade, comes, -itis, m. and f.
condemn, damnō, 1.
conquer, superō, 1 (186); vincō, 3 (186).
consul, cōsul, -is, m.
consulship, cōsulātus, -ūs, m.
contemplate, contemplor, 1.
contented, contentus, -a, -um, w. *abl.*
converse, colloquor, 3.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, f.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.
correct, corrigō, 3.
counsel, cōsilium, -ī, n.
country (= *fatherland*), patria, -ae, f.; (= *not city*), rūs, rūris, n.
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
covered with leaves, frondōsus, -a, -um.
cowardice, ignāvia, -ae, f.
cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um.
create, creō, 1.
creator, creātor, -ōris, m.
cross, *tr.*, trāscendō, 3; *tr.* and *intr.*, trāseō (327).
cruelly, crūdēliter.
cultivate, colō, 3.
Cumae, Cūmae, -ārum, f.
cunning, *n.*, calliditās, -ātis, f.

cup, pōcūlum, -ī, n.

Cyrus, Cŷrus, -ī, m.

Dædalus, Daedalus, -ī, m.

dally, cotidiē.

danger, pericūlum, -ī, n.

daughter, filia, -ae, f.

day, diēs, -ēī, m. and f. (254).

daybreak (at), primā lūce.

dear, cārus, -a, -um.

death, mors, -tis, f.

deep, altus, -a, -um; profundus, -a, -um.

defeat, n., clādēs, -is, f.

defeat, v., vincō, 3 (186); superō, 1 (186).

defend, dēfendō, 3.

defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, m.

delay, mora, -ae, f.

delight, dēlectō, 1.

deliver, dēferō (321).

demand restitution, rēs repetō, 3.

Demosthenes, Dēmosthenēs, -is.

depart, discēdō, 3; exeō (327).

deprive, privō, 1, w. abl.

descend, dēscendō, 3.

desert, dēserō, 3.

deserve, mereō, mereor, 2.

design, cōnsilium, -ī, n.

desire, volō (316, 319); dēsiderō, 1 (319); cupiō, 3.

despair, dēspērō, 1.

despise, contemnō, 3.

destroy, dēlēō, 2.

difficult, difficilis, -e (207).

difficulty (with), vix.

diligently, diligenter.

discharge, fungor, 3, w. abl.

disclose, ēnūtiō, 1.

disgraceful, turpis, -e.

disgusted (be), piget, 2 (416).

divide, dīvidō, 3; (= share), partior, 4.

do, faciō, 3; agō, 3.

dog, canis, -is, m. and f.

doubt, n., dubium, -ī, n.

doubt, v., dubitō, 1.

doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.

dove, columba, -ae, f.

down (tear), rescindō, 3; (come), dēscendō, 3.

draw, trahō, 3; (up), subducō, 3.

drink, bibō, 3.

drive, agō, 3; (off), submoveō, 2.

duty, officium, -ī, n.

dwell, habitō, 1 (194); vivō, 3 (194).

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quid(quod)que (279. 4); (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque (200).

eagle, aquila, -ae, f.

earth, terra, -ae, f.

easily, facile.

easy, facilis, -e (207).

eat, edō, 3.

egg, ovum, -ī, n.

eight, octō.

eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.

either . . . or, aut . . . aut.

elegant, ēlegāns, -antis.

elephant, elephantus, -ī, m.

else, alius, -a, -ud (201).

embark, cōnscendō, 3.

employ, admoveō, 2; ūtor, 3, w. abl.

encircle, cingō, 3.

end, n., finis, -is, m. (154).

end, v., finiō, 4.

endurance, fortitūdō, -inis, f.

endure, patior, 3; ferō (321); tolerō, 1.

enemy, hostis, -is, m. and f. (172); inimicus, -ī, m. (172).

enjoy, fruor, 3, w. abl.

Ennius, Ennius, -ī, m.

enough, satis.

enter, ingredior, 3; ineō (327).

entertain the hope, *veniō in spem*.
entreaty, *precēs*, -um, F.
Epirus, *Ēpīrus*, -ī, F.
equally, *pariter*.
equanimity, *aequus animus*, M.
Europe, *Eurōpa*, -ae, F.
even, *etiam*; *ipse* (270. 6).
evident (it is), *cōstat*, 1.
excellently, *optimē*.
explain, *explicō*, 1.
expulsion, *P. of expellō*.
eye, *oculus*, -ī, M.

Fabricius, *Fabricius*, -ī, M.
fact, *rēs*, *rei*, F.
fail, *dēficiō*, 3; *dēsum* (297).
fair, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum.
faithful, *fidus*, -a, -um; *fidēlis*, -e.
faithfully, *fidēliter*.
Faliscans, *Faliscī*, -ōrum, M.
famous, *clārus*, -a, -um.
far and wide, *longē lātēque*.
farmer, *agricola*, -ae, M.
father, *pater*, -tris, M.
father-in-law, *socer*, -erī, M.
fault, *vitium*, -ī, N.; *culpa*, -ae, F.; **find fault with**, *vituperō*, 1; *culpō*, 1.
favor, *faveō*, 2, *w. dat.*
fear, *n.*, *metus*, -ūs, M.
fear, *v.*, *timeō*, 2; *metuō*, 3.
few, *paucī*, -ae, -a.
fidellty, *fidēs*, -ei, F.
field, *ager*, *agrī*, M.
fierce, *atrōx*, -ōcis; *ferōx*, -ōcis.
fiftleth, *quīnquāgēsīmus*, -a, -um.
fifty, *quīnquāgīntā*.
fight, *pūgnō*, 1; *dīmicō*, 1.
fill, *impleō*, 2, -ēvī, -ētum; *compleō*, 2.
finally, *dēnique*.
find, *reperiō*, 4; *inveniō*, 4.
finger, *digitus*, -ī, M.
finish, *finiō*, 4; *cōnficiō*, 3.

fire, *ignis*, -is, M.
first, *primus*, -a, -um.
fit, *aptō*, 1.
five, *quinque*.
five hundred, *quīngentī*, -ae, -a.
flee, *fugiō*, 3.
fleet, *classis*, -is, F. (154).
flight, *fuga*, -ae, F.
flock, *grex*, *gregis*, F.
flow, *fluō*, 3.
flower, *flōs*, *flōris*, M.
fodder, *pābulum*, -ī, N.
follow, *sequor*, 3.
folly, *stultitia*, -ae, F.
food, *cibus*, -ī, M.
foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, M.
foot-soldier, *pedes*, -itis, M.
for, *conj.*, *nam*, *enim* (*not the first word*).
for, *sign of dative*; *prep.*, *dē*, *prō*, *w. abl.*; *of time, space, purpose*, *in*, *w. acc.*
forces, *cōpiae*, -ārum, F.
forget, *oblīvīscor*, 3.
forgetful, *oblītus*, -a, um.
former (the), *ille* (275. 5).
forth (go), *exeō* (327); *ēgredior*, 3.
fortify, *mūniō*, 4.
fortune, *fortūna*, -ae, F.
forty, *quadrāgīntā*.
forum, *forum*, -ī, N.
forward (go), *prōcēdō*, 3; *prōgredior*, 3.
foully, *turpiter*.
fourteen, *quattuordecim*.
fourth, *quartus*, -a, -um.
free, *liber*, -era, -erum (71).
free from, *liberō*, 1, *w. abl.*
friend, *amicus*, -ī, M.
frighten, *terreō*, 2.
frog, *rāna*, -ae, F.
from, *dē*, *w. abl.*; (= *away from*), *ā* or *ab*, *w. abl.*; (= *out of*), *ē* or *ex*, *w. abl.*; (*afar*), *longē*.

fruit, fructus, -ūs, *m.*

full, plēnus, -a, -um.

furnish, praebeō, 2.

Galba, Galba, -ae, *m.*

game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*

garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*

Gauls, Galli, -ōrum, *m.*

general, dux, ducis, *m. and f.*;
imperātor, -ōris, *m.*

Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*

get, adipiscor, 3; (*possession*), po-
tior, 4, *w. abl.*; (*bylot*), sortior, 4.

gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*

girl, puella, -ae, *f.*

give, dō, 1.

glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*

go, eō (327); (*forth or out*), exeō;
(*off or away*), abeō; discēdō, 3;
(*down*), dēscendō, 3.

God, Dēus, -ī, *m.* (262).

goddess, dea, -ae, *f.*

gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*

golden, aureus, -a, -um.

good, bonus, -a, -um (71, 208).

good thing, bonum, -ī, *n.*

grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*

great, māgnus, -a, -um.

greatly, māximē.

Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*

Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.

guard, *n.*, custōs, -ōdis, *m. and f.*

guard, *v.*, custōdiō, 4.

hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*

handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, *m.*

happy, beātus, -a, -um; fēlix, -icis.

hard, dūrus, -a, -um; (= *difficult*),
difficilis, -e.

hasten, contendō, 3.

haughtily, superbē.

have, habēō, 2.

he, is (270); hic, ille (275).

head, caput, -itis, *n.*; be at the
head of, praesum (297).

headlong, praeceps, -cipitis.

hear, audiō (223).

heart, cor, cordis, *n.*

heat, calor, -ōris, *m.*

heaven, caelum, -ī, *n.*

heavy, gravis, -e.

Hector, Hector, -oris, *m.*

hero, vir, viri, *m.* (262).

hesitate, dubitō, 1; cunctor, 1.

high, altus, -a, -um.

hill, collis, -is, *m.* (154).

himself, *see self.*

his, ejus (270); illius (275); (*own*),
suus, -a, -um.

history, historia, -ae, *f.*

hold, habēō, 2; teneō, 2.

home, domicellium, -ī, *n.*; domus,
-ūs, *f.* (262).

Homer, Homērus, -ī, *m.*

honor, *n.*, honestās, -ātis, *f.*

honor, *v.*, honōrō, 1.

hope, spēs, -eī, *f.*

Horatius, Horātius, -ī, *m.*

horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*

horse, equus, -ī, *m.*

horseback (*ride*), in equō vehī;
equitō, 1.

horseman, horse-soldier, eques,
-itis, *m.*

hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*

house, domus, -ūs, *f.* (262).

how, quam; (*many*), quot.

huge, māgnus, -a, -um; immānis,
-e; ingēns, -entis.

human, hūmānus, -a, -um.

hundred, centum.

hunger, famēs, -is, *f.*

hunter, vērātor, -ōris, *m.*

hurl, coniciō, 3.

hurtful (*be*), noceō, 2, *w. dat.*

hustle, exturbō, 1.

I, ego (264).
Icarus, *Icarus*, -ī, m.
if, *sī*; **if not**, *nisi*.
ignorant (be), *nesciō*, 4; *ignōrō*.
illustrious, *clārus*, -a, -um.
imitate, *imitor*, 1.
immediately, *statim*.
in, in, *w. abl.*
increase, *augeō*, 2.
inhabit, *habitō*, 1; *incolō*, 3.
inhabitant, *incola*, -ae, m. *and* f.
injure, *noceō*, 2; *obsum*; *w. dat.*
instruct, *ērudīō*, 4; *doceō*, 2.
intend, *in animō est*, *w. dat.*
into, *in*, *w. acc.*
invite, *invītō*, 1.
iron (of), *ferreus*, -a, -um.
island, *insula*, -ae, f.
it, is, ea, id (270).
Italian, *Italus*, -ī, m.
Italy, *Italia*, -ae, f.
itself, *see self*.

Janus, *Jānus*, -ī, m.
javelin, *pīlum*, -ī, n.
jewel, *ōrnāmentum*, -ī, n.
joy, *gaudium*, -ī, n.
judge, *jūdex*, -icis, m. (105).
judgment, *jūdicium*, -ī, n.
Julius, *Jūlius*, -ī, m.
Jupiter, *Juppiter*, *Jovis*, m. (262).
justly, *jūstē*.

keen, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.
keep off, *arceō*, 2.
kill, *necō*, 1; *interficiō*, 3; *occidō*, 3.
kind, *benignus*, -a, -um.
king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, m.
kingdom, *rēgnum*, -ī, n.; *imperium*, -ī, n.
knife, *culter*, -trī, m.
know, know how, *sciō*, 4.
known, *nōtus*, -a, -um.

labor, labor, -ōris, m.
lack, *dēsum* (297).
Laevinus, *Laevinus*, -ī, m.
lake, *lacus*, -ūs, m. (247).
land, *ager*, *agrī*, m.; *terra*, -ae, f.
language, *lingua*, -ae, f.
large, *māgnus*, -a, -um.
last, *suprēmus*, -a, -um.
Latin, *Latinus*, -a, -um.
latter (the), *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc* (275. 5.)
laugh, *rideō*, 2; (*at*), *irrideō*, 2; (*aloud*), *cachinnō*, 1.
law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.
lazy, *piger*, -gra, -grum.
lead, *dūcō*, 3; (*out*), *ēdūcō*, 3.
leader, *dux*, *ducis*, m. *and* f.
leaf, *folium*, -ī, n.
leap over, *trānsiliō*, 4.
learn, *discō*, 3.
leg, *crūs*, *crūris*, n.
legion, *legiō*, -ōnis, f.
lesson, *pēnsūm*, -ī, n.
let, sign of subj. or imperative.
letter, *epistula*, -ae, f.; *litterae*, -ārum, f.
levy, *dēlēctus*, -ūs, m.
life, *vīta*, -ae, f.
light, adj., *levis*, -e (150).
light, n., *lūx*, *lūcis*, f.; *lūmen*, -inis, n.
like, *amō*, 1.
likeness, *imāgō*, -inis, f.
line of battle, *aciēs*, -ēī, f.
lion, *leō*, -ōnis, m. (134).
listen, *audiō*, 4 (223).
literature, *litterae*, -ārum, f.
little, *parvus*, -a, -um.
live, *vīvō*, 3 (194); *habitō*, 1 (194).
long, *longus*, -a, -um; **a long time**, *diū*.
longer (no), *jam*, *w. negative*.
look at, *spectō*, 1.
lose, *āmittō*, 3; *perdō*, 3.

lot (**obtain by**), sortior, 4.
 loud (**laugh out**), cachinnō, 1.
 love, amō, 1 (319).
 low, humilis, -e.
 lucky, fēlix, -icis.
 maiden, puella, -ae, f.
 make, faciō, 3; (**trial of**), experior, 4.
 man, vir, viri, m. (138, 262); homō, -inis, m. (138).
 Manlius, Manlius, -i, m.
 manner, mōs, mōris, m.
 many, multi, -ae, -a.
 Marcellus, Mārcellus, -i, m.
 marshal, instruō, 3.
 master, dominus, -i, m.; magister, -tri, m.
 may, licet, w. *dat.*
 means (**by means of**), *use abl.*
 meet, obeō (327); go to meet, obviam eō, w. *dat.*
 memory, memoria, -ae, f.
 messenger, nūntius, -i, m.
 migrate, migrō, 1.
 mind, animus, -i, m. (273); mēns, mentis, f. (273).
 mindful, memor, -oris (150).
 mine, meus, -a, -um (266).
 Minerva, Minerva, -ae, f.
 miserable, miser, -era, -erum.
 miss, dēsiderō, 1.
 Mithridates, Mithridātēs, -is, m.
 modesty, modestia, -ae, f.
 month, mēnsis, -is, m.
 monument, monumentum, -i, n.
 moon, lūna, -ae, f.
 more, plūs (208), magis.
 most, plūrimus, -a, -um (208).
 mother, māter, -tris, f.
 mountain, mōns, montis, m.
 move, moveō, 2.
 much, multus, -a, -um (208).
 multitude, multitūdō, -inis, f.

must, oportet, 2; *gerundive*.
 my, meus, -a, -um (266).
 name, nōmen, -inis, n.
 nation, gēns, gentis, f.
 native land, patria, -ae, f.
 near, prope, w. *acc.*
 neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um.
 Neptune, Neptūnus, -i, m.
 never, nunquam.
 new, novus, -a, -um.
 night, nox, noctis, f.
 nightingale, lusciniā, -ae, f.
 ninety, nōnāgintā.
 ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
 no, nūllus, -a, -um (200).
 nobody, no one, nēmō, -inis, m. and f. (286); that no one (*neg. purpose*), nē quis.
 no longer, jam, w. *negative*.
 not, nōn.
 nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
 nourish, alō, 3; nūtriō, 4.
 now, nunc, jam.
 Numa, Numa, -ae, m.
 number, numerus, -i, m.
 nurture, nūtriō, 4.
 oak, quercus, -ūs, f.
 obey, pāreō, 2, w. *dat.*
 obtain, adipiscor, 3; potior, 4, w. *abl.*; (**by lot**), sortior, 4.
 ocean, oceanus, -i, m.
 of, *sign of genitive*; dē, w. *abl.*; out of, ē or ex, w. *abl.*
 offer, prōpōnō, 3; offerō (321); praebeō, 2.
 often, saepe.
 old, antiquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris (141); (**man**), senex, -is (262); (**age**), senectūs, -ūtis, f.
 on, in, w. *abl.*; (*of time*), *abl.*

one, ūnus, -a, -um (200); **one . . . another**, alius . . . alius; **the one . . . the other**, alter . . . alter.

open, *adj.*, patēns, -entis.

open, *v.*, aperiō, 4.

opinion, iudicium, -ī, *n.*

oppose, obsistō, 3, *w. dat.*

orator, orātor, -ōris, *m.*

order (in order to), ut, *w. subj.*

order, *v.*, imperō, 1, *w. dat.*; jubeō, 2, *w. acc.*

other, alius, -a, -ud (201); **some . . . others**, alii . . . alii; (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum.

ought, dēbeō, 2; oportet, 2 (415); *gerundive*.

our, noster, -tra, -trum.

ourselves, *see self*.

out, *in combination w. verbs (lead out, etc.)*, *see the verbs*.

out of, ē or ex, *w. abl.*

over, *in combination w. verbs (leap over, etc.)*, *see the verbs*.

overcome, vincō, 3 (186); superō, 1 (186).

owe, dēbeō, 2.

own, proprius, -a, -um; (**his**, **her**, **their**), suus, -a, -um; (**my**), meus, -a, -um; (**our**), noster, -tra, -trum; (**your**), vester, -tra, -trum; (**thy**), tuus, -a, -um.

pain, dolor, -ōris, *m.*

parent, parēns, -entis, *m. and f.*

part, pars, partis, *f.*

pass (narrow), angustiae, -ārum, *f.*

pass by, praetereō (327).

patience (with), patienter; cum patientiā (144).

patiently, patienter.

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

people, populus, -ī, *m.*; (**common**), plēbs, -is, *f.*

peril, periculum, -ī, *n.*

perish, pereō (327).

Persians, Persae, -ārum, *m.*

physician, medicus, -ī, *m.*

place, *n.*, locus, -ī, *m.*, *in plur. m. and n.*

place, *v.*, pōnō, 3.

plain, planitiēs, -ēī, *f.*

plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

pleasant, grātus, -a, -um.

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.

pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*; (**with**), libenter.

pledge, fidēs, -eī, *f.*

plough, *n.*, arātrum, -ī, *n.*

plough, *v.*, arō, 1.

poem, poēma, -atis, *n.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*

point (be on the), *see 422*.

Polyphemus, Polyphēmus, -ī, *m.*

Pompey, Pompējus, Pompēī, *m.*

poor, miser, -era, -erum; pauper, -eris (167. 3).

possess, habeō, 2; potior, 4, *w. abl.*

possession (get possession of), potior, 4, *w. abl.*; adipiscor, 3.

postpone, differō (321).

power, imperium, -ī, *n.*

praise, *n.*, laus, laudis, *f.*

praise, *v.*, laudō, 1.

precept, praeceptum, -ī, *n.*

prefer, mālō (316).

present (be), adsum, *w. dat.*

pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrom.

prevent, prohibeō, 2.

prisoner, captīvus, -ī, *m.*; captīva, -ae, *f.*

proceed, prōcēdō, 3.

proclamation (make), edicō, 3.

promise, polliceor, 2; prōmit-tō, 3.

property, bona, -ōrum, *n.*

proud, superbus, -a, -um.

province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

prow, rōstrum, -ī, n.
prudence, prūdētia, -ae, f.
punish, pūniō, 4.
punishment, poena, -ae, f.
pupil, discipulus, -ī, m.
purpose (for the purpose of), ut
*or quī, w. subj. ; ad, w. gerund
or gerundive ; supine.*
put (to flight), fugō, 1 ; (**off**),
differō (321) ; (**by**), dēpōnō, 3 ;
(**an end to**), fīniō, 4.
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, m.
queen, rēgina, -ae, f.
quickly, celeriter.
raise, tollō, 3 ; levō, 1.
rather (wish), mālō (316).
read, legō, 3 ; (**aloud**), recitō, 1.
receive, recipiō, 3 ; accipiō, 3 ;
excipiō, 3.
recite, recitō, 1.
recognize, āgnōscō, 3.
red, ruber, -bra, -brum.
refresh, recreō, 1.
Regulus, Rēgulus, -ī, m.
reign, rēgnō, 1.
relate, trādō, 3 ; nārrō, 1.
relieve, liberō, 1, *w. abl.*
remain, maneō, 2 ; restō, 1.
remember, memoriā teneō.
remove (= emigrate), dēmigrō, 1.
Remus, Remus, -ī, m.
render aid, auxilium ferō (321).
renown, fāma, -ae, f.
renowned, amplius, -a, -um ; clā-
rus, -a, -um.
report, nūntiō, 1.
republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūbli-
cae, f.
respect, vereor, 2.
respects (in all), omnibus rē-
bus.
rest (the), cēteri, -ae, -a.

restitution (demand), rēs repe-
tō, 3.
restrain, coerceō, 2.
results (it), fit (327).
retain, retineō, 2.
retreat, sē recipiō, 3.
return, redeō (327).
reward, praemium, -ī, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, m.
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, m.
rich, dives, -itis (167. 3).
ride, *pass. of* vehō, 3 ; equitō, 1.
rightly, rēctē.
rise, orior, 4.
river, amnis, -is, m. (172) ; fluvius, -ī,
m. (172) ; flūmen, -inis, n. (172).
road, via, -ae, f.
rob, spoliō, 1 ; privō, 1 ; *w. abl.*
robber, latrō, -ōnis, m.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, m.
rose, rosa, -ae, f.
rough, asper, -era, -erum.
ruddy, ruber, -bra, -brum.
rule, regō, 3 (180) ; rēgnō, 1.
sad, tristis, -e.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
sagacious, prūdēns, -entis.
sail, *pass. of* vehō, 3 ; nāvigō, 1.
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake (for the sake), causā, *w. gen.*
Sallust, Sallustius, -ī, m.
same, idem, eadem, idem (270).
Samnite, Samnis, -itis.
Saturn, Sāturnus, -ī, m.
save, servō, 1.
say, dicō, 3 ; **keep saying**, dic-
titō, 1.
scare, terreō, 2.
school, schola, -ae, f.
Scipio, Scipiō, -ōnis, m.
sea, mare, -is, n.

second, secundus, -a, -um.
 see, videō, 2; (through), per-
 spiciō, 3.
 seek, petō, 3; quaerō, 3.
 seem, videor, 2.
 seize, rapiō, 3.
 self, ipse, -a, -um (270); suī (264).
 senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
 send, mittō, 3; (back), remittō, 3.
 September, September, -bris, m.
 servant, minister, -trī, m. (66);
 servus, -ī, m. (66).
 set out, proficiscor, 3.
 seven, septem.
 seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
 share, partior, 4.
 sharply, ācritēr.
 she, ea, ejus, f.
 sheep, ovis, -is, f.
 shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, m.
 shield, scūtum, -ī, n.
 ship, nāvis, -is, f. (154).
 shore, litus, -oris, n.
 short, brevis, -e.
 shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
 Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, f.
 sick, aeger, -gra, -grum (71).
 side, latus, -eris, n.
 signal, signum, -ī, n.
 silent (be), taceō, 2.
 since, cum, *v. subj.*
 sing, canō, 3; cantō, 1.
 sister, soror, -ōris, f.
 sit, sedeō, 2.
 sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
 skilful, perītus, -a, -um.
 slave, servus, -ī, m. (66).
 slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, f.
 slay, necō, 1; interficiō, 3; oc-
 cidō, 3.
 sleep, n., somnus, -ī, m.
 sleep, v., dormiō, 4.
 small, parvus, -a, -um.
 smith, faber, -brī, m.

Socrates, Sōcratēs, -is, m.
 soldier, miles, -itis, m.
 Solon, Solōn, -ōnis, m.
 some one, aliquis, -qua, (-quid)
 -quod (279. 2); quīdam, quae-
 dam, quod(quid)dam (279. 5);
 some . . . others, alii . . . alii;
 (of two parties), alterī . . . alterī;
 often not expressed.
 something, aliquid.
 son, filius, -ī, m.
 song, cantus, -ūs, m.; carmen,
 -inis, n. (278).
 son-in-law, gener, -erī, m.
 soon, mox.
 soothe, molliō, 4.
 source, fōns, fontis, m.
 Spain, Hispānia, -ae, f.
 spare, parcō, 3, *v. dat.*
 speak, loquor, 3; dicō, 3; speak
 to, alloquor, 3.
 spear, hasta, -ae, f.
 spiritedly, ācritēr.
 spring, fōns, fontis, m.
 spy, explōrātor, -ōris, m.
 stab, trānsfigō, 3.
 stain, maculō, 1.
 star, stella, -ae, f. (301).
 start (= set out), proficiscor, 3.
 state, civitās, -ātis, f.
 statue, statua, -ae, f.
 step, gradus, -ūs, m. (245).
 story, fābula, -ae, f.
 street, via, -ae, f.
 strong, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.
 study, n., studium, -ī, n.
 study, v., studeō, 2, *v. dat.*
 sturdy, validus, -a, -um.
 successfully, optimē, feliciter.
 suddenly, imprōvisō.
 suffer, patior, 3; tolerō, 1; suf-
 ferō (321).
 suitable, opportūnus, -a, -um.
 summer, aestās, -ātis, f.

summon, invitō, 1.
sun, sōl, sōlis, m.
surpass, superō, 1 (186); vincō, 3 (186).
surrender, dēdō, 3.
surround, cingō, 3; circumvenīō, 4.
survive, supersum (297).
swear, iūrō, 1.
sweet, dulcis, -e; suāvis, -ē.
swift, vēlōx, -ōcis (179); celer, -eris, -ere (179).
sword, gladius, -ī, m.

table, mēnsa, -ae, f.
tail, cauda, -ae, f.
take, capiō, 3; sūmō, 3; take a walk, ambulō, 1.
tall, altus, -a, -um.
Tarentine, Tarentīnus, -ī, m.
Tarquin, Tarquīnius, -ī, m.
task, pēsum, -ī, n.
teach, doceō, 2.
teacher, magister, -trī, m.; praeceptor, -ōris, m.
tear down, rescindō, 3.
tedious, longus, -a, -um.
tell, nārrō, 1; dicō, 3.
temple, templum, -ī, n.
tender, tener, -era, -erum.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terrify, terreō, 2.
terror, terror, -ōris, m.
than, quam; abl. (212).
that, conj. (in purpose or result clauses), ut; (after verbs of fearing), nē; (not), nē; (after expressions of doubt), quā; (after verbs of saying and the like), not translated.
that, pron. (determ.), is, ea, id (270); (dem.), ille, -a, -ud (275); iste, -a, -ud (275); (rel.), quī, quae, quod (279).

their, gen. plur. of is; (own), suus, -a, -um.
themselves, see self.
then, tum, deinde.
there, ibi; as an expletive, not translated.
thing, rēs, -eī, f.
think, arbitror, 1 (429); putō, 1 (429).
thirst, sitis, -is, f. (154).
thirty, trīgintā.
this, determ., is, ea, id (270); dem., hīc, haec, hōc (275).
thou, tū.
though, cum, w. subj.
thousand, mille (311. 6).
three, trēs, tria (311. 4).
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
through, per, w. acc.
throw, jaciō, 3; coniciō, 3.
thrust forth, exturbō, 1.
time, tempus, -oris, n.
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.
to, sign of dative; ad, in, w. acc.; (expressing purpose), ut, w. subj.; ad, w. gerund or gerundive; supine.
to-day, hodiē.
together with, cum, w. abl.
toil, labōrō, 1.
to-morrow, crās.
too, quoque; (much), nimium.
touch, tangō, 3.
towards, ad, in, w. acc.
tower, turris, -is, f. (149).
town, oppidum, -ī, n.
townsman, oppidānus, -ī, m.
train, exerceō, 2.
tree, arbor, -oris, f.
trial (make), experior, 4.
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trumpet, tuba, -ae, f.
truth, vērum, -ī, n.
try, experior, 4; cōnor, 1.

turn, convertō, 3; (**from**), āvertō, 3; (**out**), ēveniō, 4.

twenty, vigintī.

two, duo, -ae, -o (311. 4); (**which of**), uter, -tra, -trum; (**each of**), uterque, utraque, utrumque.

tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, m.

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.

undertake, suscipiō, 3; cōnor, 1.

unwilling (be), nōlō (316).

up, in combination w. verbs (draw up, etc.), see the verbs.

upon, in, w. acc. or abl.

use, ūtor, 3, w. abl.

useful, ūtilis, -e.

vain (in), frūstrā.

valley, vallis (or vallēs), -is, f.

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

very, superl. degree; admodum.

victorious, victor, -ōris, m.

victory, victōria, -ae, f.

virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

wage (war), gerō, 3.

wagon, carrus, -ī, m.

walk (= take a walk), ambulō, 1.

wall, mūrus, -ī, m.

wander, vagor, 1.

want (= lack), careō, 2.

want (= wish), volō (316); dē-siderō, 1.

war, bellum, -ī, n.

warn, moneō, 2.

watch, vigilō, 1.

watchful, vigil, -is (151. 4).

water, aqua, -ae, f.

way, via, -ae, f.; (= respect), rēs, rei, f.

weapon, tēlum, -ī, n.

weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.

weep, fleō, 2.

welcome, excipiō, 3.

well, bene.

well (be), valeō, 2.

what, interrog., quis, quae, quid (quod) (279); (= that which), id quod.

when, cum.

whether, num, utrum.

which, quī, quae, quod (279); (*of two*), uter, utra, utrum (200).

while, dum.

white, albus, -a, -um; candidus, -a, -um.

who, rel., quī, quae; *interrog.*, quis, quae (279).

whole, tōtus, -a, -um (200).

why, cūr.

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

wife, uxor, -ōris, f.

wild, ferus, -a, -um.

wild beast, fera, -ae, f.

wind, ventus, -ī, m.

wine, vinum, -ī, n.

wing, āla, -ae, f.

winter, hiems, -is, f.

wise, sapiēns, -entis.

wisely, sapienter.

wish, volō (316).

with, cum, w. abl.; sometimes abl. alone.

without, sine, w. abl.

witness, spectō, 1.

wonder, mīror, 1; (**at**), admī-ror, 1.

wooden, ligneus, -a, -um.

woods, silva, -ae, f.

word, verbum, -ī, n.

work, n., labor, -ōris, m.; opus, -eris, n.

work, v., labōrō, 1.

world, mundus, -ī, m.

worthy, dignus, -a, -um.

would rather, mālō (316).

would that, utinam.

wound, *n.*, vulnus, -eris, *n.*

wound, *v.*, vulnerō, *1.*

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

write, scribō, *3.*

writing, scriptum, -ī, *n.*

wrong, injūria, -ae, *f.*

year, annus, -ī, *m.*

yesterday, herī.

yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud (275. 3).

you, *sing.*, tū; *plur.*, vōs.

young man, adulēscēns, -entis,
m.; juvenis, -is, *m.*

your, *sing.*, tuus, -a, -um; *plur.*,

vester, -tra, -trum.

Zama, Zama, -ae, *f.*

zeal, studium, -ī, *n.*

GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM

ablative

ablative, ablātīvus, -ī, m.; (*of instrument*) instrūmentī; (*of agent*) agentis; (*of manner*) modī; (*of specification*) respectūs; (*of separation*) sēparātiōnis; (*of description*) quālitātis.

absolute, absolūtus, -a, -um.

accent, accentus, -ūs, m.

accusative, accūsātīvus, -ī, m.

active, āctīvus, -a, -um.

adjective, adjectīvum, -ī, n.

adverb, adverbium, -ī, n.

agent, agēns, -entis, m.

agree, congruō, 3, w. *abl.*; concordō, 1.

agreement, concordātiō, -ōnis, f.

alphabet, alphabētum, -ī, n.

answer, n., respōsum, -ī, n.

answer, v., respondeō, 2.

antecedent, antecēdēns, -entis, n.

apposition, appositīō, -ōnis, f.; (*be in*), *pass. of* appōnō, 3.

cardinal, cardinālis, -e.

case, cāsus, -ūs, m.

clause, clausula, -ae, f.

common or appellative, appellātīvus, -a, -um.

comparative, comparātīvus, -a, -um.

comparison, comparātiō, -ōnis, f.

compound, compositus, -a, -um.

concessive, concessīvus, -a, -um.

discuss

condition, hypothesis, -is, f.; conditiō, -ōnis, f.

conditional, hypotheticus, -a, -um; conditionālis, -e.

conjugation, conjugātiō, -ōnis, f.

conjunction, conjūctiō, -ōnis, f.

consonant, littera cōnsonāns, -antis, or cōnsonāns, -antis, f.

construction, cōnstrūctiō, -ōnis, f.

conversation, colloquium, -ī, n.

correct, *adj.*, rēctus, -a, -um.

correct, v., corrigō, 3; ēmendō, 1.

correctly, rēctē.

dative, datīvus, -ī, m.

declension, dēclinātiō, -ōnis, f.

declinable, dēclinābilis, -e.

decline, dēclinō, 1.

defective, dēfectīvus, -a, -um.

degree, gradus, -ūs, m.

demonstrative, dēmōnstrātīvus, -a, -um.

deponent, dēpōnēns, -entis.

derive, trahō, 3.

description (*abl. of*), quālitās, -ātis, f.

determinative, dēfinitus, -a, -um.

difference, discrimen, -inis, n.

diminutive, dēminutīvum, -ī, n.

diphthong, diphthongus, -ī, m.

direct, dirēctus, -a, -um; rēctus, -a, -um.

discourse, ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.

discuss, trāctō, 1.

dissyllable, dissyllabus, -ī, m.
distributive, distribūtīvus, -a, -um.

end, v., dēsīnō, 3.

English, Anglicus, -a, -um.

English (in), Anglicē.

etymology, etymologia, -ae, f.

example, exemplum, -ī, n.; (for),
 ut; exempli causā.

exception, exceptiō, -ōnis, f.

feminine, fēmininus, -a, -um.

finite, finītus, -a, -um.

formation, formātiō, -ōnis, f.

future, futūrum, -ī, n.

future perfect, futūrum exāctum.

gender, genus, -eris, n.

genitive, genetīvus, -ī, m.

gerund, gerundium, -ī, n.

gerundive, gerundivum, -ī, n.

govern, regō; *pass. of* jungō *or*
conjungō, foll. by cum w. abl.

grammar, grammatica, -ae, f.

imperative, modus imperātīvus
or imperātīvus, -ī, m.

imperfect, imperfectum, -ī, n.

impersonal, impersonālis, -e.

increase, crēscō, 3.

indeclinable, indēclinābilis, -e.

indicative, modus indicātīvus,
or indicātīvus, -ī, m.

indirect, indirēctus, -a, -um; ob-
 liquus, -a, -um.

infinitive, modus infīnītīvus *or*
 infīnītīvus, -ī, m.

instrument, instrūmentum, -ī, n.

interjection, interjectiō, -ōnis, f.

interrogative, interrogātīvus, -a,
 -um.

intransitive, intrānsītīvus, -a, -um.

irregular, irrēgulāris, -e; anō-
 malus, -a, -um.

Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um.

Latin (in), Latīnē.

lesson, pēsum, -ī, n.

letter, littera, -ae, f.

limit, v., limitō, 1.

liquid, liquidus, -a, -um.

locative, locātīvus, -ī, m.

long, longus, -a, -um; prōductus,
 -a, -um.

manner, modus, -ī, m.

masculine, masculīnus, -a, -um.

mean, significō, 1.

meaning, significātiō, -ōnis, f.

mistake, n., error, -ōris, m.

mistake, v., errō, 1.

monosyllable, monosyllabum, -ī,
 n.

mood, modus, -ī, m.

mute, mūtus, -a, -um.

negative, negātīvus, -a, -um.

neuter, neuter, -tra, -trum.

nominative, nōminātīvus, -ī, m.

noun, nōmen, -inis, n.; substan-
 tīvum, -ī, n.

numeral, numerālis, -e.

object, objectum, -ī, n.

ordinal, ordinālis, -e.

paradigm, paradigma, -atis, n.

participle, participium, -ī, n.

particle, particula, -ae, f.

partitive, partītīvus, -a, -um.

passive, passīvus, -a, -um.

perfect, perfectum, -ī, n.

person, persōna, -ae, f.

personal, persōnālis, -e.

phrase, phrasis, -is, f.

pluperfect, plūsquamperfectum,
 -ī, n.

plural, plūrālis, -e.

positive, positīvus, -a, -um.

preposition, praepositīō, -ōnis, F.
present, praesēns, -entis, N.
principal, principālis, -e.
pronoun, prōnōmen, -inis, N.
proper, proprius, -a, -um.

quantity, quantitās, -ātis, F.
question, interrogātiō, -ōnis, F.

reflexive, reciprocus, -a, -um; reflexivus, -a, -um.
regular, rēgulāris, -e.
relative, relātivus, -a, -um.
remember, memoriā teneō.
review, recōgnōscō, 3; (lesson), pēnsum recōgnōscendum, -ī, N.
root, rādix, -icis, F.
rule, rēgula, -ae, F.

school, schola, -ae, F.
sentence, sententia, -ae, F.
separation, sēparātiō, -ōnis, F.
sequence, cōnsecutiō, -ōnis, F.
short, brevis, -e; correptus, -a, -um.
sibilant, sibilus, -a, -um.
singular, singulāris, -e.
sound, sonus, -ī, M.
specification, respectus, -ūs, M.
speech (*part of*), ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.
stem, basis, -is, F.
study, n., studium, -ī, N.
study, v., studeō, 2.

subject, subjectum, -ī, N.
subjunctive, modus subjunctivus or subjunctivus, -ī, M.
substantive, substantivum, -ī, N.
substantively, substantivē.
superlative, superlativus, -a, -um.
supine, supinum, -ī, N.
syllable, syllaba, -ae, F.
syntax, syntaxis, -is, F.

teacher, praeceptor, -ōris, M.; magister, -trī, M.; magistra, -ae, F.
tense, tempus, -oris, N.
termination, terminātiō, -ōnis, F.
transitive, transitivus, -a, -um.
treat (= *discuss*), trāctō, 1.

verb, verbum, -ī, N.
vocabulary, vōcābulārium, -ī, N.
vocative, vōcātivus, -ī, M.
voice, vōx, vōcis, F.; genus, -eris, N.
vowel, littera vōcālis or vōcālis, -is, F.

wish, optātiō, -ōnis, F.
word, verbum, -ī, N.; vōcābulum, -ī, N.; vōx, vōcis, F.

yes, certē, certissimē; vērō; etiam; sanē ita est, ista sunt; *verb of question repeated.*

INDEX

THE general vocabularies are to be used as an index to *words* (with some exceptions) for which reference is needed. Full-face figures refer to sections, not pages. A superior figure (*e.g.*, 10²) indicates a footnote. Most abbreviations will readily be understood: ff. = and following; *inv.* = imperative.

A

Ā or āb, 61, 62.

ā-verbs, 86.

ABBREVIATIONS beginning letters, 437¹, 438.

ABLATIVE, translation of, 14², 59¹; of *agent*, 61, 62; of *means* or *instrument*, 90, 91; of *material*, 92. II. 8¹; of *separation*, 128–130; of *time*, 135, 136; of *manner*, 144, 145; w. comparatives, 211, 212; of *specification*, 259, 260; w. *ūtor*, etc., 303, 304; w. preps., 333; of *place*, 335. 3; *descriptive*, 341, p. 222^{3,4}; *absolute*, 412; *abl. sing.* of vowel stems in 3d decl., 151. 2.

ABSTRACT NOUNS, 168¹.

-ābus, in *dat.* and *abl. plur.*, 19¹.

ACCENT, 7; before *enclitics*, 7. (1).

ACCUSATIVE, *direct obj.*, 25, 26; *predicate*, 92. I. 5², 93. II. 7⁴, 171. II. 3¹, 250. II. 4³; *two accs.*, 131. I. 8², 197. II. 10⁸; w. verbs of remembering and forgetting, 305, 306; of *extent*, 312, 313; w. preps., 333. 4; of *limit*, 334, 335. 2; w. *inf.*, 400, 401; w. some *impers. verbs*, 415. 3, 4, 416.

AD, w. *gerunds* and *gerundives*, 432. 3.

ADJECTIVES, of 1st and 2d decls., 44, 71; of 3d decl., 105, 134, 141, 150, 164; *irregular*, 200; *comparison of*, 205 ff.; *poss. adj. prons.*, 266; *interrog.*, 279. 3; *numeral*, 311; *agreement with nouns*, 45. II. 1¹, 53, 54; *used as nouns*, 117; of one, two, or three terminations, 155; *agreement with understood subject*, 197. I. 8⁶; *order w. prep. and noun*, 64. I. 7¹; *order w. gen. and noun*, 124. I. 6³; *method of declining*, 44².

ADVERBS, *formation of*, 216 ff.; *comparison of*, 219; *numeral*, 311. 8.

AGENT, *abl. of*, 61, 62; *dat. of*, 425. (5), 426, 444⁴, cf. 428. II. 9⁶.

Aliquod as *adj.*, 279. 2.

ALPHABET, 1.

AND, *omitted*, 57. II. 6³, 227. II. 1¹, cf. p. 220⁸; *inserted*, 35. II. 5^{6,7}, 50. II. 8⁴, 57. I. 8⁴.

ANTECEDENT of *rel. pron.*, 280 ff.; *omitted*, 287. I. 10³, p. 221¹⁰.

ANTEPENULT, 5. 5.

Anything at all, *quidquam*, not *aliquid*, 279. 6, 440¹¹.

APPOSITION, 118. I. 2¹, 157, 158, 197. II. 8⁷.

Augustus et Iūlus (Coll.), 9.

B

BATTLE OF CANNÆ (for trans.), 339, 378.

BATTLE OF MARATHON (for trans.), 291.

C

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR, Bk. I, ch. 1-5 (for trans.), 448.

CARDINAL NUMERALS, 311.

CASES, names of, 10; alike in form, 16.

CAUSE, expressed by *cum* clause, 375; by *part.*, 409. 7, 412. 3.

Charōn et Mercurius (Coll.), 187.

Cōgnōmen, 195, 204.

COLLECTIVE NOUNS, 168².

COLLOQUIA, Augustus et Iūlius, 9, 58, 80; Pater et Filiolus, 95, 222, 302; Frāter et Sorōrcula, 111, 162, 269, 274; Praeceptor et Discipulus, 126, 133, 195, 204, 234, 261; Magister et Discipulus, 139; Duo Puerī, 148; Father and Son, 173; Charōn et Mercurius, 187; Jacōbus et Augustus, 242; Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus, 290; Tityrus et Meliboeus, 332; Jōhannēs et Jacōbus, 388.

COMMANDS AND APPEALS, 391.

COMPARATIVE DEGREE, formation of, 206. (1), 219; with and without *quam*, 211, 212; trans. by *too*, p. 220⁵.

COMPARISON of adjs., 205 ff.; of advs., 219.

COMPOUND TENSES, 97.

CONCESSION, expressed by *cum* clause, 372, 375, p. 219¹¹; by *part.*, 409. 4, 412. 3.

CONDITIONS, 383 ff.; expressed by *part.*, 409. 5, 412. 3, p. 214².

CONJUGATIONS: 1st, 86 ff., 351 ff.; 2d, 112 ff., 351 ff.; review of 1st and 2d, 127 ff.; 3d, 180 ff., 357 ff.; review of 1st, 2d, and 3d, 196, 197; 4th, 223 ff., 357 ff.; 3d in *-ō*, 235 ff., 357 ff.; review of the four conjs., 240, 241; periphrastic, 422 ff.

CONSONANTS, 3; sounds of, 4.

CONSONANT STEMS, 104, 134, 140.

Cum, conj., temporal, causal, and concessive, 372 ff.

Cum, prep., w. *mē*, *tē*, etc., 265. 3; w. abl. of manner, 144, 145.

D

DATIVE of *possessor*, 32; *indirect obj.*, 31. I. 7, 8, 9, II. 2, 6, 10, 33, 34; w. comps. of *sum*, 295; of *service*, 291¹, 296. II. 7⁸, 344; w. certain verbs, 342, 343; of *service*, *double dative*, 344; w. intransitives, 417, 418; of *agent*, 425, 426; not to be taken for abl., 184. 6.

DEATH OF THE PET SPARROW (for trans.), 421.

DECLENSION, paradigms of: 1st, 14; 2d in *-us* and *-um*, 38; in *-er*, 59, 65; adjs. of 1st and 2d, 71; 3d, mute stems, 105; liquid stems, 134; sibilant stems, 140, 141; *i*-stems, 149, 150; mixed stems, 163-165; comparatives, 209; 4th, 245; 5th, 254; special, 262; prons., 264, 270, 275, 279; *duo* and *trēs*, 311. 4.

DEFINITIONS, sometimes not given in vocabs., 57. I. 1¹.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, 275.

DEPONENT VERBS, 1st and 2d conjs., 38 ff.; 3d and 4th conjs., 303 ff.

DERIVATION, 345.

DESCRIPTIVE abl. and gen., 341;
abl., p. 222^{3,4}.

DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS, 270;
used like adjs., 270. 1.

Dīc, imv. of dicō, p. 150¹.

DIPHTHONGS, 4; quantity of, 6. 2.

DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS, 311. 8.

-dō, nouns in, 168.

DOUBLE CONSONANTS, 3.

DOUBLE DATIVE, 344.

Dūc, imv. of dūcō, p. 150¹.

DUM w. pres. ind., 263¹³, 442¹⁰.

Duo Puerī (Coll.), 148.

E

ē-verbs, 112.

ē-verbs, 180, 235.

ENCLITICS, 7. (1).

ENGLISH METHOD of pronuncia-
tion, 8.

-er, nouns and adjs. of 2d decl. in,
67; comparison of adjs. in, 206.
(1), (3).

-ēvī, perfects in, 119².

EXTENT, accusative of, 312, 313.

F

FABLES (for trans.), 441-447.

Fac, imv. of faciō, p. 150¹.

FATHER AND SON (Coll.), 173.

FEMININE GENDER, 11. 2. 4; in 1st
decl., 13; in 3d decl., 168. 2; in
4th decl., 244. 1; in 5th decl.,
253.

Fer, imv. of ferō, p. 150¹.

Ferō, compounds of, 322.

FIFTH DECLENSION, 252 ff.

FIRST CONJUGATION, 86 ff., 351 ff.;
first periphrastic conj., 442.

FIRST DECLENSION, 12 ff., 52 ff.

FOURTH CONJUGATION, 223 ff.,
357 ff.

FOURTH DECLENSION, 243 ff.

Frāter et Sorōrcula (Coll.), 111,
162, 269, 274.

FUTURE translated by Eng. pres.,
116. I. 1³, 385. 3¹; fut. imv., 391.
(3); equivalent to imv., 438¹⁸.

G

GENDER, general rules of, 11; in
1st decl., 13; in 2d decl., 37;
in 3d decl., 168; in 4th decl.,
244; in 5th decl., 253. Agree-
ment in, 45. II. 1¹, 53, 54, 281.

GENITIVE, like Eng. possessive, 30.
I. 6¹; of nouns in -ius und -ium,
79; w. verbs of remembering
and forgetting, 305, 306; *parti-*
tive, 340, 438¹⁷, 439⁵, 440¹²;
descriptive, 341; w. certain im-
pers. verbs, 415. 3, 4, 416; order
w. adj. and noun, 124. I. 6³.

GERUND, 430-432; nom. of, sup-
plied by inf., 431. 1.

GERUNDIVE, p. 34²; 423, 432; diff.
between gerund and gerundive
construction, 432.

-gō, nouns in, 168.

H

Hic, demon. of 1st pers., 275. 1;
in contrast with ille, 275. 5.

HISTORICAL TENSES, 347; pres.,
444⁸.

HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE, 390,
391.

I

i-stems, 149 ff.

i-verbs, 223.

Ille, demon. of 3d pers., 275. 3; in
contrast with hic, 275. 5.

IMPERATIVE, 389 ff.; not common
in prohibitions, 391. (2)³.

IMPERFECT, denoting continuance, 115. I. 5²; of customary action, 445¹².

IMPERSONAL VERBS and verbs used impersonally, 415 ff., 425. (4).

IN not always to be translated by in, 146. I. 2¹, 185. II. 7, 296. II. 10⁵.

IN omitted, 291⁷.

INCREASE in the gen., 152. 1¹.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, 279.

INDICATIVE in cond. sentences, 385.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 399 ff.

INDIRECT OBJECT, 31. I. 7, 8, 9, II. 2, 6, 10, 33, 34.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS, 379 ff.

INFINITIVE as in Eng., 395 ff.; w. sub. acc., 399 ff.; tenses of, 402-403; fut. pass., 402¹, 405. I. 2¹.

INSTRUMENT, abl. of, 90, 91.

INTERROGATIVE pronoun, 279; adj., 279. 3; advs., 380. 1.

INTRANSITIVE VERBS used impersonally in the passive, 417, 418. -iō, nouns in, 168; verbs in, of 3d conj., 235.

Ipse, distinguished from sē, 270. 4. 5; how translated, 270. 6.

IRREGULAR adjs., 200 ff.; verbs, 72 ff., 292 ff., 316 ff.

Is as pers. pron., 270. 2; *this* or *that*, 275. 6.

ISLANDS, names of, 334².

It, expletive, 35. I. 1¹, 56. I. 7².

-ium in gen. plur., 151. 3.

-ius in gen. sing. of adjs., 200.

-ius and -ium, gen. of nouns in, 79; voc. of nouns in -ius, 79.

-ivī, perfects in, often drop v, 231. I. 91², 327. 2.

J

Jacōbus et Augustus (Coll.), 242.

Jōhannēs et Jacōbus (Coll.), 388.

L

LETTERS (for trans.), 437-440.

LIMIT, acc. of, 335. 2³.

LIQUIDS, 3.

LIQUID STEMS, 134 ff.

-lis, superlative of adjs. in, 207.

LOCATIVE, 10. 3, 334, 335. 1; in 1st decl., 14. 2; in 2d decl., 40; in 3d decl., 175.

M

Magister et Discipulus (Coll.), 139.

MANNER, how expressed, 144, 145.

Mārcus Porcius Catō, Puer (for trans.), 394.

MASCULINE GENDER, 11. 1. 3; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168. 1; in 4th decl., 244; in 5th decl., 253.

MATERIAL, how expressed, 92. II. 8¹.

MEANS, abl. of, 90, 91.

MIXED STEMS, 163 ff.

MOTION, verbs of, foll. by acc. with and without prep., 333-335.

MUTES, 3.

MUTE STEMS, 105 ff.

N

NARRATIVE SENTENCES, 372. (3).

Nāsica et Ennius (for trans.), 407.

Ne, enclitic, 7. (1), 28. 1², 51. 3³, 58⁶.

Nē, 358, 369, 391. (1); omitted after cavē, p. 178⁴.

NEUTER GENDER, 11. 5; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168. 3.

Nōh in prohibitions, 391. (1)¹.

Nōmen, 195, 204.

NOMINATIVE, sub., 24; pred., 46, 47, 92. I. 6³, 93. II. 6³.

Nōnne, 51. 3³.

-ns, nouns in, 167. 1.

NUMERAL adjs., 311; advs., 311. 8.

O

Ō, w. voc., 56. II. 14.

OBJECT, direct, 25, 26; indirect, 31. I. 7, 8, 9, II. 2, 6, 10, 33, 34.

OF = because of, 330. II. 2³.

OMISSION of *my*, *thy*, *his*, etc., 100; of *ut*, 438⁹, 446¹¹; of *in*, 291⁷; of *nē*, p. 178⁴; of *fore* in trans., 428. I. 4⁴.

ORDER of words in sentence, 23; 35. 1; 56. I. 10³; 64. I. 7¹; 69. I. 10¹; 77. I. 5⁵; 93. I. 9²; 124. I. 6³; 202. I. 6⁵; 215¹¹; *quisque*, 287. I. 6²; *ferē*, 329. I. 6¹; 386. I. 3³; 404; 410. II. 9⁵; 438¹⁰; 440¹⁰; 446⁷; p. 216³; p. 217⁶; p. 219¹³.

ORDINAL NUMERALS, 311.

OUGHT, of past time, 419. I. 8³.

P

PARTICIPLES, 408 ff.; in principal parts, 86¹; decl. of pres. act., 165, 408. 1, of perf. and fut., 408. 2; perf. in comp. tenses as adj., 192. I. 7¹, 404. I. 4¹; part. and verb trans. by two coördinate verbs, 409. 2, 410. I. 5⁴, 412. 4; abl. absolute, 412, 413; Eng. perf. act. part., how rendered, 412. 6, 7; used as nouns, 291³.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE, 340, 438¹⁷, 439⁵, 440¹².

PASSIVE to be distinguished from progressive form in Eng., 69. II. 8⁵, 123. II. 3¹.

Pater et Filius (Coll.), 95, 222, 302.

PENULT, 5. 5.

PERFECT, sometimes distinguished from pres. by long penult, 119⁵, 191. I. 2¹, 232. I. 1¹; *definite* and *indefinite*, 347; perf. subj. in prohibitions, 391. (2); perf. part. trans. by pres., 442¹², p. 217⁸; w. *ubi*, *ut*, etc., 444⁹; perf. subj. really fut. perf., 391. (2)².

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: act., 422; pass., 423; paradigms, 424.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS, 264, 265; when nom. of, is expressed, 265. 2.

PLACE, expressions of, 334 ff.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, 266; when omitted, 100.

POSSESSOR, dat. of, 32, cf. 441⁴.

Praeceptor et Discipulus (Coll.), 126, 133, 195, 204, 234, 261.

Praenomen, 195, 204.

PREDICATE NOM., 46, 47, 92. I. 6³, 93. II. 6³; acc., 92. I. 5², 93. II. 7⁴, 171. II. 3¹.

PREPOSITIONS, 333; order w. adj. and noun, 64. I. 7¹.

PRESENT, translation of, 43¹; denoting continuance, 115. I. 5²; Eng. pres. for Lat. fut., 116. I. 1³, 385. 3¹; for Lat. fut. perf., 413. II. 10²; sometimes distinguished from perf. by short penult, 119⁵, 191. I. 2¹; w. *dum*, 263¹⁸, 442¹⁰; *historical*, 444⁸; pres. subj. trans. as fut., 369. I. 4.

PRIMARY TENSES, 347.

PRINCIPAL PARTS of verbs, 86¹.

PRINCIPAL TENSES, 347.

PROGRESSIVE FORM in Eng. to be distinguished from passive, 69. II. 8⁵, 123. II. 3¹.

PROHIBITIONS, 391. (1), (2).

PRONUNCIATION, Roman method, 4; English method, 8.

Prōserpina (for trans.), 199, 215, 263.

Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō (for trans.), 188.

PURPOSE, expressed by *ut* w. subj., 352, 353; *quī* w. subj., 364; fut. part., 410. I. 9⁵; *ad* w. gerundive, 432. 3; supine, 433, 434; *causā* w. gen. of gerund or gerundive, 435. I. 3, p. 221⁵.

Q

QUANTITY of vowels and diphthongs, 6. 1, 2; of syllables, 6. 3, 4, 5.

Quīn, w. subj., 349, 350.

Quis, indef. pron. w. *sī*, etc., 362. I. 6¹, 438¹⁵.

R

r, as sign of passive, 87¹; for s, 73^{1,3,4}, 142.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN, 264, 265.

RELATIVE PRONOUN, 279; agreement, 280 ff.; in purpose clause, 364.

REST, verbs of, foll. by abl., 333-335.

RESULT, w. *ut*, 368 ff.; to be distinguished from *purpose*, 352, 368, 447¹².

ROMAN METHOD of pronun., 4.

-rs, nouns in, 167. 1.

S

-s, monosyllables in, 167. 2.

SECONDARY TENSES, 347.

SECOND CONJUGATION, 112 ff., 351 ff.

Second periphrastic conj., 423.

SECOND DECLENSION, in -us and -um, 36 ff., 52 ff.; in -er, 59 ff.

SEMI-DEPONENTS, p. 177².

SEPARATION, how expressed, 128 ff.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES, 347 ff.

SERVICE, dat. of, 291¹, 296. II. 7³, 344.

SIBILANT, 3.

SIBILANT STEMS, 140 ff.

Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus (Coll.), 290.

SOUNDS of letters, 4.

SPECIFICATION, abl. of, 259, 260, p. 218⁶.

STEM, 12¹; in 2d decl., 36, 42; in verbs, 86¹; in 3d decl., 103, 104, 107, 151. 1, 152, 166, 167; in 4th decl., 243; in 5th decl., 252. Perf. stem w. long vowel, 119⁵.

SUBJECT nom., 24; acc. 401: omitted, 50. I. 9¹.

SUBJUNCTIVE of *purpose*, 352, 353, 364; of *result*, 368; w. *cum*, 372; in *indir. questions*, 379 ff.; in *wishes and conditions*, 383 ff.; *hortatory*, 390; perf. really fut. perf., 391. (2)²; fut. tense of, 425. (1). Meanings not given in paradigms, p. 26¹.

SUPERLATIVE degree, formation of, 206. (2), (3); strengthened by *quam*, 437⁶.

SUPINE, 433, 434.

S. V. B. E. V., 437¹.

SYLLABLES, 5; quantity of, 6. 3, 4, 5.

SYNONYMOUS WORDS: *puerī*, *liberī*, 60; *magister*, *dominus*, 66; *minister*, *servus*, 66; *homo*, *vir*, 138; *amnis*, *flūmen*, *fluvius*, 172; *hostis*, *inimicus*, 172; *celer*, *vēlōx*, 179; *superō*, *vincō*, 186; *habitō*, *vīvō*, 194; *animus*, *mēns*, 273; *cantus*, *carmen*, 278; *sīdus*, *stella*, 301; *amō*, *diligō*, *volō*, *dēsīderō*, 319; *interrogō*, *rogō*, *quaerō*, 382; *at*, *sed*, *autem*, 393; *jūdicō*, *cēnseō*, *existimō*, *arbitror*, *putō*, *opīnor*, 429.

T

- TERMINATIONS, 15.
 THERE, expletive, 35. I. 2²; 56. I. 7²; 220. I. 1².
 THIRD CONJUGATION, 180 ff., 357 ff.; verbs in *-iō*, 235 ff., 357 ff.
 THIRD DECLENSION, mute stems, 105 ff.; liquid stems, 134 ff.; sibilant stems, 140 ff.; i-stems, 149 ff.; mixed stems, 163 ff.
 TIME when or within which, 135, 136; how long, 312, 313; expressed by *cum* clause, 372, 373, by part., 409. 1, 2, 8, 412; relative time in tenses of inf., 402, 403, 405. II. 8⁶, of part., 409.
 Tityrus et Meliboeus (Coll.), 332.
 TOWNS, names of, 334, 335.
 TRANSLATION, passages for: Pūblius Cornēlius Scipiō, 188; Prōserpina, 199, 215, 263; Battle of Marathon, 291; Maxims, 320; Battle of Cannæ, 339, 378; Mārcus Porcius Catō, Puer, 394; Nāsica et Ennius, 407; Death of the Pet Sparrow, 421; Letters, 437-440; Fables, 441-447; Cæsar's Gallic War, Bk. I, ch. 1-5, 448.

U

- ubus in dat. and abl. of 4th decl., 247.
 ULTIMA, 5. 5.
 Ut, of purpose, 352 ff.; of result, 367 ff.; w. ind., 437⁴, 439²; omitted, 438⁹, 446¹¹.

V

- v, sometimes dropped, 231. I. 9^{1,2}, 327. 2, 421⁵.
 VOCABULARIES following exercises, 75. 2.
 VOCATIVE, 10. 2; in 2d decl., 39; of *filius*, etc., 79.
 VOWELS, how marked, 2; sounds of, 4; quantity of, 6. 1, 2.

W

- WISHES, 383 ff.
 WITH not always to be translated by *cum*, 185. II. 5².

X

- x, monosyllables in, 167. 2.

Y

- You, sing. or plur., 73².

